

Pavol Safarik
TU Darmstadt, April 2013

On Proof-theoretical Interpretation of Sequential Compactness

PhD thesis supervised by
Ulrich Kohlenbach (TU Darmstadt, Fachbereich Mathematik, AG Logik)

Contents

Introduction	i
Foreword	i
Scientific Context	i
Goals and Organization of the Material	iv
Notation and common Expressions	v
Acknowledgments	vi
1 Preliminaries	1
Proof Interpretation	1
1.1 The System $WE-HA^\omega$	3
1.2 Fragments and Extensions of $WE-HA^\omega$	6
1.3 The ordered Field of rational Numbers within $WE-HA^\omega$	7
1.4 The Archimedean ordered Field of real Numbers within $WE-HA^\omega$	8
1.5 Kuroda's negative Translation	9
1.6 Gödel's Functional Interpretation	10
1.7 Majorizability	13
1.8 Monotone Functional Interpretation	14
1.9 Models of $E-PA^\omega$	15
1.10 Bar Recursion	16
1.11 Law of excluded Middle	18
1.12 Double Negation Shift	19
1.13 Axiom of Choice	19
1.14 Arithmetical Comprehension	21
1.15 Weak König's Lemma	28
1.16 Complexity classes and bar recursion	38

2	Effective learnability	42
2.1	Fluctuations versus effective learnability	44
2.2	Cauchy statements and unrestricted use of Σ_1^0 -LEM	56
2.3	Which Cauchy statements are effectively learnable and which are not	58
2.4	When learnability implies fluctuation bounds	69
3	Interpreting a strong non-linear ergodic theorem	73
3.1	Arithmetizing Wittmann's proof	77
3.2	Obtaining a bound	79
3.3	A general bound existence theorem	80
3.4	Uniform bounds for Wittmann's ergodic theorems	84
3.5	Proof of Proposition 3.8	87
4	Interpreting Bolzano-Weierstraß	94
4.1	Interpreting Bolzano-Weierstraß	96
4.2	Analysis of the Complexity of the Realizers	109
5	Functional interpretation for IST	113
5.1	Formalities	114
5.2	Nonstandard principles	118
5.3	A functional interpretation for $E\text{-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$	122
5.4	The system $E\text{-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ and negative translation	125
5.5	A functional interpretation for $E\text{-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$	126
5.6	Countable saturation	131
	References	134

Introduction

Foreword

In [151], a recent Fields medallist, Terence Tao, published some thoughts on the relation between “hard (quantitative, finitary)” and “soft (qualitative, infinitary)” analysis. In this essay, he also emphasized the importance of the so called “hard” analysis:

... I therefore feel that it is often profitable for a practitioner of one type of analysis to learn about the other, as they both offer their own strengths, weaknesses, and intuition, and knowledge of one gives more insight into the workings of the other. ...

His point is illustrated by the proof of Theorem 1.6 in [150], which is carried out in the context of “finitary ergodic theory”:

... The main advantage of working in a finitary setting ... is that the underlying dynamical system becomes extremely explicit. ...

He goes on to connect the finitisation to the methods we will employ in this thesis:

... In proof theory, this finitisation is known as Gödel functional interpretation ...

In the case of convergence theorems Tao calls the finitary formulation metastability and the corresponding explicit content rate(s) of metastability. It was recently observed by Avigad and Rute [13] that in the case of the von Neumann mean ergodic theorem a particular such rate of metastability (extracted in [96]) can be used to obtain even a simple effective (and also highly uniform) bound on the number of fluctuations (for the case of Hilbert spaces this was already obtained with an even better bound in [64]).

This leads us to a very natural question: What kind of effective bounds (explicit information) is extractable under which general logical conditions on convergence proofs. In this thesis we discuss four natural kinds of such finitary information and analyse the corresponding conditions.

Once we established this basis for computational content extraction, we also investigate, so to say, the oposite approach. Namely, given the fact that one is interested in such extraction, the question arises in which systems is this still possible and how. We answer this question for a very prominent case. In the last chapter, we introduce an intrinsic formalisation of non-standard analysis and discuss the extractability of effective bounds from proofs in that system.

Scientific Context

At least since the presentation of Gödel’s functional interpretation (also called Dialectica or simply “D-” interpretation) by K. Gödel in 1958, proof theoretic methods can be used not only simply to analyze the syntactic structure of proofs, but also to deliver new information about the mathematical theorems being proved. The first to formulate this idea of “unwinding proofs” was G. Kreisel:

What more do we know if we have proved a theorem by restricted means than if we merely know that it is true.

Kreisel’s “Unwinding of Proofs” developed into a new field of Mathematical Logic providing many new results in Algebra, Number Theory, and Numerical and Functional Analysis. To describe better the character and aim of this field, D. Scott suggested to call this discipline *Proof Mining* and the new name was quickly adopted.

In this thesis, we make mainly use of the above mentioned functional interpretation (in various forms, we will even give a new variant suitable for our formalization of non-standard analysis in the last chapter). Gödel’s functional interpretation requires an *intuitionistic proof*, (also called a constructive proof), which is – roughly speaking – a proof which doesn’t make any use of the law of excluded middle:

$$\text{LEM} \quad : \quad \varphi \vee \neg\varphi.$$

Of course, one often works with semi-intuitionistic (semi-constructive) systems, where LEM is only partially added, e.g. only for negated formulas (i.e. formulas in the form $\neg\varphi$) – denoted by LEM_{\neg} – or for formulas with only one, existential quantifier (i.e. formulas in the form $\exists\varphi_{\text{QF}}$) – denoted by $\Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}$. An intuitionistic can be obtained from a classical one by applying the negative translation as a pre-processing step. The negative translation also goes back to Gödel who defined a transformation of classically provable arithmetical formulas into classically equivalent and intuitionistically provable formulas in early 30’s. We will use a modified version of this interpretation as presented by Kuroda in 1951 (see definition 1.17). The application of the combination of these interpretations, i.e. first the negative translation and then the functional interpretation, is often referred to as the ND-interpretation (ND for negative D-interpretation). We will discuss all of this in great detail in the first chapter and partially in the next paragraph. For even more thorough and self-contained presentation of all these topics, see U. Kohlenbach’s book [88].

In 1962, Spector [146] defined a particularly simple form of bar recursion (recursion on well-founded trees), which is sufficient to solve the functional interpretation of (negative translation of) the schema of full comprehension over numbers:

$$\text{CA}^0 \quad : \quad \exists f : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N} \forall x \in \mathbb{N} (f(x) =_{\mathbb{N}} 0 \leftrightarrow \varphi(x)).$$

One could call this result a major break-through for proof mining, since it suffices to prove most of classical analysis within a simple logical system based on Peano arithmetic (again see also [88]).

In particular, with Spector’s bar recursion one can extract realizers (using ND-interpretation) for almost all theorems of classical analysis (given their formal proof).

In fact, for many theorems the existence of a uniform bound on the realizers is guaranteed by Kohlenbach’s metatheorems introduced in [86] and refined in [46]. Additionally, proof theoretic methods such as Kohlenbach’s monotone functional interpretation (see [75]) can be used to systematically obtain such effective bounds from their proofs, which tend to be a lot simpler than the actual realizers, though they remain equally useful (again [88] is a very good reference for a comprehensive discussion on this topic).

We use Spector’s solution together with Kohlenbach’s monotone interpretation of Weak König’s Lemma (WKL, see 1.59 in first chapter or for more details and background e.g. [72, 88, 63, 154]) to give the ND-interpretation of the Bolzano-Weierstrass theorem:

$$\text{BW}_{\mathbb{R}} \quad : \quad \forall f^{1(0)} \underbrace{\exists a^1 \forall k^0 \exists l^0 \geq_0 k \mid \hat{a} -_{\mathbb{R}} \widetilde{f}l \mid \leq_{\mathbb{R}} (\lambda n. \langle 2^{-k} \rangle)}_{\equiv: \text{BW}_{\mathbb{R}}(f^{1(0)})}.$$

The computational contribution of (instances of) BW and other principles describing

sequential compactness has been analyzed by Kohlenbach in [77] for proofs in somewhat weaker base systems: the Grzegorzczuk arithmetic of level n , $G_n A^\omega$. Kohlenbach and Oliva gave bounds for the bar-recursive realizers of the Principle of monotone convergence, PCM, in the last section of [98] and discuss various general scenarios, where PCM has provably significantly smaller computational contribution.

Still, it is a bit surprising that the computational contribution of this basic theorem was first fully (in the above sense) analyzed in [134]. Thereafter the interest in BW's computational content continued. It was analyzed as part of two different larger projects. Encouragingly, as far as the results can be compared, in both cases the computational content corresponds very closely to the one obtained in [134].

The more recent of these results were obtained by P. Oliva and T. Powell in [123], where the authors take the same approach as in [134]. The main difference is, that Spector's bar recursion is replaced by the use of selection functions. The authors show the equivalence of unbounded products of selection functions and bar-recursion in [124] and demonstrate how this can be used to give a different formalization of the realizers in [134]. Moreover, they give a very nice game-theoretic interpretation of the realizers which allows for better understanding and intuition for the original bar-recursive solutions.

On the other hand, V. Brattka analyzed the BW theorem as part of the Weihrauch-Lattice (see e.g. [23, 57]) in [24]. Though using completely different techniques, also he arrives at the conclusion that while using BW in its full generality in a proof implies very strong forms of recursion, when used in a more natural way, i.e. applied as a single instance of the principle, the complexity is rather low.

In general, the proof mining experience shows that very often proofs of well known and impactful theorems do not need this kind of strong principles, i.e. principles like CA^0 requiring more than normal recursion (though in most cases the proofs themselves are formulated in ways, which would suggest otherwise).

In [11], J. Avigad, P. Gerhardy and H. Towsner analyzed the mean ergodic theorem: implicitly showing that it can be proved with strictly arithmetical principles¹, i.e. statements about numbers without the need of a specific true higher type object like an actual cluster point for a sequence as in the BW theorem (please refer to section 3.1 for more details on arithmetization in this context and to [77] in general).

Shortly after [11], Kohlenbach and Leuştean gave a more efficient analysis of MET in [96], which was further investigated by Avigad and Ruty in [13], where they derive the above discussed bound on the number of fluctuations (roughly speaking a bound on how many times does the distance between the values of the sequence exceed a given ϵ , see Definition 2.1). Such a bound gives us, of course, much more than simply a rate of metastability. The question under which circumstances can a fluctuation bound be (systematically) obtained – hoping for a similarly clear-cut answer as in the case of metastability – was answered in [100] and led to a new but very natural and straightforward definition of (effective) learnability. As expected, the kind of computational information we get, strongly depends on the “amount of classicallity” we use. Or in other words, how much of LEM was truly needed to prove a given theorem.

Interestingly, to some extent, we get a bit of “classicality” in constructive formalization(s) of non-standard analysis as well (see e.g. [12]). Of course, this makes logical formalization of non-standard analysis and possible related conservation results interesting on its own account. Moreover, it would be hugely beneficial, to have an extraction procedure and some meta-theorems to guarantee specific uniform bounds in

¹more precisely, with arithmetic principles and arithmetic versions of analytical and higher principles

the non-standard context as well. Inspired by the work of Nelson [119, 120], Berg et al. give a formalization of non-standard analysis together with an adapted form of Shoenfield interpretation (while the similarity between Shoenfield's interpretation and Nelson's translation procedure between classical and non-standard proofs were actually the main starter), which are both intended for extraction of computation content from proofs based on non-standard methods, in [157]. A major step towards that goal would be solving the interpretation of the saturation principles, which can be used to formalize the concept of Loeb measures – one of the most prominent non-standard techniques. For certain systems, it has turned out that extending them with saturation principles has resulted in an increase in proof-theoretic strength (see [54, 66]). So far, it seems that in the context of [157] it is also the case and we need to add a version of bar recursion which correspond precisely to Spector's, but adopted to our special form of sequence application as defined in [157].

Goals and Organization of the Material

While in the context description above, we follow more or less the chronological order of development, this thesis is structured according to the underlying proof-theoretic strength or, correspondingly, the complexity of the computational content in question. Large parts of this thesis are based on previous publications. We precede each section with a short quote of some of the journal's referee comments on the corresponding paper. These quotes are intended to offer a short abstract on the topic at hand from a slightly different perspective. In the following we give an overview of the contents of the chapters, their relation and which publications are they based on.

The *Preliminaries* chapter is somewhat different from the others. It is based on parts from both a joint paper with U. Kohlenbach [136] and [134]. It gives a quick introduction to the basic methods and results in the area of proof mining, which might be considered folklore or common knowledge. We do give some new results (and fill tiny gaps in known proofs), but mostly it is a collection of known or not surprising material and can be found in standard literature (mainly [153, 63, 88]). In fact, it is meant more as a quick reference for results we need in later topics. We capture the most relevant results in short summaries at the end of the corresponding sections. For an interested reader, it is probably best to refer to [88] directly instead.

The *second chapter* is about effective learnability and discusses in great detail what kind of computational content can be extracted, and under which circumstances, from convergence proofs. It is based on the most recent joint work with U. Kohlenbach [100]. We start with this topic, because the analysis deals with the lowest level of computational complexity (compared to the remainder of this thesis). The goal is to precisely characterize when can we obtain more than a (computable) rate of metastability from a proof of a convergence statement in analysis. Of course, it is known when (computable) full rate of convergence is extractable. Here, we are concerned with computational content strictly in between. Namely a (computable) bound on fluctuations or at least an (effective) learning procedure for the limit point.

We take this, so to say, a step further in the *third chapter*, where we dive into a case study on a proof of strong non-linear ergodic theorem due to R. Wittmann. The situation here, closely reminds on our rather abstract separating example for a convergence statement which is non-learnable but has an effective rate of metastability from second chapter. This is due to a specific nested structure of the extracted realizer, which is unprecedented by similar results in proof mining so far. It is a rare example, where a proof of strong convergence doesn't lead to a realizer having the form, which is typ-

ically guaranteed for effectively learnable statements. This chapter is based on [135] extended by an in depth analysis of an arithmetized version of Wittmann's proof. In the *fourth chapter* we go even further and investigate how a specific compactness principle, the theorem of Bolzano-Weierstrass, contributes to the complexity of realizers when used as the main principle in a proof of a logical statements in a particular, but rather general, logical form. To achieve this, we need to use advanced techniques like bar-recursion, but we demonstrate that even in systems formalizing large parts of full classical analysis, powerful principles like BW contribute by the minimal amount possible, when they are used naturally and are treated correctly. The results in this chapter are based on joint work with U. Kohlenbach and were published in [136]. The *last chapter* is based on joint work with B. van den Berg and E. Briseid, see [157]. While in the chapters three and four we use established techniques already fine-tuned for proof-mining, here we want to contribute to the field in general and provide extraction procedures for non-standard analysis. Such a challenging task certainly needs more than a single publication on a system formalizing the non-standard methods and a corresponding (negative) functional interpretation, but we believe we made a very solid first step. In this thesis we go actually further and discuss successful part of a larger unfinished attempt on interpreting the principle of countable saturation, which is the basic step needed for interpreting proofs based on Loeb measures. This part is of particular interest in the context of this thesis, since it was achieved using much of the ideas and techniques needed for our previous results.

Notation and common Expressions

By " \equiv " we mean the syntactical identity. We will write Π_1^0 and Σ_1^0 for the purely universal arithmetic formulas, i.e. $\forall n^0 \varphi_{\text{QF}}(n)$, and the purely existential arithmetic formulas, i.e. $\exists n^0 \varphi_{\text{QF}}(n)$, where in both cases φ_{QF} denotes a quantifier-free formula, which may contain parameters of arbitrary type. However, in general, we allow quantification over variables of any finite type.

For the encoding of a given finite sequence s of natural numbers we write $\text{lh}(s)$ for the length of s and denote by $[s]$ the type one function:

$$[s](i^0) :=_0 \begin{cases} s(i) & \text{if } i <_0 \text{lh}(s) \\ 0 & \text{else} \end{cases}.$$

For a type one function f and a natural number n we define the corresponding encoding of the finite sequence $\bar{f}n$ of length n as follows:

$$\bar{f}n := \langle f(0), f(1), \dots, f(n-1) \rangle.$$

Given two finite sequences s and t we write $s * t$ for the concatenation of s and t . We write shortly $s * \langle 0 \rangle$ and $s * \langle 1 \rangle$ as $s * 0$ and $s * 1$. Following the notation of Avigad and Feferman [10] by $s \subseteq t$ we mean t is an extension of s (i.e. the sequence t starts with the sequence s , or is s). We denote the empty sequence by \emptyset .

For finite tuples of variables (not necessarily of the same type) x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k we write \underline{x} . By \underline{x}^ρ we mean $x_1^{\rho_1}, x_2^{\rho_2}, \dots, x_k^{\rho_k}$.

Generally we will use the Greek letters φ, ψ, χ to denote formulas (as an exception a predicate in section 4 is named I), the lower case Latin letters f, g, h for functions, the letters a, b, i, j, k, \dots for natural numbers and encodings, and the capitals like A, B, \dots for functionals.

We denote $\lambda n^0.1^0$, $\lambda f^1.1^0$ and so on by $\mathbf{1} \equiv \mathbf{1}^1, \mathbf{1}^2$ and so on. We use bold numbers to indicate the type level of a term, e.g. we would write $t^{\mathbf{1}}$ for $t^{1(0)}$. In general, we use this superscript as a shortcut for a specific type having the given type level. So, by $\forall X^2$ we mean for all X of an appropriate type, e.g. $2(1(0))$, not for all X which are of any type with level 2.

We will write “holds classically/intuitionistically” or “is equivalent classically/intuitionistically” and so on meaning in fact “is provable” or “the equivalence is provable” and so on in the classical, i.e. in $\text{WE-PA}^\omega + \text{QF-AC}$, or intuitionistic, i.e. in $\text{WE-HA}^\omega + \text{M}^\omega + \text{AC}$, system respectively.

We will treat tuples and pairs somewhat special in the second chapter, but we will clarify this in its first section.

Finally, in our last chapter on non-standard systems, we will need some more elaborate conventions, however we define those there at the beginning, since we don’t need them anywhere else.

Acknowledgments

First of all, I would like to thank my supervisor Prof. Dr. Ulrich Kohlenbach. Professor Kohlenbach not only proposed the topic for this thesis and supported my research in a very flexible way depending on the most recent results, but also went out of his way and accorded me his time whenever I encountered a problem providing hints, explanations and encouragement. Moreover, he led me to a large field of applied logic far out of the bounds of the mere subject at hand.

I am also grateful to his assistants Dr. Eyvind Briseid, Dr. Alexander Kreuzer and Dr. Laurentiu Leustean for their direct advice as well as for pointing me to some additional literature. I thank Prof. Dr. Benno van den Berg and Prof. Dr. Thomas Streicher for several fruitful discussions and tips.

I also appreciate the continuing support of my family and friends.

Preliminaries

... The paper is technically sound, and very well written. It also gives a nice overview of all the related issues around not only BW, but also WKL, majorisability, dialectica interpretation, comprehension and bar recursion ...

– anonymous referee about [136], Nov 23, 2009.

Proof Interpretation

Generally, using a suitable proof interpretation, not necessarily the D-interpretation, in the context of proof mining we can expect to extract programs and/or computable bounds from a given proof. However, the two interpretations we will use throughout this thesis, namely negative translation and D-interpretation, were originally presented with a different aim. The proof-theoretic gain of negative translation as a tool for a translation from classical to intuitionistic systems is clear. The functional interpretation was first introduced by Gödel to obtain consistency results relative to \mathcal{T} motivated by Hilbert's program and not as a tool for proof mining. We give a very brief description of these interpretations right now, see e.g. [88] or [10] and definitions 1.17 and 1.25 for further details.

As mentioned earlier, we will make use of Kuroda's negative translation, which assigns to every formula φ a logically equivalent formula $\varphi' := \neg\neg(\varphi^*)$, where φ^* is just φ with a double negation behind each \forall -quantifier.

Gödel's functional interpretation assigns to every formula φ an intuitionistically equivalent formula $\varphi^D := \exists \underline{x} \forall \underline{y} \varphi_D(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a})$, where \underline{x} and \underline{y} are tuples of variables of arbitrary finite type, \underline{a} is a tuple of parameters of arbitrary finite type and $\varphi_D(\underline{a})$ is quantifier-free. Moreover, by the soundness of the functional interpretation we know there is a tuple \underline{t} of closed terms of our intuitionistic system, such that $\forall \underline{y} \varphi_D(\underline{t}, \underline{y}, \underline{a})$ holds intuitionistically and even provably in a quantifier-free calculus, provided that φ is provable in $\text{WE-HA}^\omega + \text{M}^\omega + \text{AC}$.

We should mention that under the combination of both interpretations (i.e. under the ND-interpretation) for every formula provable in WE-PA^ω with the help of quantifier-free axiom of choice and any additional universal axioms (usually denoted as $\text{WE-PA}^\omega + \text{QF-AC} + \mathcal{U}$) the interpreted formula can be proved in $\text{WE-HA}^\omega + \mathcal{U}$ using the same purely universal axioms \mathcal{U} as we allowed in the original classical proof. Kohlenbach introduced in [75] the *monotone functional interpretation* or shortly *MD-interpretation* (see

1.8). This interpretation is based on the D-interpretation and Howard's majorizability property (see definition 1.26). Instead of delivering a concrete realizer as before, by the MD-interpretation we can construct a tuple of closed terms \underline{t} which *majorize* some realizers. Unless combined with negative translation, we still need an intuitionistic proof, but, fortunately, it can use some other ineffective principles which have a direct MD-interpretation (e.g. Weak König's lemma, for general definition of these principles see theorem 1.28).

ToDo

cite my Dipl for a trivial example? or Schwichtenberg?

The first two interpretations in this section as well as the particular axiomatization of intuitionistic logic and arithmetic go originally back to Gödel (see [47], [48]), the monotone functional interpretation was first introduced by Kohlenbach (see [75]). The calculus of WE-HA^ω and Heyting Arithmetic in general was further analyzed by Troelstra in [153].

The herein presented description of the formal systems and representations is based mainly on [88] and we use also the shortened version extracted by E. M. Briseid (see [26]). We define the system WE-HA^ω directly with its language, axioms, and rules rather than going the usual way of defining an intuitionistic calculus for first order logic followed by the addition of arithmetic and types.

Definition 1.1. The set of all finite types, T , is generated inductively by

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &\in T, \\ \rho, \tau \in T &\rightarrow \tau(\rho) \in T, \end{aligned}$$

where the type 0 is the type corresponding to the natural numbers \mathbb{N} . Objects of type $\tau(\rho)$ are functions mapping objects of type ρ to objects of type τ . We will sometimes omit brackets when specifying types, i.e. write $\rho(\tau\sigma)$ meaning in fact $\rho(\tau(\sigma))$.

The set of pure types, P , is generated inductively by

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &\in P, \\ \rho \in P &\rightarrow 0(\rho) \in P. \end{aligned}$$

We often denote pure types by natural numbers, with 1 for 00, 2 for 0(00), and $n + 1$ for 0(n).

The *degree* or *type level* of ρ is defined by

$$\begin{aligned} \text{deg}(0) &:= 0, \\ \text{deg}(\tau(\rho)) &:= \max(\text{deg}(\tau), \text{deg}(\rho) + 1). \end{aligned}$$

We will use numbers in bold font for the type level of terms. I.e. for a functional A of type $(0 \rightarrow 0) \rightarrow ((0 \rightarrow 0) \rightarrow ((0 \rightarrow 0) \rightarrow 0))$ we write also A^2 , expressing that A has degree 2, instead of $A^{(21)^1}$, where the type of A is declared precisely.

We define higher order equality as follows:

Definition 1.2. Two terms of type ρ are equal, iff:

$$s^\rho =_\rho t^\rho := \forall y_1^{\rho_1}, \dots, y_k^{\rho_k} (sy_1 \dots y_k =_0 ty_1 \dots y_k),$$

where $\rho = 0(\rho_k) \dots (\rho_1)$.

1.1 The System WE-HA^ω

We call the system WE-HA^ω, which we describe below, weakly extensional intuitionistic ('Heyting'-) arithmetic in all finite types.

Definition 1.3. *Weakly extensional arithmetic in all finite types WE-HA^ω*

- The language $\mathcal{L}(\text{WE-HA}^\omega)$ of WE-HA^ω:

- The signature of $\mathcal{L}(\text{WE-HA}^\omega)$:

- * We use the following logical symbols (for any type ρ):

\wedge	and	\vee	or
\rightarrow	implies	\perp	absurdity
$\exists x^\rho$	there exists	$\forall x^\rho$	for all.

- * We write (for any type ρ) $x^\rho, y^\rho, z^\rho, \dots$ for variables of type ρ (bound or free).

- * We include the constants:

0^0	natural number 0	S^{00}	successor
$\Sigma_{\delta, \rho, \tau}$	combinator of type $\tau\delta(\rho\delta)(\tau\rho\delta)$	$\Pi_{\rho, \tau}^{\rho\tau\rho}$	projector
\underline{R}_ρ	simultaneous recursors of type $\rho(\rho 0 \rho)\rho 0$.		

- * and the binary predicate constant $=_0$ for equality between type 0 objects.

- Terms of $\mathcal{L}(\text{WE-HA}^\omega)$:

1. For any type ρ , the terms of type ρ are the variables x^ρ, y^ρ, \dots and the constants $c_1^\rho, c_2^\rho, \dots$
2. If $t^{\tau\rho}$ is a term of type $\tau\rho$ and s^ρ is a term of type ρ , then $t^{\tau\rho}(s^\rho)$ is a term of type τ .

- (Prime) Formulas of $\mathcal{L}(\text{WE-HA}^\omega)$:

1. Absurdity, \perp , is a (prime) formula.
2. If s^0 and t^0 are terms of type 0 then $s =_0 t$ is a (prime) formula. Prime formulas are also called *atomic formulas*.
3. If φ and ψ are formulas and x^ρ is a variable of type ρ then

$\varphi \wedge \psi$	$\varphi \vee \psi$
$\varphi \rightarrow \psi$	$\exists x^\rho \varphi(x)$
$\forall x^\rho \varphi(x)$	

are formulas.

- Abbreviations:

$$\neg \varphi \equiv \varphi \rightarrow \perp \qquad \varphi \leftrightarrow \psi \equiv (\varphi \rightarrow \psi) \wedge (\psi \rightarrow \varphi).$$

- Axioms of WE-HA^ω

1. Axioms of contraction:

$$\varphi \vee \varphi \rightarrow \varphi \qquad \varphi \rightarrow \varphi \wedge \varphi.$$

2. Axioms of weakening:

$$\varphi \rightarrow \varphi \vee \psi \qquad \varphi \wedge \psi \rightarrow \varphi.$$

3. Axioms of permutation:

$$\psi \vee \varphi \rightarrow \varphi \vee \psi \qquad \varphi \wedge \psi \rightarrow \psi \wedge \varphi.$$

4. Ex falso quodlibet axiom:

$$\perp \rightarrow \varphi.$$

5. Quantifier axioms:

$$\forall x \varphi(x) \rightarrow \varphi(t) \qquad \varphi(t) \rightarrow \exists x \varphi(x),$$

where t is free for x in φ .

6. Axioms of equality for $=_0$ (x^0, z^0 and y^0 are variables of type 0):

$$\begin{aligned} x &=_0 x & x &=_0 y \rightarrow y &=_0 x \\ x &=_0 y \wedge y &=_0 z &\rightarrow x &=_0 z. \end{aligned}$$

The reflexivity, symmetry and transitivity of higher type equalities $=_\rho$ are derivable from these axioms (see lemma 1.2).

7. Successor axioms:

$$\begin{aligned} S(x^0) &\neq_0 0 \\ S(x^0) &=_0 S(y^0) \rightarrow x &=_0 y. \end{aligned}$$

We write also $x + 1$ for $S(x)$.

8. Induction schema for an arbitrary formula $\varphi(x^0)$ of WE-HA^ω :

$$\text{IA} \quad : \quad \varphi(0) \wedge \forall x^0 (\varphi(x) \rightarrow \varphi(x + 1)) \rightarrow \forall x^0 \varphi(x).$$

9. Axioms for $\Pi_{\rho, \tau}, \Sigma_{\delta, \rho, \tau}$ and \underline{R}_ρ :

$$\begin{aligned} (\Pi) \quad & : \quad \Pi_{\rho, \tau} x^\rho y^\tau =_\rho x^\rho \\ (\Sigma) \quad & : \quad \Sigma_{\delta, \rho, \tau} x^{\tau \rho \delta} y^{\rho \delta} z^\delta =_\tau xz(yz) \\ (\underline{R}_\rho) \quad & : \quad \text{for } i = 1, \dots, k: \\ & \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} (R_i)_{\underline{\rho}} 0 \underline{y} \underline{z} =_{\rho_i} \underline{y} \\ (R_i)_{\underline{\rho}} (Sx^0) \underline{y} \underline{z} =_{\rho_i} z_i (\underline{R}_\rho x \underline{y} \underline{z}) x \end{array} \right. \end{aligned}$$

where $\underline{\rho} = \rho_1, \dots, \rho_k$, $\underline{\rho}^t := \rho_k \dots \rho_1$, $\underline{y} = y_1, \dots, y_k$ and $\underline{z} = z_1, \dots, z_k$ with y_i of type ρ_i and z_i of type $\rho_i 0 \underline{\rho}^t$.

• *Rules of WE-HA^ω*

1. Modus ponens and syllogism:

$$\frac{\varphi \quad \varphi \rightarrow \psi}{\psi} \qquad \frac{\varphi \rightarrow \psi \quad \psi \rightarrow \chi}{\varphi \rightarrow \chi}.$$

2. Exportation and importation:

$$\frac{\varphi \wedge \psi \rightarrow \chi}{\varphi \rightarrow (\psi \rightarrow \chi)} \quad \frac{\varphi \rightarrow (\psi \rightarrow \chi)}{\varphi \wedge \psi \rightarrow \chi}.$$

3. Expansion:

$$\frac{\varphi \rightarrow \psi}{\chi \vee \varphi \rightarrow \chi \vee \psi}.$$

4. Quantifier rules (assuming x is not free in ψ):

$$\frac{\psi \rightarrow \varphi(x)}{\psi \rightarrow \forall x \varphi(x)} \quad \frac{\varphi(x) \rightarrow \psi}{\exists x \varphi(x) \rightarrow \psi}.$$

5. Quantifier-free rule of extensionality:

$$\text{QF-ER} : \frac{\varphi_{\text{QF}} \rightarrow s =_{\rho} t}{\varphi_{\text{QF}} \rightarrow r[s] =_{\tau} r[t]},$$

where s^{ρ} , t^{ρ} and $r[x^{\rho}]^{\tau}$ are terms of WE-HA^ω, φ_{QF} is a quantifier-free formula and $\rho, \tau \in T$ are arbitrary.

Remark 1.4. A careful reader observed that the congruence axioms for $=_0$ are not explicitly included in the axioms of equality (6). However, it is implied by QF-ER that:

$$\frac{x =_0 y \rightarrow x =_0 y}{x =_0 y \rightarrow r[x] =_{\rho} r[y]} \text{QF-ER}.$$

The system obtained by the axioms 1-5 together with the rules 1-4 restricted to closed formulas corresponds to the one suggested by Gödel for the purpose of verifying the soundness of the D-interpretation. Troelstra shows in [153] the equivalence between Gödel's and Spector's system as defined originally by Spector in [146] which, in turn, was proved to be equivalent to Kleene's formalization given in [68] by Spector in [146].

Moreover, Troelstra shows the equivalence of Spector's system to the well known natural deduction calculus proving the deduction theorem for Spector's system. Both, the proof and the definition, are given in [153]. In that book, Troelstra also derives some additional schemata and rules, e.g. the contraposition rule, $(\varphi \rightarrow \psi) \rightarrow (\neg\psi \rightarrow \neg\varphi)$, or the equivalence of single/triple negation, $\neg\neg\neg\varphi \leftrightarrow \neg\varphi$.

This means that as WE-HA^ω is an extension of Gödel's system it surely proves all that can be proved by the natural deduction system as defined in [153]. As a facile motivation, we will derive a simple lemma in the form we will need later. To do so, we use Troelstra's results and the axioms and rules above. Generally, one can prove even

$$\neg\neg\exists x \varphi(x) \leftrightarrow \neg\forall x \neg\varphi(x),$$

again, using only Spector's system (or, equivalently, the selection of axioms and rules of WE-HA^ω as given above).

Lemma 1.5.

$$\text{WE-HA}^{\omega} \vdash \neg\neg\exists x \varphi(x) \rightarrow \neg\forall x \neg\varphi(x).$$

Proof. First, we derive $\exists x\varphi(x), \forall x\neg\varphi(x) \vdash \perp$:

$$\frac{\frac{\frac{\exists x\varphi(x)^{\text{ass.}}}{\perp} \quad \frac{\frac{\frac{\forall x\neg\varphi(x)^{\text{ass.}} \quad \forall x\neg\varphi(x) \rightarrow \neg\varphi(x)^{\text{Ax. 5}}}{\varphi(x) \rightarrow \perp} \text{Rule 1}}{\exists x\varphi(x) \rightarrow \perp} \text{Rule 4}}{\perp} \text{Rule 1},$$

which implies $\exists x\varphi(x) \rightarrow \neg\forall x\neg\varphi(x)$ by the deduction theorem proved by Troelstra in [153]. By contraposing this implication twice, again using [153], we obtain:

$$\neg\neg\exists x\varphi(x) \rightarrow \neg\neg\neg\forall x\neg\varphi(x),$$

what is equivalent to

$$\neg\neg\exists x\varphi(x) \rightarrow \neg\forall x\neg\varphi(x),$$

by [153] yet again. □

We have that WE-HA^ω allows λ -abstraction in the following sense.

Lemma 1.6. (see e.g. [88]) *If $t[x^\rho]^\tau$ is a term of WE-HA^ω , one can construct in WE-HA^ω a term $\lambda x^\rho.t[x]$ of type $\tau\rho$ such that*

$$\text{WE-HA}^\omega \vdash (\lambda x^\rho.t[x])(s^\rho) =_\tau t[s],$$

and such that the free variables of $\lambda x^\rho.t[x]$ are the same as the free variables of $t[x^\rho]^\tau$ only without x^ρ .

We also note that prime formulas are decidable in WE-HA^ω . In addition, we will be able to treat any quantifier-free formula $\varphi_{\text{QF}}(\underline{x})$ containing only \underline{x} free as a prime formula, since we can find closed terms t of WE-HA^ω such that

$$\text{WE-HA}^\omega \vdash \varphi_0(\underline{x}) \leftrightarrow t\underline{x} =_0 0.$$

We can also code a finite tuple of variables of different types into a single variable, whose type depends on the types of the variables in the tuple. This can be shown in WE-HA^ω (see [153]). So, in principle, simultaneous recursion \underline{R}_ρ can be reduced to R_τ for suitable type τ .

The inequality \leq between numbers is definable in WE-HA^ω as a quantifier-free predicate.

Definition 1.7. The inequality predicate \leq_ρ between functionals of type ρ is defined inductively by

$$x \leq_0 y \equiv x \leq y \tag{1}$$

$$x \leq_{\tau\rho} y \equiv \forall z^\rho (xz \leq_\tau yz). \tag{2}$$

1.2 Fragments and Extensions of WE-HA^ω

The classical system corresponding to WE-HA^ω is obtained simply by adding the law of excluded middle:

Definition 1.8. By adding the law of excluded middle

$$\text{LEM} \quad : \quad \varphi \vee \neg \varphi,$$

to the axioms of WE-HA^ω for any formula in WE-HA^ω we obtain WE-PA^ω.

Furthermore, we define the extensional systems:

Definition 1.9. By replacing the rule QF-ER by the *axioms of higher type extensionality*

$$E_\rho \quad : \quad \forall z^\rho, x_1^{\rho_1}, y_1^{\rho_1}, \dots, x_k^{\rho_k}, y_k^{\rho_k} \left(\bigwedge_{i=1}^k (x_i =_{\rho_i} y_i) \rightarrow z \underline{x} =_0 z \underline{y} \right),$$

in the systems WE-HA^ω / WE-PA^ω, where $\rho = 0\rho_k \dots \rho_1$, we obtain the systems E-HA^ω / E-PA^ω.

On the other hand, sometimes it is sufficient to have weaker systems. This leads us to the definition of the following fragments:

Definition 1.10. For all four systems WE-HA^ω, WE-PA^ω, E-HA^ω and E-PA^ω let correspondingly $\widehat{\text{WE-HA}}^\omega \upharpoonright$, $\widehat{\text{WE-PA}}^\omega \upharpoonright$, $\widehat{\text{E-HA}}^\omega \upharpoonright$, $\widehat{\text{E-PA}}^\omega \upharpoonright$ denote the fragments where we only have the recursor R_0 for type-0-recursion and the induction schema is restricted to the schema of quantifier-free induction:

$$\text{QF-IA} \quad : \quad \left(\varphi_{\text{QF}}(0) \wedge \forall n^0 (\varphi_{\text{QF}}(n) \rightarrow \varphi_{\text{QF}}(n+1)) \right) \rightarrow \forall n^0 \varphi_{\text{QF}}(n),$$

where φ_{QF} is a quantifier-free formula and may contain parameters of arbitrary types.

1.3 The ordered Field of rational Numbers within WE-HA^ω

Rational numbers are represented by codes $j(m, n)$ of pairs (m, n) of natural numbers. Typically j would be just the Cantor pairing function, but any common surjective pairing function j with the inverse functions $j_1(j(m, n)) = m$ and $j_2(j(m, n)) = n$ does the job. We need the surjectivity to be able to conceive each natural number as a code of a uniquely determined rational number. For more examples on pairing functions see e.g. [121].

Definition 1.11. *Coding of rational numbers*

The rational number represented by $j(m, n)$ is

$$j(m, n) \sim \begin{cases} \frac{\frac{n}{2}}{m+1} & \text{if } n \text{ is even} \\ -\frac{\frac{n+1}{2}}{m+1} & \text{else} \end{cases}.$$

Next, we define an equality relation $=_{\text{Q}}$ on these representatives of the rational numbers.

Definition 1.12. *Equality of rational numbers*

We define the equality between the codes of two rational numbers q_1 and q_2 , $=_{\text{Q}}$, as follows:

$$q_1 =_{\text{Q}} q_2 := \frac{j_1 q_1}{j_2 q_1 + 1} = \frac{j_1 q_2}{j_2 q_2 + 1}$$

if j_1q_1 and j_1q_2 are both even, and analogously in the remaining cases. The equality

$$\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$$

is defined to hold iff

$$ad =_0 cb \wedge bd >_0 0.$$

We write $n =_Q \langle r \rangle$ to express the statement that n represents the rational number r . By using only the representatives of natural numbers and $=_Q$ we can avoid a formal introduction of the set \mathbb{Q} as the set of the equivalence classes on \mathbb{N} w.r.t. $=_Q$.

For the embedding $\mathbb{N} \hookrightarrow \mathbb{Q}$, we define for a natural number n its representation as a rational number as follows: $\langle n \rangle = n_Q := j(2n, 0)$. One can then define the primitive recursive operations $+_Q, \cdot_Q$ and the predicates $<_Q, \leq_Q$ on \mathbb{N} in WE-HA^ω such that one can prove (within WE-HA^ω) that

$$(\mathbb{N}, +_Q, \cdot_Q, 0_Q, 1_Q, <_Q)$$

represents the field of rational numbers, $(\mathbb{Q}, +, \cdot, 0, 1, \leq)$, in WE-HA^ω .

1.4 The Archimedean ordered Field of real Numbers within WE-HA^ω

We represent the real numbers by sequences of rational numbers with a fixed rate of convergence 2^{-n} .

Definition 1.13. *Representation of a real number*

A function $f : \mathbb{N} \mapsto \mathbb{N}$ such that

$$\forall n \ (|fn -_Q f(n+1)|_Q <_Q \langle 2^{-(n+1)} \rangle),$$

which implies

$$\begin{aligned} \forall n \ \forall k > m \geq n \ (\ |fm -_Q fk|_Q &\leq_Q \sum_{i=m}^{k-1} |fi -_Q f(i+1)|_Q \\ &\leq_Q \sum_{i=n}^{\infty} |fi -_Q f(i+1)|_Q <_Q \langle 2^{-n} \rangle \), \end{aligned}$$

represents a real number.

We can arrange for each function f^1 to code a unique real number in this way.

Definition 1.14. Let $f : \mathbb{N} \mapsto \mathbb{N}$ be a function. Define \hat{f} by

$$\hat{f}n := \begin{cases} fn & \text{if } \forall k < n \ (|fk -_Q f(k+1)|_Q <_Q \langle 2^{-k-1} \rangle), \\ fk & \text{else} \end{cases},$$

where k is the least number such that $k < n$ and

$$|fk -_Q f(k+1)|_Q \geq_Q \langle 2^{-k-1} \rangle.$$

The function \hat{f} defines a uniquely determined real number, so we say also that f defines a uniquely determined real number, namely the one represented by \hat{f} .

The functional which maps f to \widehat{f} can be defined primitive recursively in WE-HA^ω . So we can reduce quantifiers ranging over \mathbb{R} to quantifiers ranging over type 1 objects. The usual operations and relations on \mathbb{R} can be defined in WE-HA^ω . As an example we define $=_{\mathbb{R}}$ and $+_{\mathbb{R}}$ as follows:

Definition 1.15. Equality on \mathbb{R} is represented by the equivalence relation $=_{\mathbb{R}}$ of the representatives as follows:

$$f_1^1 =_{\mathbb{R}} f_2^1 := \forall n (|\widehat{f}_1(n+1) -_{\mathbb{Q}} \widehat{f}_2(n+1)|_{\mathbb{Q}} <_{\mathbb{Q}} \langle 2^{-n} \rangle).$$

We define

$$f_1 <_{\mathbb{R}} f_2 := \exists n (\widehat{f}_2(n+1) -_{\mathbb{Q}} \widehat{f}_1(n+1) \geq_{\mathbb{Q}} \langle 2^{-n} \rangle),$$

and get $f_1 =_{\mathbb{R}} f_2 \in \Pi_1^0$, $f_1 <_{\mathbb{R}} f_2 \in \Sigma_1^0$, and $f_1 \leq_{\mathbb{R}} f_2 := \neg(f_2 <_{\mathbb{R}} f_1) \in \Pi_1^0$. The extensionality of these relations can be proved in WE-HA^ω .

Definition 1.16. We define $+_{\mathbb{R}}$ as follows:

$$(f_1 +_{\mathbb{R}} f_2)(k) := \widehat{f}_1(k+1) +_{\mathbb{Q}} \widehat{f}_2(k+1).$$

Analogously for $-_{\mathbb{R}}$.

For the embedding $\mathbb{Q} \hookrightarrow \mathbb{R}$, we define for the coding $n = \langle r \rangle$ of a rational number r its coding $n_{\mathbb{R}} := \lambda k. n_{\mathbb{Q}}$ for the real number corresponding to r . However, usually we omit the intermediate encoding to a rational number and write shortly $r_{\mathbb{R}}$ instead of $(\langle r \rangle)_{\mathbb{R}}$. Again, we do not introduce \mathbb{R} as the set of equivalence classes of representatives, but consider only the representatives themselves. The structure

$$(\mathbb{N}^{\mathbb{N}}, +_{\mathbb{R}}, \cdot_{\mathbb{R}}, 0_{\mathbb{R}}, 1_{\mathbb{R}}, <_{\mathbb{R}})$$

represents the Archimedean ordered field of real numbers $(\mathbb{R}, +, \cdot, 0, 1, <)$ in WE-HA^ω .

1.5 Kuroda's negative Translation

As mentioned earlier, we will use Kuroda's version [110] of Gödel's negative translation [47]. We also give directly the intuitionistically equivalent version for tuples of variables (compare e.g. to [88]).

Definition 1.17 (Kuroda '51). To each formula φ of $\mathcal{L}(\text{WE-HA}^\omega)$ we associate its *negative translation* φ' , which is a formula of the form

$$\varphi' := \neg \neg \varphi^*,$$

where φ^* is defined inductively as follows:

1. For an atomic formula φ we have:

$$\varphi^* := \varphi.$$

2. Otherwise, suppose we already know φ^* and ψ^* . We define:

$$\begin{aligned} (\varphi \wedge \psi)^* &:= \varphi^* \wedge \psi^*, \\ (\varphi \vee \psi)^* &:= \varphi^* \vee \psi^*, \\ (\varphi \rightarrow \psi)^* &:= \varphi^* \rightarrow \psi^*, \\ (\exists a \varphi(a))^* &:= \exists a (\varphi(a))^*, \\ (\forall a \varphi(a))^* &:= \begin{cases} \forall \underline{a} \neg \neg (\varphi(\underline{a}))^* & \text{if } \varphi \text{ does not begin with a } \forall\text{-quantifier} \\ \forall \underline{a} (\varphi(\underline{a}))^* & \text{else} \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

This negative translation translates a proof of a formula φ in WE-PA^ω into a proof in WE-HA^ω of φ' .

Theorem 1.18. (See e.g. [113].)
Whenever

$$\text{WE-PA}^\omega \vdash \varphi$$

we have

$$\text{WE-HA}^\omega \vdash \varphi'.$$

1.6 Gödel's Functional Interpretation

As mentioned already in the introduction, the D-interpretation was originally developed by Gödel as a possible modification of Hilbert's program. The D-interpretation itself was first presented in a lecture to the Mathematics and Philosophy Clubs at Yale University in 1941 and published in [48]. This first version was for the ordinary Heyting Arithmetic, the version presented here is based on Luckhardt's in [113] and Troelstra's in [153]. Further details on historical background can be found in [10].

Definition 1.19 (Gödel '41). To each formula $\varphi(\underline{a})$ in $\mathcal{L}(\text{WE-HA}^\omega)$ with the tuple of free variables \underline{a} we associate its *D-interpretation* $\varphi^D(\underline{a})$, which is a formula of the form

$$\varphi^D(\underline{a}) := \exists \underline{x} \forall \underline{y} \varphi_D(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a}),$$

where $\varphi_D(\underline{a})$ is a quantifier-free formula. Each of \underline{x} and \underline{y} is a tuple of variables whose types, as well as the length of each tuple, depend only on the logical structure of φ . We also write $\varphi_D(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a})$ for $\varphi_D(\underline{a})$. If some variables \underline{z} of φ are exhibited, as $\varphi(\underline{z}, \underline{a})$, then we write $\varphi_D(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{z}, \underline{a})$ for $\varphi_D(\underline{a})$.

We define the construction of φ^D inductively as follows

1. For an atomic formula $\varphi(\underline{a})$, the tuples \underline{x} and \underline{y} are empty and we have:

$$\varphi^D(\underline{a}) := \varphi_D(\underline{a}) := \varphi(\underline{a}). \quad (0)$$

2. Otherwise, suppose we already know the D-interpretation of $\varphi(\underline{a})$ and $\psi(\underline{b})$ to be as follows:

$$\varphi^D(\underline{a}) \equiv \exists \underline{x} \forall \underline{y} \varphi_D(\underline{a}) \quad \text{and} \quad \psi^D(\underline{b}) \equiv \exists \underline{u} \forall \underline{v} \psi_D(\underline{b}).$$

where $\varphi_D, \psi_D, \underline{a}, \underline{x}, \underline{y}$ and \underline{b} satisfy the assumptions from above and additionally the variable z is not part of any of the tuples above (otherwise we could use a different name for the variable e.g. z_1). We define:

$$(\varphi(\underline{a}) \wedge \psi(\underline{b}))^D \equiv \exists \underline{x}, \underline{u} \forall \underline{y}, \underline{v} (\varphi_D(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a}) \wedge \psi_D(\underline{u}, \underline{v}, \underline{b})), \quad (1)$$

$$(\varphi(\underline{a}) \vee \psi(\underline{b}))^D \equiv \exists z^0, \underline{x}, \underline{u} \forall \underline{y}, \underline{v} \left((z=0 \rightarrow \varphi_D(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a})) \wedge (z \neq 0 \rightarrow \psi_D(\underline{u}, \underline{v}, \underline{b})) \right), \quad (2)$$

$$(\forall z \varphi(z, \underline{a}))^D \equiv \exists \underline{X} \forall \underline{z}, \underline{y} \varphi_D(\underline{X}\underline{z}, \underline{y}, \underline{a}), \quad (3)$$

$$(\exists z \varphi(z, \underline{a}))^D \equiv \exists \underline{z}, \underline{x} \forall \underline{y} \varphi_D(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{z}, \underline{a}), \quad (4)$$

$$(\varphi(\underline{a}) \rightarrow \psi(\underline{b}))^D \equiv \exists \underline{U}, \underline{Y} \forall \underline{x}, \underline{v} (\varphi_D(\underline{x}, \underline{Y}\underline{x}, \underline{v}, \underline{a}) \rightarrow \psi_D(\underline{U}\underline{x}, \underline{v}, \underline{b})). \quad (5)$$

The clauses (0),(1) and (4) in the definition 1.19 are very easy to comprehend. The D-interpretation of (3), $(\forall z \varphi(z, \underline{a}))^D$, is basically just “Skolemizing” the existentially quantified variables in $\forall z \exists \underline{x} \forall \underline{y} \varphi_D(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, z, \underline{a})$. The most interesting part of the definition is the D-interpretation of the implication (5). A very detailed and comprehensive explanation can be found in [88].

Originally, Gödel in [48] as well as Avigad and Feferman in [10] defined the D-interpretation of (2): $(\varphi(\underline{a}) \vee \psi(\underline{b}))$ in the following intuitionistically equivalent way:

$$\exists z^0, \underline{x}, \underline{u} \forall \underline{y}, \underline{v} \left((z=0 \wedge \varphi_D(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a})) \vee (z=1 \wedge \psi_D(\underline{u}, \underline{v}, \underline{b})) \right). \quad (+)$$

Here we go after the version used by Troelstra (see e.g. [153]) and Kohlenbach (see e.g. [88]). Apart from that the formula $(\varphi(\underline{a}) \vee \psi(\underline{b}))^D$ gets not only quantifier-free but also \vee -free this version assures the following idempotency property of the D-interpretation:

Theorem 1.20. *For any formula φ in $\mathcal{L}(\text{WE-HA}^\omega)$ we have*

$$(\varphi^D)^D \equiv \varphi^D.$$

This would not be the case if we defined (2) in the original way of Gödel. Suppose φ and ψ are atomic formulas. By (+) we have

$$\begin{aligned} ((\varphi \vee \psi)^D)^D &\equiv \left(\exists z^0 ((z=0 \wedge \varphi) \vee (z=0 \wedge \psi)) \right)^D \\ &\equiv \exists z^0 \left(\exists z_1^0 \left((z_1=0 \wedge (z=0 \wedge \varphi)) \vee (z_1=0 \wedge (z=0 \wedge \psi)) \right) \right) \\ &\not\equiv \exists z^0 ((z=0 \wedge \varphi) \vee (z=0 \wedge \psi)) \equiv (\varphi \vee \psi)^D, \end{aligned}$$

which obviously contradicts Theorem 1.20.

We should mention that as a consequence $\neg\varphi$ is D-interpreted as (given that $\varphi(\underline{a})$ is D-interpreted as $\exists \underline{x} \forall \underline{y} \varphi_D(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a})$) $\exists \underline{y} \forall \underline{x} \neg \varphi_D(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a})$. This gives us the following “macro” for double negation:

$$(\neg\neg\varphi)^D \equiv \exists \underline{X} \forall \underline{Y} \neg\neg \varphi_D(\underline{X} \underline{Y}, \underline{Y}(\underline{X} \underline{Y})),$$

which is, provably in WE-HA^ω , equivalent to:

$$\exists \underline{X} \forall \underline{Y} \varphi_D(\underline{X} \underline{Y}, \underline{Y}(\underline{X} \underline{Y})).$$

We should also mention a partial (weaker) interpretation of the implication, which can be used if the data or information of the premise are not needed for further use of the D-interpretation of a given formula. E.g. if the premise can be proved directly. Typically, we would analyze a proof in which the elimination of an implication is the final step in the proof of the conclusion ψ :

$$\text{WE-HA}^\omega \vdash (\varphi(\underline{a}) \rightarrow \psi(\underline{b}))^D \rightarrow \exists \underline{u} \forall \underline{x}, \underline{v} ((\forall \underline{y} \varphi_D(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a})) \rightarrow \psi_D(\underline{u} \underline{x}, \underline{v}, \underline{b})).$$

The D-interpretation is sound in the following sense.

Definition 1.21. The *Independence-of-Premise* schema for universal premises: IP_\forall^ω ; is the union (for all types ρ) of

$$\text{IP}_\forall^\rho : (\forall \underline{x} \varphi_{\text{QF}}(\underline{x}) \rightarrow \exists y^\rho \psi(y)) \rightarrow \exists y^\rho (\forall \underline{x} \varphi_{\text{QF}}(\underline{x}) \rightarrow \psi(y)),$$

where y is not free in $\forall \underline{x} \varphi_{\text{QF}}(\underline{x})$.

Theorem 1.22. Soundness of D-Interpretation [88]

Let \mathcal{U} be an arbitrary set of purely universal sentences of WE-HA^ω and φ a formula of WE-HA^ω containing only \underline{a} as free variables, then

$$\text{WE-HA}^\omega + \text{AC} + \text{IP}_\forall^\omega + \text{M}^\omega + \mathcal{U} \vdash \varphi(\underline{a})$$

implies that

$$\text{WE-HA}^\omega + \mathcal{U} \vdash \forall \underline{y} \varphi_D(\underline{t} \underline{a}, \underline{y}, \underline{a}),$$

where \underline{t} is a suitable tuple of closed terms of WE-HA^ω which can be extracted from a given proof.

In combination with the negative translation as a pre-processing step we get the ND-interpretation with the following properties.

Theorem 1.23. Let \mathcal{U} be an arbitrary set of purely universal sentences of WE-PA^ω , φ a formula of WE-PA^ω containing only \underline{a} as free variables and suppose

$$\text{WE-PA}^\omega + \text{QF-AC} + \mathcal{U} \vdash \varphi(\underline{a}),$$

then the ND-interpretation extracts closed terms \underline{t} of WE-HA^ω , such that

$$\text{WE-HA}^\omega + \mathcal{U} \vdash \forall \underline{y} (\varphi')_D(\underline{t} \underline{a}, \underline{y}, \underline{a}).$$

Theorem 1.24. Main theorem on program extraction by ND-interpretation [88]

Let \mathcal{U} be an arbitrary set of purely universal sentences of WE-PA^ω and $\varphi_{\text{QF}}(\underline{x}, \underline{y})$ be a quantifier-free formula of WE-PA^ω which contains only $\underline{x}^\rho, \underline{y}^\tau$ as free variables. Suppose

$$\text{WE-PA}^\omega + \text{QF-AC} + \mathcal{U} \vdash \forall \underline{x}^\rho \exists \underline{y}^\tau \varphi_{\text{QF}}(\underline{x}, \underline{y}),$$

then the ND-interpretation extracts a tuple of closed terms \underline{t} of WE-HA^ω , such that

$$\text{WE-HA}^\omega + \mathcal{U} \vdash \forall \underline{x}^\rho \varphi_{\text{QF}}(\underline{x}, \underline{t} \underline{x}).$$

In this thesis, it is almost always the combination of negative translation and functional interpretation that is used. This combination becomes particularly convenient to formulate if one uses a negative translation due to Krivine, as it then coincides with the so-called Shoenfield variant [141] (for the fragment $\{\forall, \exists, \neg\}$) as was shown in [147], where this interpretation is given for the full language (i.e. $\{\forall, \exists, \rightarrow, \vee, \wedge, \neg\}$ with $A \leftrightarrow B \equiv (A \rightarrow B) \wedge (B \rightarrow A)$).

We now give the definition of this Shoenfield interpretation:

Definition 1.25 ([141, 147]). To each formula $\varphi(\underline{a})$ in $\mathcal{L}(\text{WE-PA}^\omega)$ with the tuple of free variables \underline{a} we associate its Sh-interpretation $\varphi^{Sh}(\underline{a})$, which is a formula of the form

$$\varphi^{Sh}(\underline{a}) \equiv \forall \underline{u} \exists \underline{x} \varphi_{Sh}(\underline{u}, \underline{x}, \underline{a}),$$

where $\varphi_{Sh}(\underline{a})$ is a quantifier-free formula. Each of \underline{x} and \underline{y} is a tuple of variables whose types, as well as the length of each tuple, depend only on the logical structure of φ . We also write $\varphi_{Sh}(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a})$ for $\varphi_{Sh}(\underline{a})$. If some variables \underline{z} of φ are exhibited, as $\varphi(\underline{z}, \underline{a})$, then we write $\varphi_{Sh}(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{z}, \underline{a})$ for $\varphi_{Sh}(\underline{a})$.

We define the construction of φ^{Sh} inductively as follows (with $\underline{x} \underline{y}$ denoting $x_1 y_1, \dots, x_n y_n$ for $\underline{x} = x_1, \dots, x_n$). In the inductive steps we assume that

$$\varphi^{Sh}(\underline{a}) \equiv \forall \underline{u} \exists \underline{x} \varphi_{Sh}(\underline{u}, \underline{x}, \underline{a}) \text{ and } \psi^{Sh}(\underline{b}) \equiv \forall \underline{v} \exists \underline{y} \psi_{Sh}(\underline{v}, \underline{y}, \underline{b})$$

are already defined.

- (S1) $\varphi^{Sh}(\underline{a}) \equiv: \varphi_{Sh}(\underline{a})$ for atomic $\varphi(\underline{a})$,
 (S2) $(\neg\varphi)^{Sh} \equiv \forall \underline{f} \exists \underline{u} \neg \varphi_{Sh}(\underline{u}, \underline{f} \underline{u})$,
 (S3) $(\varphi \vee \psi)^{Sh} \equiv \forall \underline{u}, \underline{v} \exists \underline{x}, \underline{y} (\varphi_{Sh}(\underline{u}, \underline{x}) \vee \psi_{Sh}(\underline{v}, \underline{y}))$,
 (S4) $(\forall z \varphi)^{Sh} \equiv \forall z, \underline{u} \exists \underline{x} \varphi_{Sh}(z, \underline{u}, \underline{x})$,
 (S5) $(\varphi \rightarrow \psi)^{Sh} \equiv \forall \underline{f}, \underline{v} \exists \underline{u}, \underline{y} (\varphi_{Sh}(\underline{u}, \underline{f} \underline{u}) \rightarrow \psi_{Sh}(\underline{v}, \underline{y}))$,
 (S6) $(\exists z \varphi)^{Sh} \equiv \forall \underline{U} \exists z, \underline{f} \varphi_{Sh}(z, \underline{U} z \underline{f}, \underline{f}(\underline{U} z \underline{f}))$,
 (S7) $(\varphi \wedge \psi)^{Sh} \leftrightarrow \forall \underline{u}, \underline{v} \exists \underline{x}, \underline{y} (\varphi_{Sh}(\underline{u}, \underline{x}) \wedge \psi_{Sh}(\underline{v}, \underline{y}))$.

Remark. The official definition of (S7) in [147] is slightly different from the one given above (where our version is called (S7*)) but is intuitionistically equivalent to that.

As before, a partial (weaker) interpretation of the implication is sufficient when the witnessing data from the premise are not needed for further use of the Sh-interpretation of a given formula. E.g. if the premise can be proved directly. Typically, we would analyze in such cases an implication as:

$$\forall \underline{f} \exists \underline{y} (\forall \underline{u} \varphi_{Sh}(\underline{u}, \underline{f} \underline{u}) \rightarrow \psi_{Sh}(\underline{v}, \underline{y})).$$

Remark. The Shoenfield version of the functional interpretation is often – for obvious reasons – called $\forall\exists$ -form, whereas the Dialectica interpretation (and hence also the combination ND of some negative translation N with the Dialectica interpretation D – see above) always is of the form $\exists\forall$. If the Krivine negative translation is used (see [147]), the latter is nothing else but the result of a final application of the axiom schema of quantifier-free choice QF-AC to the Shoenfield interpretation. One should stress though that this passage from the $\forall\exists$ -form to the $\exists\forall$ -version which also is implicitly present in the soundness theorem of the Shoenfield interpretation (stating the extractability of suitable terms realizing the $\forall\exists$ -form) is necessary for the interpretation to be sound for the modus ponens rule.

1.7 Majorizability

We introduce an important structural property of the closed terms of all systems used in this thesis (and more, e.g. all systems used in [88]). We need this property of *majorizability*, which is due to W.A.Howard in [61], to define the third interpretation we will apply. However, there are several applications of majorizability. Mainly, to prove results on growth of the definable functionals of given systems or, more generally, to give bounds on growth or complexity of functionals belonging to a specific class.

Definition 1.26. The relation $x^* \text{maj}_\rho x$ (x^* majorizes x) between functionals of type ρ is defined by induction on ρ :

$$x^* \text{maj}_0 x \equiv: x^* \geq_0 x, \quad (1)$$

$$x^* \text{maj}_{\tau\rho} x \equiv: \forall y^*, y (y^* \text{maj}_\rho y \rightarrow x^* y^* \text{maj}_\tau xy). \quad (2)$$

Moreover, Howard showed in [61] the following very useful fact:

Theorem 1.27. W.A.Howard [61]

For each closed term t^ρ of WE-HA $^\omega$ one can construct a closed term t^* in WE-HA $^\omega$ of the same type, such that:

$$\text{WE-HA}^\omega \vdash t^* \text{maj}_\rho t.$$

1.8 Monotone Functional Interpretation

The monotone functional interpretation, also called *MD-interpretation*, extracts the terms which majorize some functionals realizing the usual functional interpretation directly. It was introduced by Kohlenbach in [75]. However, he studied and used the combination of D-interpretation with majorizability earlier as well, see e.g. [72].

We have the following soundness theorem:

Theorem 1.28. Soundness of MD-interpretation [75],[88]

Let Δ be a set of sentences of the form $(\varphi_{\text{QF}}$ is a quantifier-free formula and the tuple \underline{r} consists of closed terms):

$$\forall \underline{a}^{\delta} \exists \underline{b} \leq_{\sigma} \underline{r} \underline{a} \forall \underline{c}^{\gamma} \varphi_{\text{QF}}(\underline{a}, \underline{b}, \underline{c}),$$

and suppose

$$\text{WE-HA}^{\omega} + \text{AC} + \text{IP}_{\forall}^{\omega} + \text{M}^{\omega} + \Delta \vdash \varphi(\underline{a}),$$

then MD-interpretation extracts closed terms \underline{t}^* of WE-HA^{ω} such that

$$\text{WE-HA}^{\omega} + \tilde{\Delta} \vdash \exists \underline{x} (t^* \text{ maj } \underline{x} \wedge \forall \underline{a}, \underline{y} \varphi_D(\underline{x} \underline{a}, \underline{y}, \underline{a})),$$

where $\tilde{\Delta}$ is the corresponding set of the Skolem normal forms of sentences in Δ :

$$\tilde{\Delta} := \left\{ \tilde{\varphi} := \exists \underline{B} \leq \underline{r} \forall \underline{a}, \underline{c} \varphi_{\text{QF}}(\underline{a}, \underline{B} \underline{a}, \underline{c}) : \varphi \equiv \forall \underline{a}^{\delta} \exists \underline{b} \leq_{\sigma} \underline{r} \underline{a} \forall \underline{c}^{\gamma} \varphi_{\text{QF}}(\underline{a}, \underline{b}, \underline{c}) \in \Delta \right\}.$$

Definition 1.29. Considering the theorem 1.28, we say that the tuple of terms \underline{t}^* satisfies the *monotone functional interpretation*, or simply *MD-interpretation*, of φ .

Kohlenbach connects in [88] the MD-interpretation with proof mining by the following theorem:

Theorem 1.30. Main theorem on uniform bound extraction by MD-interpretation [88]

Let Δ be as above and $\varphi(x^1, y^0, z^{\tau})$ an arbitrary formula containing only x, y, z free. Let $s^{\rho(1)}$ be a closed term of WE-HA^{ω} and the type level of τ not greater than 2.

Then if one can prove:

$$\text{WE-HA}^{\omega} + \text{AC} + \text{IP}_{\forall}^{\omega} + \text{M}^{\omega} + \Delta \vdash \forall x^1 \forall y \leq_{\rho} s x \exists z^{\tau} \varphi(x, y, z)$$

one can also extract a closed term t of WE-HA^{ω} s.t.

$$\text{WE-HA}^{\omega} + \text{AC} + \text{IP}_{\forall}^{\omega} + \text{M}^{\omega} + \Delta \vdash \forall x^1 \forall y \leq_{\rho} s x \exists z^{\tau} \leq_{\tau} t x \varphi(x, y, z).$$

As in the case of D-interpretation, we can combine the MD-interpretation with the negative translation to obtain the *NMD-interpretation*. In this case the main theorem, again due to Kohlenbach (see e.g. [88]), becomes:

Theorem 1.31. Main theorem on uniform bound extraction by NMD-interpretation [88]

Let $\Delta, \tilde{\Delta}$ be as above and $\varphi_{\text{QF}}(x^1, y^0, z^{\tau})$ be a quantifier-free formula of WE-PA^{ω} containing only x, y, z free. Let $s^{\rho(1)}$ be a closed term of WE-HA^{ω} and the type level of τ not greater than 2.

Then if one can prove:

$$\text{WE-PA}^{\omega} + \text{QF-AC} + \Delta \vdash \forall x^1 \forall y \leq_{\rho} s x \exists z^{\tau} \varphi_{\text{QF}}(x, y, z)$$

one can also extract a closed term t of WE-HA^{ω} s.t.

$$\text{WE-HA}^{\omega} + \tilde{\Delta} \vdash \forall x^1 \forall y \leq_{\rho} s x \exists z^{\tau} \leq_{\tau} t x \varphi_{\text{QF}}(x, y, z).$$

Both theorems, 1.30 and 1.31, apply also to tuples of variables, where tuples of terms are extracted. The proofs are given e.g. in [88].

1.9 Models of E-PA^ω

We will introduce three models of E-PA^ω:

- The full set-theoretic model: \mathcal{S}^ω .
- The model of all sequentially continuous functionals: \mathcal{C}^ω .
- The model of all strongly majorizable functionals: \mathcal{M}^ω .

Note that as models of E-PA^ω these are also models of any other system we presented so far.

Definition 1.32. The *full set-theoretic model* is defined inductively as the type-structure of all set-theoretic functionals:

$$\mathcal{S}_0 := \mathbb{N}, \quad (1)$$

$$\mathcal{S}_{\tau\rho} := \{ \text{all set-theoretic functionals } F : \mathcal{S}_\rho \rightarrow \mathcal{S}_\tau \}, \quad (2)$$

$$\mathcal{S}^\omega := \bigcup_{\rho \in T} \mathcal{S}_\rho. \quad (3)$$

To define \mathcal{C}^ω we need the following definition first:

Definition 1.33. Let (X, \rightarrow_X) and (Y, \rightarrow_Y) be two L-spaces. A function $f : X \rightarrow Y$ is called continuous if $f(p_n) \rightarrow_Y f(p)$ whenever $p_n \rightarrow_X p$. We denote the set of all continuous functions from X to Y by $\mathcal{C}(X, Y)$.

Here, by L-space we mean a ‘limit space’ as defined in [109].

Definition 1.34. [137] The *model of all sequentially continuous functionals* is defined inductively as follows:

$$\mathcal{C}_0 := \mathbb{N}, \quad p_n \rightarrow_0 p \equiv \exists k \forall m > k \ p_m = p \quad (1)$$

$$\mathcal{C}_{\tau\rho} := \mathcal{C}(\mathcal{C}_\rho, \mathcal{C}_\tau), \quad f_n \rightarrow_{\tau\rho} f \equiv \forall (p_n) \in \mathcal{C}_\rho^{\mathbb{N}}, p \in \mathcal{C}_\rho \ (p_n \rightarrow_\rho p \Rightarrow f_n(p_n) \rightarrow_\tau f(p)) \quad (2)$$

$$\mathcal{C}^\omega := \bigcup_{\rho \in T} \mathcal{C}_\rho. \quad (3)$$

To define \mathcal{M}^ω we will make use of the variant s-maj of Howard’s majorization relation maj.

Definition 1.35. [21] The *model of strongly majorizable functionals* is the type structure \mathcal{M}^ω defined inductively as follows:

$$\mathcal{M}_0 := \mathbb{N},$$

$$n \text{ s-maj}_0 m \equiv n \geq m \wedge n, m \in \mathbb{N} \quad (1)$$

$$\mathcal{M}_{\tau(\rho)} := \left\{ x \in \mathcal{M}_\tau^{\mathcal{M}_\rho} : \exists x^* \in \mathcal{M}_\tau^{\mathcal{M}_\rho} (x^* \text{ s-maj}_{\tau(\rho)} x) \right\},$$

$$x^* \text{ s-maj}_{\tau(\rho)} x \equiv \forall y^*, y \in \mathcal{M}_\rho \left(y^* \text{ s-maj}_\rho y \rightarrow x^* y^* \text{ s-maj}_\tau x^* y, xy \right) \wedge x^*, x \in \mathcal{M}_\tau^{\mathcal{M}_\rho} \quad (2)$$

$$\mathcal{M}^\omega := \bigcup_{\rho \in T} \mathcal{M}_\rho, \quad (3)$$

where $\mathcal{M}_\tau^{\mathcal{M}_\rho}$ is the set of all total set-theoretic mappings from \mathcal{M}_ρ into \mathcal{M}_τ .

Remark 1.36. While \mathcal{M}^ω and \mathcal{C}^ω are models of E-PA^ω with bar recursion (see definition 1.37) added, \mathcal{S}^ω is obviously not. However, the models start to differ only from type 2 on, where we still have: $\mathcal{C}_2 \subset \mathcal{M}_2 \subset \mathcal{S}_2$. So, if we use bar recursion and Peano Arithmetic to produce a functional F of type level 2, we know that it is a well defined functional in \mathcal{C}^ω therefore also in \mathcal{M}^ω and in \mathcal{S}^ω and so a total function: $\mathbb{N}^{\mathbb{N}} \mapsto \mathbb{N}$.

1.10 Bar Recursion

We give the definition in the form presented by Spector in [146]. Note that this form already uses the fact that tuples of variables of any type can be contracted into single variables. Alternatively, one could use a simultaneous form of bar recursion (see [88]).

Definition 1.37. The *bar recursor* $B_{\rho,\tau}$ is defined by:

$$B_{\rho,\tau} y z u n x :=_{\tau} \begin{cases} z n(\overline{x}, \overline{n}) & \text{if } y(\overline{x}, \overline{n}) <_0 n \\ u(\lambda D^\rho. B_{\rho,\tau} y z u (n+1)(\overline{x}, \overline{n} * D)) n(\overline{x}, \overline{n}) & \text{else} \end{cases},$$

where

$$(\overline{x}, \overline{n})(k^0) =_{\rho} \begin{cases} x(k) & \text{if } k <_0 n \\ 0^\rho & \text{else} \end{cases}$$

and

$$(\overline{x}, \overline{n} * D)(k^0) =_{\rho} \begin{cases} x(k) & \text{if } k <_0 n \\ D & \text{if } k =_0 n \\ 0^\rho & \text{else} \end{cases}.$$

Remark 1.38. Note that $\overline{f, n}$, which is still a type 1 function, is not the same as $\tilde{f}n$, what is a type 0 object (see the section Introduction, paragraph Notation and Common Expressions).

For better readability Spector presented in [146] the recursor Φ

$$\Phi y u n x m :=_{\rho} \begin{cases} x m, & \text{if } m <_0 n \\ 0^\rho, & \text{if } m \geq_0 n \wedge y(\overline{x}, \overline{n}) < n \\ \Phi y u n'(\overline{x}, \overline{n} * D_0) m, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad D_0 =_{\rho} u n(\lambda D^\rho. \Phi y u n'(\overline{x}, \overline{n} * D)),$$

for a special form of bar recursion. As in this thesis we deal only with arithmetical comprehension over numbers we don't need the bar recursion for all types. The recursor $B_{0,1}$ is fully sufficient and corresponds to Φ which can be defined primitive recursively in $B_{0,1}$ as follows:

Definition 1.39.

$$\Phi y u n x =_1 B_{0,1} y z \tilde{u} n x,$$

where

$$z n x m :=_0 \begin{cases} x m & \text{if } m <_0 n \\ 0^0 & \text{else} \end{cases},$$

$$\tilde{u} v n x m :=_0 \begin{cases} x m & \text{if } m <_0 n \\ v(u n v) m & \text{else} \end{cases}.$$

However, for any practical issue we will use the direct definition:

$$\Phi_{yunxm} :=_0 \begin{cases} xm, & \text{if } m <_0 n \\ 0^0, & \text{if } m \geq_0 n \wedge y(\bar{x}, \bar{n}) < n \\ \Phi_{yun'}(\bar{x}, \bar{n} * D_0)m, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases},$$

where

$$D_0 =_0 un(\lambda D^0. \Phi_{yun'}(\bar{x}, \bar{n} * D)).$$

Furthermore, to be able to properly analyze the complexity of the witnessing functionals in later sections, we introduce Howard's schemas of restricted bar recursion as given in [63].

Definition 1.40. The *restricted bar recursor* for *Scheme 1*, B'_1 , is defined by:

$$B'_1 y^2 z^{(2)0} un^0 x^1 :=_0 \begin{cases} zn(\bar{x}, \bar{n}) & \text{if } y(\bar{x}, \bar{n}) <_0 n \\ u(B'_1 yzu(n+1)(\bar{x}, \bar{n} * 0))(B'_1 yzu(n+1)(\bar{x}, \bar{n} * 1))n(\bar{x}, \bar{n}) & \text{else} \end{cases},$$

and for *Scheme 2*, B'_2 , by:

$$B'_2 y^2 u^1 n^0 x^1 :=_0 \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } y(\bar{x}, \bar{n}) <_0 n \\ 1 + B'_2 yu(n+1)(\bar{x}, \bar{n} * (un)) & \text{else} \end{cases}.$$

Remark 1.41. Note that, B'_1 and B'_2 are just special forms of $B_{0,0}$ since we have:

$$B'_1 y^2 z^{(2)0} un^0 x^1 = B_{0,0} yz\tilde{u}nx,$$

by setting

$$\tilde{u}vnx := u(v0)(v1)nx$$

i.e. it holds

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{u}(\lambda D^0. B_{0,0} yz\tilde{u}(n+1)(\bar{x}, \bar{n} * D))n(\bar{x}, \bar{n}) = \\ u\left((\lambda D^0. B_{0,0} yz\tilde{u}(n+1)(\bar{x}, \bar{n} * D))0\right)\left((\lambda D^0. B_{0,0} yz\tilde{u}(n+1)(\bar{x}, \bar{n} * D))1\right)n(\bar{x}, \bar{n}). \end{aligned}$$

And also:

$$B'_2 y^2 u^1 n^0 x^1 = B_{0,0} y0^{(2)0}\tilde{u}nx,$$

by setting

$$\tilde{u}vnx := 1 + v(un)$$

i.e. it holds

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{u}(\lambda D^0. B_{0,0} yz\tilde{u}(n+1)(\bar{x}, \bar{n} * D))n(\bar{x}, \bar{n}) = \\ 1 + (\lambda D^0. B_{0,0} yz\tilde{u}(n+1)(\bar{x}, \bar{n} * D))(un). \end{aligned}$$

Furthermore applied only to 0,1-sequences (i.e. type one functions $x : \mathbb{N} \mapsto \{0, 1\}$), as is always the case in this thesis, is B'_2 a special form of B'_1 since we have:

$$B'_2 y^2 u^1 n^0 x^1 = B'_1 y^2 0^{(2)0}\tilde{u}n^0 x^1,$$

by setting

$$\tilde{u}v_1v_2nx := \begin{cases} 1 + v_1 & \text{if } un =_0 0 \\ 1 + v_2 & \text{else} \end{cases}.$$

i.e. it holds

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{u}(\mathbf{B}'_1 y z \tilde{u}(n+1)(\overline{x, n} * 0))(\mathbf{B}'_1 y z \tilde{u}(n+1)(\overline{x, n} * 1))n(\overline{x, n}) = \\ \begin{cases} 1 + (\mathbf{B}'_1 y z \tilde{u}(n+1)(\overline{x, n} * 0)) & \text{if } un =_0 0 \\ 1 + (\mathbf{B}'_1 y z \tilde{u}(n+1)(\overline{x, n} * 1)) & \text{else} \end{cases}. \end{aligned}$$

1.11 Law of excluded Middle

The law of excluded middle over numbers for Σ_1^0 -formulas is defined as follows:

$$\Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}(f) \quad : \quad \forall x \exists y \forall z (f(x, y) =_0 0 \vee f(x, z) \neq_0 0).$$

Remark 1.42. Usually this law would be formulated in the following, under WE-HA^ω equivalent, way:

$$\forall x (\exists y f(x, y) =_0 0 \vee \forall z f(x, z) \neq_0 0).$$

To obtain the ND-interpretation we first use the negative translation $(\Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}(f))'$:

$$\neg\neg\forall x^0\neg\neg\exists y^0\forall z^0\neg\neg(f(x, y) =_0 0 \vee f(x, z) \neq_0 0),$$

which is intuitionistically equivalent to

$$\forall x\neg\neg\exists y\forall z (f(x, y) =_0 0 \vee f(x, z) \neq_0 0).$$

Now, following very strictly all rules, we get the functional interpretation of $(\Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM})'$:

$$\begin{aligned} \forall Z^{10}, f^{10}, x^0 \\ \left(\left(t_D(Z(t_Y Z x f)(t_D Z x f))Z x f =_0 0 \wedge f(x, t_Y Z x f) =_0 0 \right) \vee \right. \\ \left. \left(t_D(Z(t_Y Z x f)(t_D Z x f))Z x f =_0 1 \wedge f(x, Z(t_D Z x f)(t_Y Z x f)) \neq_0 0 \right) \right), \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} t_D(n^0, Z, x, f) &:=_0 \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } f(x, Z11) \neq_0 0 \\ 0 & \text{else} \end{cases}, \\ t_Y(Z, x, f) &:=_0 \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } f(x, Z11) \neq_0 0 \\ Z11 & \text{else} \end{cases}. \end{aligned}$$

However, we can see that this interpretation is unnecessarily blown up (e.g. the parameter n corresponding to $Z(t_Y Z x f)(t_D Z x f)$ in the term t_D can be completely ignored). Therefore, we give a more readable, but still intuitionistically equivalent, form:

$$\forall Z^1, f^{10}, x^0 (f(x, t_Y Z x f) =_0 0 \vee f(x, Z(t_Y Z x f)) \neq_0 0),$$

where

$$t_Y(Z, x, f) :=_0 \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } f(x, Z1) \neq_0 0 \\ Z1 & \text{else} \end{cases}.$$

Remark 1.43. From now on we will always simply prefer better readability whenever possible.

Looking closely at the case distinction of $f(x, Z1) \neq_0 0$ being true or not, it is easy to see the correctness of the interpretation.

1.12 Double Negation Shift

The Double Negation Shift schema over numbers for Σ_2^0 formulas is defined as follows:

$$\Sigma_2^0\text{-DNS}(f) : \forall x^0 \neg \exists y^0 \forall z^0 f(x, y, z) =_0 0 \rightarrow \neg \neg \forall x^0 \exists y^0 \forall z^0 f(x, y, z) =_0 0.$$

This schema is interpreted under the functional interpretation using Bar Recursion essentially in the same way as full DNS as presented by Spector in [146]:

$$\forall A^{2(0)}, T^2, W^2 \left(f(t_x^0, At_x t_B^1, t_B(At_x t_B)) =_0 0 \rightarrow f(Tt_U^1, t_U(Tt_U), Wt_U) =_0 0 \right)$$

$$t_x :=_0 Tx_0^1, \quad t_U :=_1 x_0, \quad t_B :=_1 \lambda D^0. W^2(E_{Tx_0}^{1(0)} D),$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} x_0 :=_1 \Phi Tu^{1(1(0))0^0 0^1} \\ E_{n^0} :=_{1(0)} \lambda D^0. \Phi Tun'(\overline{x_0}, \overline{n} * D) \\ un^0 v^{1(0)} :=_0 An \left(\lambda D^0. W(v(D)) \right). \end{aligned}$$

Remark 1.44. The detailed steps of the interpretation show that any term can depend on all three variables A , T and W . However, for better readability we present the result in its simpler form. E.g. by t_x we mean in fact $t_x ATW$. To be absolutely correct we would have to write: $t_x :=_{((0(20))(2))(2)} \lambda A, T, W. Tx_0^{(2)2} AW$.

The correctness proof as well as some more details can be found e.g. in [88].

1.13 Axiom of Choice

The very well known Axiom of Choice is used in a wide variety of forms in Proof Theory. We follow Troelstra (see [153]) and define:

Definition 1.45. Axiom of Choice

$$\begin{aligned} \text{AC}^{\rho, \tau} &: \forall x^\rho \exists y^\tau \varphi(x, y) \rightarrow \exists Y^{\tau(\rho)} \forall x^\rho \varphi(x, Zx) \\ \text{AC} &: \bigcup_{\rho, \tau \in T} \text{AC}^{\rho, \tau} \\ \text{QF-AC}^{\rho, \tau} &: \forall x^\rho \exists y^\tau \varphi_{\text{QF}}(x, y) \rightarrow \exists Y^{\tau(\rho)} \forall x^\rho \varphi_{\text{QF}}(x, Zx) \\ \text{QF-AC} &: \bigcup_{\rho, \tau \in T} \text{QF-AC}^{\rho, \tau}, \end{aligned}$$

where φ_{QF} is quantifier-free.

Moreover, we define an arithmetical version for universal formulas:

Definition 1.46. Axiom of Choice over numbers for Π_1^0 formulas, $\Pi_1^0\text{-AC}(f)$:

$$\forall x^0 \exists y^0 \forall z^0 f(x, y, z) =_0 0 \rightarrow \exists g^1 \forall x^0, z^0 f(x, gx, z) =_0 0.$$

This axiom is interpreted under the functional interpretation as:

$$\begin{aligned} \forall x^0, z^0, Y^1 \left(f(t_X Y x z, Y(t_X Y x z), t_Z Y x z) =_0 0 \rightarrow f(x, (t_G Y)x, z) =_0 0 \right), \\ t_X(Y^1, x^0, z^0) :=_0 x, \quad t_Z(Y^1, x^0, z^0) :=_0 z, \quad t_G(Y^1) :=_1 Y. \end{aligned}$$

We can see the correctness immediately. For further use we will need also the functional interpretation of the double negation of $\Pi_1^0\text{-AC}$, $\neg\neg\Pi_1^0\text{-AC}$, which is also straightforward.

$\neg\neg\Pi_1^0\text{-AC}(f)$:

$$\neg\neg(\forall x^0 \exists y^0 \forall z^0 f(x, y, z) =_0 0 \rightarrow \exists g^1 \forall u^0, v^0 f(u, gu, v) =_0 0).$$

This double negation is interpreted under the functional interpretation as:

$$\begin{aligned} \forall Y^1, U, V \left(f(t_X Y U V, Y(t_X Y U V), t_Z Y U V) =_0 0 \right. \\ \left. \rightarrow f(U(t_G Y), (t_G Y)(U(t_G Y)), V(t_G Y)) =_0 0 \right), \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} t_X(Y, U, V) &:=_0 UY, \\ t_Z(Y, U, V) &:=_0 VY, \\ t_G(Y) &:=_1 Y. \end{aligned}$$

To prove $(\Pi_1^0\text{-AC}(f))'$,

$$\forall x^0 \neg\neg \exists y^0 \forall z^0 f(x, y, z) =_0 0 \rightarrow \neg\neg \exists g^1 \forall x^0, z^0 f(x, gx, z) =_0 0,$$

we need only DNS and $\neg\neg(\Pi_1^0\text{-AC}(f))$. The double negation $\neg\neg(\Pi_1^0\text{-AC}(f))$ is intuitionistically equivalent to:

$$\neg\neg \forall x^0 \exists y^0 \forall z^0 f(x, y, z) =_0 0 \rightarrow \neg\neg \exists g^1 \forall x^0, z^0 f(x, gx, z) =_0 0. \quad (+)$$

Using (+) we can prove $(\Pi_1^0\text{-AC}(f))'$ by a single use of the rule

$$\frac{\varphi \rightarrow \psi \quad \psi \rightarrow \chi}{\varphi \rightarrow \chi},$$

since by setting

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi &:= \forall x^0 \neg\neg \exists y^0 \forall z^0 f(x, y, z) =_0 0, \\ \psi &:= \neg\neg \forall x^0 \exists y^0 \forall z^0 f(x, y, z) =_0 0, \\ \chi &:= \neg\neg \exists g^1 \forall x^0, z^0 f(x, gx, z) =_0 0, \end{aligned}$$

we get

$$\frac{\Sigma_2^0\text{-DNS}(f) \quad \neg\neg(\Pi_1^0\text{-AC}(f))}{(\Pi_1^0\text{-AC}(f))'}.$$

To find the interpreting terms we follow the term construction as given e.g. in [88]. We will use the interpretations given above (see section 1.12 for the interpretation of DNS) and solve the following equations:

$$\begin{aligned} t_X YUV &=_0 T t_U \\ Y(t_X YUV) &=_0 t_U(T t_U) \\ t_Z YUV &=_0 W t_U. \end{aligned}$$

Now, easily by setting $Y := t_U$ we get $T = U$ and $V = W$, which leads us to precisely the same interpretation as the one of DNS:

$$\forall A^{2(0)}, T^2, W^2 \left(f(t_x, At_x t_B, t_B(At_x t_B)) =_0 0 \rightarrow f(T t_U, t_U(T t_U), W t_U) =_0 0 \right),$$

where t_x, t_B and t_U are as in section 1.12.

Remark 1.47. We could conclude this already from the fact that apart from DNS the only used principle was a double negation of intuitionistically very weak and trivially interpretable axiom $\Pi_1^0\text{-AC}$.

1.14 Arithmetical Comprehension

The *Schema of Comprehension* is known in several forms. We give following four in $\mathcal{L}(\text{WE-HA}^\omega)$.

Definition 1.48. The schema:

$$\exists f^{0(\tau)} \forall \underline{x}^\tau \left(\varphi(\underline{x}) \leftrightarrow f \underline{x} =_0 0 \right)$$

is called

- *Full Comprehension*, abbreviation: **CA**; iff there are no restrictions on the formula φ .
- *Arithmetical Comprehension*, abbreviations: $\Pi_\infty^0\text{-CA}$, **ACA** or **CA_{ar}**; iff all quantifiers in φ range over numbers only. Equivalently, we may say φ is an arithmetical formula or φ is a Π_∞^0 formula.
- (Arithmetical) *Comprehension over numbers*, abbreviations: $(\Pi_\infty^0\text{-})\text{CA}^0$, **(A)CA⁰** or **CA_(ar)⁰**; iff x is a single number, i.e. $\tau = (0)$.
- *Arithmetical Comprehension over numbers for purely universal formulas*, $\Pi_1^0\text{-CA}$, iff φ is a Π_1^0 formula and x is a number. Using the fact that in all systems we use, we have characteristic functions for quantifier-free formulas, see e.g. [88], we obtain the following equivalent formulation:

$$\Pi_1^0\text{-CA} \quad : \quad \forall f^{0(00)} \underbrace{\exists g^1 \forall x^0 \left((\forall y^0 f(x, y) =_0 0) \leftrightarrow g x =_0 0 \right)}_{\equiv: \Pi_1^0\text{-CA}(f^{0(00)})}.$$

Remark 1.49. Since we can derive any instance of CA_{ar}^0 in WE-PA^ω by iterated application of $\Pi_1^0\text{-CA}$, the last two versions are equivalent. However, this is only the case for full $\Pi_1^0\text{-CA}$ and not for concrete instances $\Pi_1^0\text{-CA}(f)$.

The schema of arithmetical comprehension is one of the core schemas we need for the interpretation of proofs based on sequential compactness. It is also considered to be essential for formalizing large parts of classical analysis, see [144]. For our purposes the suitable instances of the schema of comprehension over numbers for Π_1^0 (or equivalently for Σ_1^0) formulas are fully sufficient. As in the case of $\Pi_1^0\text{-AC}$ the whole complexity of the interpretation is given by $\Sigma_2^0\text{-DNS}$ with a primitive recursive case distinction from $\Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}$.

The even in E-PA^ω stronger, but using $\text{QF-AC}^{0,0}$ already in $\widehat{\text{WE-HA}}^\omega \uparrow$ to $\Pi_1^0\text{-CA}$ equivalent, form called modified schema of comprehension over numbers for Π_1^0 formulas,

$$\Pi_1^0\text{-}\widehat{\text{CA}}(f) \quad : \quad \exists g^1 \forall x^0, z^0 (fx(gx) =_0 0 \vee fxz \neq_0 0),$$

is very practical for finding the functional interpretation as well as for finding the functional interpretation of the negative translation.

Remark 1.50. To see the fact that $\Pi_1^0\text{-CA}$ is weaker than $\Pi_1^0\text{-}\widehat{\text{CA}}$ observe that $\Pi_1^0\text{-}\widehat{\text{CA}}$ proves the existence of functions growing faster than any function in \mathcal{T} , which $\Pi_1^0\text{-CA}$ does not, as the function f in $\Pi_1^0\text{-CA}$ is always majorized by 1^1 .

On the other hand, for suitable primitive recursive functional F , we can prove $\Pi_1^0\text{-CA}(Ff)$ implies $\Pi_1^0\text{-}\widehat{\text{CA}}(f)$ in $\widehat{\text{WE-HA}}^\omega \uparrow + \text{QF-AC}^{0,0}$ in a similar way as we prove $(\Pi_1^0\text{-CA}(f))'$ below. First, we apply $\Pi_1^0\text{-CA}$ to the intuitionistically valid law $\Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}(f)$:

$$\begin{array}{c} \forall x \exists y \forall z \quad \underbrace{(f(x, y) =_0 0 \vee f(x, z) \neq_0 0)}_{\substack{:= F(f, x, y, z) =_0 0 \text{ for a suitable prim. rek. } F \\ \text{apply } \Pi_1^0\text{-CA}(Ff)}} \end{array} ,$$

obtaining a $g^{0(00)}$ s. t. $\forall x^0 \exists y^0 (gxy =_0 0 \leftrightarrow \forall z^0 Ffxyz =_0 0)$. By $\text{QF-AC}^{0,0}$ we get a function h^1 such that it holds: $\forall x \ g(x, hx) =_0 0$, so finally we obtain $\Pi_1^0\text{-}\widehat{\text{CA}}(f)$.

On the other hand, given $\Pi_1^0\text{-}\widehat{\text{CA}}(f)$ we can define a new g^1 as $\lambda x^0. f^{0(00)}(x, g^1 x)$ obtaining $\Pi_1^0\text{-CA}(f)$.

The negative translation of the modified schema of comprehension over numbers for Π_1^0 formulas,

$$(\Pi_1^0\text{-}\widehat{\text{CA}}(f))' \quad : \quad \neg \neg \exists g^1 \forall x^0, z^0 (fx(gx) =_0 0 \vee fxz \neq_0 0),$$

follows directly by applying $(\Pi_1^0\text{-AC}(G))'$ to $(\Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}(f))'$ for a suitable φ . By defining

$$G_f(x, y, z) := \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } f(x, z) \neq_0 0 \\ f(x, y) & \text{else} \end{cases} ,$$

$(\Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}(f))'$ becomes:

$$\forall x^0 \neg \neg \exists y^0 \forall z^0 G_fxyz =_0 0.$$

Applying $(\Pi_1^0\text{-AC}(f))'$ is actually a single use of a primitive rule, namely the modus ponens instance

$$\frac{\varphi \quad \varphi \rightarrow \psi}{\psi},$$

since setting φ to $(\Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}(f))'$ allows us to set $\varphi \rightarrow \psi$ to $(\Pi_1^0\text{-AC}(G_f))'$, what leads us to the conclusion ψ :

$$\neg\neg\exists g^1\forall x^0, z^0 G_f x(gx)z =_0 0,$$

what is the same, unwinding G_f , as $(\Pi_1^0\widehat{\text{CA}}(f))'$.

To find the functional interpretation of $(\Pi_1^0\widehat{\text{CA}}(f))'$ first consider the functional interpretation of $(\Pi_1^0\text{-AC}(G_f))'$. We can even use a partial interpretation (producing a weaker statement), since the assumption φ in the modus ponens is proved directly (satisfying the weaker statement). We obtain following representation (for f free):

$$\forall A_f^{2(0)}, T, W \left(\forall x^0, B^1 G_f(x, A_f x B, B(A_f x B)) =_0 0 \rightarrow \right. \\ \left. G_f(T t_U, t_U(T t_U), W t_U) =_0 0 \right).$$

Remark 1.51. This approach would be very unwise if the functional interpretation of the implication was used to compute some further results within a larger proof. Using this approach in such a case results in loss of information about the logical relation between the assumption and conclusion.

From the interpretation of $\Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}'$ we know that (for f free and knowing that any term can depend on T and W)

$$\forall x, B G_f(x, A_f x B, B(A_f x B)) =_0 0$$

is satisfied by setting (for f free)

$$A_f x B := \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } f(x, B1) \neq_0 0 \\ B1 & \text{else} \end{cases}.$$

Obviously, the functional interpretation of $\forall f (\Pi_1^0\widehat{\text{CA}}(f))'$ just swaps the $\forall f$ and the exists quantification of the functional interpretation of $(\Pi_1^0\widehat{\text{CA}}(f))'$ adding f as a parameter to every existential variable (see also section 1.11). In particular A becomes dependent on f . We can actually define t_A , the corresponding primitive recursive term to $A(f, x, B)$ as:

$$t_A := \lambda f. \lambda x. \lambda B. \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } f(x, B1) \neq_0 0 \\ B1 & \text{else} \end{cases},$$

what satisfies

$$t_A f = A_f.$$

It is important to mention the dependency of A on f , since this is the main difference to the ND-interpretation of AC, where the realizing terms were completely independent on this function. This means, $(\Pi_1^0\widehat{\text{CA}}(f))'$ is interpreted (keeping in mind that, as before, t_U always has T and W as parameters, and now, via A_f also f) by:

$$\forall T, W \left(G_f(T t_U, t_U(T t_U), W t_U) =_0 0 \right),$$

which is

$$\forall T^2, W^2 \left(f(Tt_U, t_U(Tt_U)) =_0 0 \vee f(Tt_U, Wt_U) \neq_0 0 \right),$$

where $t_U :=_1 x_0$ is the same functional as in the interpretation of DNS in section 1.12, in which A is defined as above and T and W correspond to the T and W above. We summarize:

Proposition 1.52 (ND-interpretation of $\Pi_1^0\text{-}\widehat{\mathbf{CA}}(f)$). *The schema of arithmetical comprehension over numbers for purely universal formulas (for a given function $f^{(1(0))}$)*

$$\exists g^1 \forall x^0, z^0 (fx(gx) =_0 0 \vee fxz \neq_0 0),$$

is ND-interpreted as follows:

$$\forall X^2, Z^2 \left(f(Xt_g, t_g(Xt_g)) =_0 0 \vee f(Xt_g, Zt_g) \neq_0 0 \right),$$

where

$$t_g :=_1 \Phi X u_{Z,f}^{1(1(0))} 0^0 0^1, \\ u_{Z,f} n^0 v^{1(0)} :=_0 \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } f(n, Z(v^{1(0)})) \neq_0 0 \\ Z(v^{1(0)}) & \text{else} \end{cases}.$$

Remark 1.53. Note that in contrast to the functional interpretation of $\Pi_1^0\text{-AC}$, where all realizing terms were independent on the function f , here the bar recursive term t_g realizing the function g has to be defined using f .

Using the ND-interpretation of $\Pi_1^0\text{-}\widehat{\mathbf{CA}}(f)$ we obtain also the ND-interpretations of $\Pi_1^0\text{-CA}$ and $\Sigma_1^0\text{-CA}$:

Corollary 1.54 (ND-interpretation of $\Pi_1^0\text{-CA}$). *The schema of arithmetical comprehension over numbers for purely universal formulas*

$$\forall f^{1(0)} \exists h^1 \leq_1 \mathbf{1}^1 \forall x^0 (hx =_0 0 \leftrightarrow \forall z fxz \neq_0 0),$$

is ND-interpreted as follows:

$$\forall X^{0(10)(1)}, Z^{0(10)(1)} \left((t_h XZ(X(t_h XZ)(t_z XZ)) =_0 0 \rightarrow \right. \\ \left. f(X(t_h XZ)(t_z XZ), Z(t_h XZ)(t_z XZ)) \neq_0 0 \right) \wedge \\ \left(t_h XZ(X(t_h XZ)(t_z XZ)) =_0 0 \leftarrow \right. \\ \left. f(X(t_h XZ)(t_z XZ), t_z XZ(X(t_h XZ)(t_z XZ))(Z(t_h XZ)(t_z XZ))) \neq_0 0 \right) \Big).$$

The witnessing terms are

$$t_z := \lambda X^{0(10)(1)}, Z^{0(10)(1)}, a^0, b^0. t_g(t_f X)(t_f Z)a, \\ t_h := \lambda X^{0(10)(1)}, Z^{0(10)(1)}, n^0. \overleftarrow{f}(n, t_g(t_f X)(t_f Z)n),$$

where

$$\overleftarrow{n}^0 :=_0 \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } n =_0 0 \\ 0 & \text{else} \end{cases}, \\ t_f := \lambda X^{0(10)(1)}, g^1. X(\lambda n^0. \overleftarrow{f}(n, gn))(\lambda a^0, b^0. ga).$$

The remaining terms are defined as above in proposition 1.52, just we give the two type 2 arguments of t_g explicitly, i.e., t_g stands only for the term t_g of type level 3 and not for the type 1 term $t_g XZ$ as above.

Remark 1.55. We use a slightly different form of Π_1^0 -CA than in definition 1.48 above in two aspects:

1. Since we can give a realizer for h^1 bounded by 1^1 we formulate the sentence directly in the stronger version with $h^1 \leq_1 1^1$. We do so also in corollary 1.56.
2. In contrast to the common formulations we want h to comprehend $\forall z \, fxz \neq 0$ instead of $\forall z \, fxz = 0$. Both formulations are equivalent, though the one used in corollary 1.54 spares us some technical overhead and so improves the readability of the proof below.

Moreover, we don't strictly follow the rules of the ND-interpretation and choose the " $\forall\exists$ " prenexiation over " $\exists\forall$ " to start with. Again, this leads to an equivalent statement resulting in simpler and more readable terms of lower type.

Proof of corollary 1.54. Rewriting proposition 1.52 using the formally correct notation of corollary 1.54 we have that:

$$\forall X^2, Z^2 \quad (f(X(t_g XZ), t_g XZ(X(t_g XZ))) =_0 0 \vee f(X(t_g XZ), Z(t_g XZ)) \neq_0 0). \quad (+)$$

Given any $X_0^{0(10)(1)}, Z_0^{0(10)(1)}$ set $X^2 := t_f X_0$ and $Z^2 := t_f Z_0$ to obtain:

$$\begin{aligned} X(t_g XZ) &= t_f X_0(t_g XZ) \\ &= X_0(\lambda n. \overrightarrow{f(n, t_g XZ n)})(\lambda a, b. t_g XZ a) \\ &= X_0(\lambda n. \overrightarrow{f(n, t_g(t_f X_0)(t_f Z_0) n)})(\lambda a, b. t_g(t_f X_0)(t_f Z_0) a) \\ &= X_0(t_h X_0 Z_0)(t_z X_0 Z_0) \end{aligned} \quad (*)$$

and analogously $Z(t_g XZ) = Z_0(t_h X_0 Z_0)(t_z X_0 Z_0)$.

- Suppose we have $t_h X_0 Z_0(X_0(t_h X_0 Z_0)(t_z X_0 Z_0)) =_0 0$.
It follows by (*) that $t_h X_0 Z_0(X(t_g XZ)) =_0 0$ and by definition of t_h that

$$f(X(t_g XZ), t_g(t_f X_0)(t_f Z_0)(X(t_g XZ))) \neq 0.$$

By definition of X and Z we get $f(X(t_g XZ), t_g XZ(X(t_g XZ))) \neq 0$ which implies

$$f(X(t_g XZ), Z(t_g XZ)) \neq 0$$

by (+) and

$$f(X_0(t_h X_0 Z_0)(t_z X_0 Z_0), Z_0(t_h X_0 Z_0)(t_z X_0 Z_0)) \neq 0$$

by (*).

- On the other hand, let

$$f(X_0(t_h X_0 Z_0)(t_z X_0 Z_0), t_z X_0 Z_0(X_0(t_h X_0 Z_0)(t_z X_0 Z_0))(Z_0(t_h X_0 Z_0)(t_z X_0 Z_0))) \neq 0.$$

Unwinding t_z we get

$$f(X_0(t_h X_0 Z_0)(t_z X_0 Z_0), t_g(t_f X_0)(t_f Z_0)(X_0(t_h X_0 Z_0)(t_z X_0 Z_0))) \neq 0.$$

Hence, we obtain $t_h X_0 Z_0(X_0(t_h X_0 Z_0)(t_z X_0 Z_0)) = 0$.

□

The schema $(\Sigma_1^0\text{-CA})'$ is D-interpreted in a similar way.

Corollary 1.56 (ND-interpretation of $\Sigma_1^0\text{-CA}(f)$). *The schema of arithmetical comprehension over numbers for purely existential formulas (for a given function $f^{1(0)}$)*

$$\exists h^1 \leq_1 1^1 \forall x^0 (hx =_0 0 \leftrightarrow \exists z f xz =_0 0),$$

is ND-interpreted as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \forall X^{0(10)(1)}, Z^{0(10)(1)} \quad & (t_h XZ(X(t_h XZ)(t_z XZ)) =_0 0 \leftarrow \\ & f(X(t_h XZ)(t_z XZ), Z(t_h XZ)(t_z XZ)) \neq_0 0) \wedge \\ & t_h XZ(X(t_h XZ)(t_z XZ)) =_0 0 \rightarrow \\ & f(X(t_h XZ)(t_z XZ), t_z XZ(X(t_h XZ)(t_z XZ))(Z(t_h XZ)(t_z XZ))) \neq_0 0). \end{aligned}$$

As above in corollary 1.54, the witnessing terms are:

$$\begin{aligned} t_z &:= \lambda X^{0(10)(1)}, Z^{0(10)(1)}, a^0, b^0 . t_g(t_f X)(t_f Z)a, \\ t_h &:= \lambda X^{0(10)(1)}, Z^{0(10)(1)}, n^0 . \overleftarrow{\overrightarrow{f(n, t_g(t_f X)(t_f Z)n)}}. \end{aligned}$$

The term t_g corresponds to the term defined in proposition 1.52. The only difference is that we give the two type 2 arguments of t_g explicitly, i.e., t_g stands only for the term t_g of type level 3 and not for the type 1 term $t_g XZ$ as above. We redefine $\overleftarrow{\overrightarrow{n^0}}$ as:

$$\overleftarrow{\overrightarrow{n^0}} :=_0 \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } n =_0 0 \\ 1 & \text{else} \end{cases},$$

what slightly changes the meaning of t_f (and t_h) compared to corollary 1.54. However, we keep the exact syntactic form for t_f as before:

$$t_f := \lambda X^{0(10)(1)}, g^1 . X(\lambda n^0 . \overleftarrow{\overrightarrow{f(n, g n)}})(\lambda a^0, b^0 . ga).$$

Proof. The proof is essentially the same as the proof of 1.54. By (+) and (*) we refer to the statements (+) and (*) in that proof. The notation and definitions of X and Z remain syntactically the same as above as well.

- Suppose we have $t_h X_0 Z_0(X_0(t_h X_0 Z_0)(t_z X_0 Z_0)) =_0 0$. It follows by (*) that

$$t_h X_0 Z_0(X(t_g XZ)) =_0 0$$

and by definition of t_h that

$$f(X(t_g XZ), t_g(t_f X_0)(t_f Z_0)(X(t_g XZ))) = 0.$$

By (*) and definition of X and Z we get

$$\begin{aligned} & f(X_0(t_h X_0 Z_0)(t_z X_0 Z_0), t_g(t_f X_0)(t_f Z_0)(X_0(t_h X_0 Z_0)(t_z X_0 Z_0))) = \\ & f(X_0(t_h X_0 Z_0)(t_z X_0 Z_0), t_z X_0 Z_0(X_0(t_h X_0 Z_0)(t_z X_0 Z_0))(Z_0(t_h X_0 Z_0)(t_z X_0 Z_0)))) = 0. \end{aligned}$$

- On the other hand, let $f(X_0(t_h X_0 Z_0)(t_z X_0 Z_0), Z_0(t_h X_0 Z_0)(t_z X_0 Z_0)) = 0$. By (*) it means $f(X(t_g \underline{U}), Z(t_g \underline{U})) = 0$, what implies $f(X(t_g XZ), t_g XZ(X(t_g XZ))) = 0$ by (+). Using (*) and the definition of X , Z , and t_h we obtain

$$f(X_0(t_h X_0 Z_0)(t_z X_0 Z_0), t_g(t_f X_0)(t_f Z_0)(X_0(t_h X_0 Z_0)(t_z X_0 Z_0))) = \\ t_h X_0 Z_0(X_0(t_h X_0 Z_0)(t_z X_0 Z_0)) = 0.$$

□

Remark 1.57. We mentioned earlier that we will use M^ω and the stability of atomic formulas modulo double negation silently to obtain more readable results. In addition, in this case we use two modifications to obtain the ND-interpretation of Σ_1^0 -CA. Each modification leads to an intuitionistically equivalent formula:

$$\frac{\frac{\neg\neg\exists h^1\forall x^0(hx =_0 0 \leftrightarrow \neg\neg\exists z f xz =_0 0)}{\neg\neg\exists h^1\forall x^0(hx =_0 0 \leftrightarrow \neg\forall z \neg(f xz =_0 0))} \text{ Lemma 1.5}}{\neg\neg\exists h^1\forall x^0(hx \neq_0 0 \leftrightarrow \forall z f xz \neq_0 0)} \text{ Definition 1.3}.$$

The ND-interpretations of Π_1^0 -CA and Σ_1^0 -CA could be simplified even more. Namely, we have $\forall X^{0(10)(1)}, Z^{0(10)(1)}, a^0, b^0 t_z XZab =_0 t_z XZa0$, i.e. the term $t_z XZ$ does not depend on its second type 0 argument. Hence, we could define the terms t_z and t_f as:

$$t_z := \lambda X^{2(1)}, Z^{2(1)}, a^0 . t_g(t_f X)(t_f Z)a \\ t_f := \lambda X^{2(1)}, g^1 . X(\lambda n^0 . \overrightarrow{f(n, gn)})g$$

and reformulate the corollaries 1.54 and 1.56 equivalently for all $X^{2(1)}$ and $Z^{2(1)}$ using

$$t_z XZ(X(t_h XZ)(t_z XZ))$$

instead of $t_z XZ(X(t_h XZ)(t_z XZ))(Z(t_h XZ)(t_z XZ))$.

Summary

The main result, which we will need also in later sections is the ND-interpretation of CA (Corollary 1.56), we reformulate is here using the more compact Sh-interpretation:

Theorem 1.58 (Sh-interpretation of Σ_1^0 -CA). *The schema of arithmetical comprehension over numbers for purely existential formulas (for a given function $f^{1(0)}$)*

$$\exists h^1\forall x^0(hx =_0 0 \leftrightarrow \exists z f xz =_0 0),$$

is Sh-interpreted as follows (using the clause (S7*) for the conjunction hidden in ' \leftrightarrow ')

$$\forall X^{0(10)(1)}, Z^{0(10)(1)} [(t_h XZ(X(t_h XZ)(t_z XZ)) =_0 0 \leftarrow \\ f(X(t_h XZ)(t_z XZ), Z(t_h XZ)(t_z XZ)) =_0 0) \wedge \\ (t_h XZ(X(t_h XZ)(t_z XZ)) =_0 0 \rightarrow \\ f(X(t_h XZ)(t_z XZ), t_z XZ(X(t_h XZ)(t_z XZ))(Z(t_h XZ)(t_z XZ))) =_0 0)].$$

The witnessing terms are:

$$\begin{aligned} t_z &:= \lambda X^{0(10)(1)}, Z^{0(10)(1)}, a^0, b^0 . t_g(t_f X)(t_f Z) a, \\ t_h &:= \lambda X^{0(10)(1)}, Z^{0(10)(1)}, n^0 . \overleftarrow{f}(n, t_g(t_f X)(t_f Z) n), \end{aligned}$$

where $t_f := \lambda X^{0(10)(1)}, g^1 . X(\lambda n^0 . \overleftarrow{f}(n, g n))(\lambda a^0, b^0 . g a)$ and $\overleftarrow{n}^0 :=_0 \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } n =_0 0 \\ 1 & \text{else} \end{cases}$.

The term t_g corresponds to the term defined in proposition 1.52. The only difference is that we give the two type 2 arguments of t_g explicitly, i.e., t_g stands only for the term t_g of type level 3 and not for the type 1 term $t_g XZ$ as above.

1.15 Weak König's Lemma

The König's lemma as such is mostly known in the following form:

Every infinite, though finitary branching, tree has an infinite path.

However, this version is fairly strong and it can be shown that it is equivalent to \mathbf{CA}^0 if we allow arbitrary formulas for the decision of belonging to the tree (see e.g. [154]).

If the labels for branches are bounded by a function α depending only on the current node *and* the tree is defined by a quantifier-free (or purely universal) formula we get a significantly weaker tool, which is intuitionistically equivalent to **WKL**, where we restrict the lemma to binary trees only (i.e. $\alpha(\cdot) \leq 1$). Even so, namely for quantifier-free binary trees, the lemma becomes equivalent to \mathbf{CA}_{ar}^0 if we ask for the left-most or some other concrete infinite path instead of just some infinite path. This means we need all three weakenings:

- The decision criteria, $\varphi(x^0)$, for an initial segment of a sequence of natural numbers, x , to belong to the tree defined by the characteristic function f must be a Π_1^0 formula (we can allow one for-all-quantifier since it has no essential influence on the structure of the lemma - see definition 1.59 and proposition 1.61). If we allow arbitrary formulas, we get even full \mathbf{CA}^0 (regardless of any bounds on the number of branches greater than 1).
- For each node, the labels of its branches must be bounded by a well defined type one function depending only on the height of the node. Otherwise, we get Π_1^0 -**CA** and by iteration \mathbf{CA}_{ar}^0 even for quantifier-free decision criteria.
- There can't be any additional (infinite) demands on the infinite path except for its existence.

We consider the following definition:

Definition 1.59 (**WKL**(φ)). For a given φ we define the following theorem. Every infinite binary tree given by the decision criteria φ has an infinite path,

$$\mathbf{WKL}(\varphi) : \mathbf{BinTree}(\varphi) \wedge \forall k \mathbf{Unbounded}(\varphi, k) \rightarrow \exists b \left(\mathbf{BinFunc}(b) \wedge \forall k \varphi(\bar{b}(k)) \right),$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{BinFunc}(b) &:= \forall n^0 (b(n) =_0 0 \vee b(n) =_0 1), \\ \mathbf{BinTree}(\varphi) &:= \forall s \left(\varphi(s) \rightarrow s \in \{0, 1\}^{<\omega} \wedge \forall t \subseteq s \varphi(t) \right), \\ \mathbf{Unbounded}(\varphi, k^0) &:= \exists s \in \{0, 1\}^k \varphi(s). \end{aligned}$$

Furthermore, we define the schema $\Pi_n^0\text{-WKL}$, as the union of $\text{WKL}(\varphi)$, where φ is a Π_n^0 formula. Also, we write $\Pi_n^0\text{-WKL}(\varphi)$ to indicate that we mean the concrete instance $\text{WKL}(\varphi)$ and that φ is a Π_n^0 formula.

Note that, for every fixed $n \in \mathbb{N}$, we can always reformulate the schema $\Pi_n^0\text{-WKL}$ as a single 2^{nd} -order axiom. We will use this fact implicitly. However, in the special case for quantifier-free φ we define explicitly:

Definition 1.60 ($\text{WKL} \equiv \forall f \text{WKL}(f)$ see also [154]). Every infinite binary tree, given by the characteristic function f , has an infinite path:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{WKL}(f) \quad : \quad & \text{BinTree}_K(f) \wedge \forall k \exists x (\text{lh}(x) =_0 k \wedge f(x) =_0 0) \rightarrow \\ & \exists b \leq_1 \mathbf{1}^1 \left(\forall k f(\bar{b}(k)) =_0 0 \right), \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\text{BinTree}_K(f^1) := \forall x, y (f(x * y) =_0 0 \rightarrow f x =_0 0) \wedge \forall x, n (f(x * \langle n \rangle) =_0 0 \rightarrow n \leq_0 1).$$

We mentioned earlier that the schema $\Pi_1^0\text{-WKL}$ is essentially equivalent to WKL . this is proved by the proposition 1.61 below, using the fact that in all systems used in this thesis there is a suitable f^1 for any quantifier-free $\varphi_{\text{QF}}(\underline{n})$ with only the type 0 parameters \underline{n} free s.t. $f(\underline{n}) =_0 0 \Leftrightarrow \varphi_{\text{QF}}(\underline{n})$ (and vice-versa).

Proposition 1.61.

$$\text{WE-HA}^\omega \vdash \Pi_1^0\text{-WKL} \leftrightarrow \text{WKL}$$

Proof (see also [144]).

- $\Pi_1^0\text{-WKL} \rightarrow \text{WKL}$:
If we have $\text{WKL}(\varphi)$ for Π_1^0 formulas φ , it surely holds for quantifier-free formulas especially for $\varphi := f(n^0) =_0 0$.
- $\Pi_1^0\text{-WKL} \leftarrow \text{WKL}$:
Since $\varphi \in \Pi_1^0$, $\varphi(s)$ can be written as $\forall n^0 \varphi_0(s, f, n)$. Next we involve two tricks in definition of a quantifier-free version of φ :

$$\tilde{\varphi}(s, f) := \forall n^0 <_0 \text{lh}(s), t \subseteq s (\varphi_0(f, t, n) \wedge s(n) \leq_0 1).$$

1. Since we get $\forall n^0 <_0 \text{lh}(s) \varphi_0(f, t, n)$ for-all s in the conclusion of WKL , the number n is in fact unbounded.
2. We guarantee $\text{BinTree}(\tilde{\varphi})$ as a free property for any $\tilde{\varphi}$. The tree property by forcing

$$\forall t \subseteq s \varphi_0(f, t, n)$$

and the binary property by

$$\forall n_0 <_0 \text{lh}(s), t \subseteq s s(n) \leq_0 1.$$

Now, suppose

$$\text{BinTree}(\varphi) \wedge \forall k \text{Unbounded}(\varphi, k)$$

i.e. we have (by $\forall k \text{Unbounded}(\varphi, k)$):

$$\forall k \exists s \in \{0, 1\}^k \forall n \varphi_0(f, n, s). \quad (+)$$

By $\text{BinTree}(\varphi)$ and (+) we get:

$$\forall k \exists s \in \{0, 1\}^k (\forall n^0 <_0 \text{lh}(s), t \subseteq s (\varphi_0(f, t, n) \wedge s(n) \leq_0 1)),$$

i.e. we have

$$\forall k \exists s \in \{0, 1\}^k \tilde{\varphi}(f, s),$$

and classically also

$$\forall k \text{Unbounded}(\tilde{\varphi}, k).$$

By the steps above we showed so far (using trick (2) to get $\text{BinTree}(\tilde{\varphi})$):

$$\text{BinTree}(\varphi) \wedge \forall k \text{Unbounded}(\varphi, k) \rightarrow \text{BinTree}(\tilde{\varphi}) \wedge \forall k \text{Unbounded}(\tilde{\varphi}, k).$$

We can define in WE-HA^ω the primitive recursive term for the following type one function g^1 :

$$g(s) :=_0 \begin{cases} 0^0 & \text{if } \tilde{\varphi}(f, s) \\ 1^0 & \text{else} \end{cases}.$$

To get equivalently:

$$\text{BinTree}(f) \wedge \forall k \text{Unbounded}(f, k) \rightarrow \text{BinTree}_K(g) \wedge \forall k \text{Unbounded}(g, k).$$

Applying $\text{WKL}(g)$ to the conclusion we get:

$$\exists b \leq_1 \mathbf{1}^1 \forall k g(\bar{b}(k)) =_0 0$$

what is, by definition of g , the same as

$$\exists b \leq_1 \mathbf{1}^1 \forall k \tilde{\varphi}(\bar{b}(k), f),$$

what is, by definition of $\tilde{\varphi}$, the same as

$$\exists b^1 \leq_1 \mathbf{1}^1 \forall k^0 \forall n^0 <_0 k \forall t \subseteq \bar{b}(k) \varphi_0(f, t, n).$$

This implies (using trick (1) from the definition of $\tilde{\varphi}$):

$$\exists b^1 \leq_1 \mathbf{1}^1 \forall k^0 \forall n^0 \forall t \subseteq \bar{b}(k) \varphi_0(f, t, n).$$

Observing that $\forall k \forall t \subseteq \bar{b}(k) \psi(t)$ is equivalent to $\forall k \psi(\bar{b}(k))$ for arbitrary formulas ψ we finally obtain:

$$\exists b^1 \leq_1 \mathbf{1}^1 \forall k^0 (\forall n^0 \varphi_0(f, \bar{b}(k), n)) \equiv \exists b^1 \leq_1 \mathbf{1}^1 \forall k^0 \varphi(f, \bar{b}(k)).$$

□

Remark 1.62. Where the necessity of trick (1) in the definition of $\tilde{\varphi}$ is easy to see, one might think that the trick (2) is not needed. This is not true. The following example shows that in general we even *do not* have $\text{BinTree}(\forall n \varphi_0(f, s, n)) \rightarrow \text{BinTree}(\forall n^0 <_0 \text{lh}(s)(\varphi_0(f, s, n) \wedge s(n) \leq_0 1))$. For some given constant number $c^0 \in \mathbb{N}$, define

$$\varphi_0(f, s, n) := s \in \{0, 1\}^{\text{lh}(s)} \wedge (s(0) =_0 0 \vee s(0) > c + 1 + n - 2 * \text{lh}(s)).$$

While $\forall n \varphi_0(f, s, n)$ defines the tree consisting exactly of all binary sequences starting with 0, the formula $\forall n^0 <_0 \text{lh}(s) \varphi_0(f, s, n)$ is true for all such sequences but also for all binary sequences of length greater than c . In other words, any sequence of length e.g. $c + 1$ starting with 1 is a counterexample for $\text{BinTree}(\forall n^0 <_0 \text{lh}(s)(\varphi_0(f, s, n) \wedge s(n) \leq_0 1))$.

Kohlenbach showed in his work (see [72], [88]), that WKL is intuitionistically equivalent to a sentence in Δ as defined in theorem 1.28. We sketch this result in 1.15. This equivalence actually suggests that the lemma will not have any significant effect on the final complexity of the realizers of sentences whose proofs are based on WKL in common systems.

There are several ways to prove this fact. Howard gives a technical argument using restricted Bar Recursion in [63] which we follow in 1.15.

Kohlenbach's WKL' as a Sentence Δ

First, observe that WKL is equivalent (in $\widehat{\text{WE-HA}}^\omega$) to:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{WKL}_{K1} : \quad & \forall f, g \left(\text{BinTree}_K(f) \wedge \forall k (\text{lh}(\bar{g}k) =_0 k \wedge f(\bar{g}k) =_0 0) \rightarrow \right. \\ & \left. \exists b \leq_1 \mathbf{1}^1 \forall k^0 (f(\bar{b}k) =_0 0) \right). \end{aligned}$$

Next, we define for any type 1 function f^1 the constructions \hat{f} and f_g :

Definition 1.63.

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{f}n &:= \begin{cases} fn & \text{if } fn \neq 0 \vee (\forall k, l (k * l = n \rightarrow fk = 0) \wedge \forall i < \text{lh}(n) (n_i \leq 1)) \\ 1^0 & \text{else} \end{cases} \\ f_g n &:= \begin{cases} fn & \text{if } f(g(\text{lh}(n))) = 0 \wedge \text{lh}(g(\text{lh}(n))) = \text{lh}(n) \\ 0^0 & \text{else} \end{cases}. \end{aligned}$$

Remark 1.64. We defined already a construction \hat{o} for a type 1 object in 1.14. It should be obvious which meaning should be assigned from the context. From now on, we will use it mostly in the sense of 1.63.

Now, we are able to define

Definition 1.65.

$$\text{WKL}' : \quad \forall f^1, g^1 \exists b \leq_1 \mathbf{1}^1 \forall k^0 \left((\hat{f})_g(\bar{b}k) =_0 0 \right).$$

To obtain:

Proposition 1.66. *The sentence WKL' is in Δ as defined in theorem 1.28 and:*

$$\text{WE-HA}^\omega \vdash \text{WKL} \leftrightarrow \text{WKL}'.$$

The complete proof of an even stronger result, namely of the equivalence under $\widehat{\text{WE-HA}}^\omega \vdash$, can be found in [88]. In that book, Kohlenbach also proves the following lemma:

Lemma 1.67.

$$\widehat{\text{WE-HA}}^\omega \vdash \vdash \forall f \text{BinTree}_K(\hat{f}) \quad (1)$$

$$\widehat{\text{WE-HA}}^\omega \vdash \vdash \forall f (\text{BinTree}_K(f) \rightarrow f =_1 \hat{f}) \quad (2)$$

$$\widehat{\text{WE-HA}}^\omega \vdash \vdash \forall f, g \forall n \exists x (\text{lh}(x) = n \wedge f_g(x) = 0) \quad (3)$$

$$\widehat{\text{WE-HA}}^\omega \vdash \vdash \forall f, g (\forall n (\text{lh}(gn) = n \wedge f(gn) = 0) \rightarrow f_g =_1 f) \quad (4)$$

For the purpose of this thesis mainly $\text{WKL} \leftarrow \text{WKL}'$ is interesting:

Proof. Assume $\text{BinTree}_K(f)$ and $\forall k \exists n (\text{lh}(n) = k \wedge fn = 0)$. Then

$$\forall k \exists n \leq \overline{1^1}k (\text{lh}(n) = k \wedge fn = 0).$$

Define primitive recursive in f :

$$gk := \begin{cases} \min n \leq \overline{1^1}k (\text{lh}(n) = k \wedge fn = 0) & \text{if such an } n \text{ exists} \\ 0^0 & \text{else} \end{cases},$$

to obtain $\forall k (\text{lh}(gk) = k \wedge f(gk) = 0)$.

Using lemma 1.67 and other Kohlenbach's results from [88] we get $f_g =_1 f$ and $f =_1 \hat{f}$.

This proves $(\hat{f})_g =_1 f$.

Finally WKL' yields $\exists b \leq_1 \overline{1^1} \forall k^0 (f(\bar{b}k) = 0)$.

□

Using the fixed construction for g from the proof above, we can define a fixed term s of WE-HA^ω , and formulate yet another version of WKL :

Definition 1.68. $\text{WKL}_s \equiv \forall f \text{WKL}_s(f)$, where

$$\text{WKL}_s(f) \quad := \quad \exists b \leq_1 \overline{1^1} \forall k^0 ((\hat{f})_s(\bar{b}k) =_0 0).$$

By the proof of proposition 1.66, we still have:

Proposition 1.69.

$$\text{WE-HA}^\omega \vdash \text{WKL}_s \rightarrow \text{WKL}.$$

Howard's D-interpretation of WKL

We cannot D-interpret the lemma directly. We could apply the negative translation to the lemma and then go for the D-interpretation, but it turns out that the proof is simpler when we go for the ND-interpretation of a classically equivalent formula, the so called **FAN** principle. In this section, let f^1 be a characteristic function of a tree, x^0 and y^0 encodings of finite $\{0, 1\}$ -sequences, and b^1 a $\{0, 1\}$ -sequence (i.e. $b \in \{0, 1\}^\omega$). We define the **FAN** principle as follows (note that the hat construction does not affect the general meaning - see proposition 1.66 - however, it does significantly simplify the terms as it eliminates some quantifiers):

Definition 1.70 ($\text{FAN} \equiv \forall f \text{FAN}(f)$). We define the **FAN** principle for a given function f as

$$\text{FAN}(f) \quad :\equiv \quad \forall b \exists j \text{Sec}(\bar{b}j) \rightarrow \exists k \forall x (\text{lh}(x) \geq k \rightarrow \text{Sec}(x)),$$

where **Sec** means *secured*:

$$\text{Sec}(x) \quad :\equiv \quad \hat{f}(x) \neq 0.$$

In [63], Howard showed that the D-interpretation of **WKL** (using the classically equivalent **FAN**) can be obtained using only the so called restricted Bar Recursion (defined in the same publication, see also definition 1.40). We will present this proof filling in some details (the proofs of lemma 1.72 and lemma 1.73 as well as the witness for the binary sequence b).

The secured property is conservative over extensions, i.e. for any two finite binary sequences x and y we have:

$$x \subseteq y \rightarrow (\text{Sec}(x) \rightarrow \text{Sec}(y)). \quad (\text{SC})$$

Hence, the conclusion of $\text{FAN}(f)$ is equivalent to a Σ_1^0 formulation (as the for-all quantifier can be bounded):

$$\forall b \exists j \text{Sec}(\bar{b}j) \rightarrow \exists k \underbrace{\forall x \in \{0,1\}^k \text{Sec}(x)}_{\text{quantifier-free}}.$$

Moreover, in the presence of the Markov principle, the negative interpretation does not change the formula. Already in intuitionistic logic, $\neg\neg(A \rightarrow B)$ is equivalent to $A \rightarrow \neg\neg B$. So, the negative interpretation becomes

$$\forall b \neg\neg \exists j \text{Sec}(\bar{b}j) \rightarrow \neg\neg(\exists k \forall x \in \{0,1\}^k \text{Sec}(x)).$$

By the Markov principle we get

$$\forall b \exists j \neg\neg \text{Sec}(\bar{b}j) \rightarrow \exists k \neg\neg \forall x \in \{0,1\}^k \text{Sec}(x)$$

and because of the stability of quantifier-free formulas modulo double negation, we get just the very same sentence we started with. In summary we have:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{WE-PA}^\omega &\vdash \text{WKL} \leftrightarrow \text{FAN}, \\ \text{WE-HA}^\omega &\vdash (\text{WKL})' \leftrightarrow (\text{FAN})', \\ \text{WE-HA}^\omega + \text{M}^\omega &\vdash \text{FAN} \leftrightarrow (\text{FAN})', \\ \text{WE-HA}^\omega + \text{M}^\omega &\vdash (\text{WKL})' \leftrightarrow \text{FAN}, \end{aligned}$$

and therefore also:

$$\text{WE-HA}^\omega + \text{M}^\omega \vdash (\text{WKL})^{ND} \leftrightarrow (\text{FAN})^D.$$

So **FAN** is precisely the form of **WKL** we want to D-interpret.

By quantifier-free Axiom of Choice $\text{QF-AC}^{1,0}$ we get from $\forall b \exists j \text{Sec}(\bar{b}j)$:

$$\exists A \forall b \text{Sec}(\bar{b}(Ab)).$$

Now, define K_A as follows:

$$K_A x := \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } A[x] < \text{lh}(x) \\ 1 + \max \{K_A(x * 0), K_A(x * 1)\} & \text{else} \end{cases}.$$

Further define:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{BarSec}(k, x) &::= \forall y \left((x \subseteq y \wedge \text{lh}(x) + k = \text{lh}(y)) \rightarrow \text{Sec}(y) \right), \\ \text{BarSec}_A(x) &::= \text{BarSec}(K_A x, x). \end{aligned}$$

Remark 1.71. $\text{BarSec}(k, x)$ is the predicate for: Every finite extension of x with the length $\text{lh}(x) + k$ is secured.

We will make use of the following two lemmas (in both cases we consider some functional A for which $\forall b \text{ Sec}(\bar{b}(Ab))$ holds, moreover, w.l.o.g. it may be assumed that A is computable since it was obtained by $\text{QF-AC}^{1,0}$):

Lemma 1.72.

$$A[x] < \text{lh}(x) \rightarrow \text{BarSec}_A(x)$$

Proof. We assume:

$$A[x] < \text{lh}(x). \quad (*)$$

By definition of K_A we get:

$$K_A x = 0. \quad (**)$$

From $\forall b \text{ Sec}(\bar{b}(Ab))$ we get

$$\text{Sec}(\overline{[x]}(A[x])).$$

By (*) we know that

$$\overline{[x]}(A[x]) \subseteq x$$

hence by (SC) it follows

$$\text{Sec}(x).$$

Using (**) and the definitions of BarSec and BarSec_A we get:

$$\text{Sec}(x) \equiv \text{BarSec}(0, x) \equiv \text{BarSec}_A(x).$$

□

Lemma 1.73.

$$\text{BarSec}_A(x * 0) \wedge \text{BarSec}_A(x * 1) \rightarrow \text{BarSec}_A(x)$$

Proof. Assume:

$$\text{BarSec}_A(x * 0) \wedge \text{BarSec}_A(x * 1). \quad (*)$$

If $A[x] < \text{lh}(x)$, then by lemma 1.72 we have $\text{BarSec}_A(x)$. So, using the definition of K_A we may assume w.l.o.g:

$$K_A x = 1 + \max\{K_A(x * 0), K_A(x * 1)\}.$$

Obviously we have:

$$K_A x > K_A(x * 0) \wedge K_A x > K_A(x * 1).$$

So by (*) we know that for some number $m \leq \text{lh}(x) + K_A(x)$ all extensions of $(x * 0)$ and $(x * 1)$ of the fixed length m are secured. Therefore all extensions of x with fixed length m are secured. However, this is expressed as $\text{BarSec}(K_A x, x) \equiv \text{BarSec}_A(x)$. \square

Since $\text{BarSec}_A(x)$ can be written as a quantifier-free formula for any given x , and hence is primitive recursive in x , we can use primitive recursion on the contrapositive of lemma 1.73:

$$\neg \text{BarSec}_A(x) \rightarrow \neg (\text{BarSec}_A(x * 0) \wedge \text{BarSec}_A(x * 1)),$$

to obtain a function $g \leq 1$, s.t.

$$\neg \text{BarSec}_A(\emptyset) \rightarrow \forall j \neg \text{BarSec}_A(\bar{g}j).$$

However, we can prove the existence of a j s.t. $\text{BarSec}_A(\bar{g}j)$, using only restricted Bar Recursion, and thereby proving $\text{BarSec}_A(\emptyset)$. To do so, we follow another publication from Howard, namely [60], where he proves an, by lemma 1.72, even stronger lemma (for the same kind of functional A as above):

Lemma 1.74. *By restricted bar recursion plus primitive recursion, we can define θ_A , s.t. for all b it holds:*

$$\exists k \leq \theta_A b \emptyset \quad A[\bar{b}k] < k.$$

Remark 1.75. In fact the functional θ_A is given simply by $\theta_A b \emptyset := \mu k. A[\bar{b}k] \leq k$. Since we have to work in a model justifying bar recursion and, as discussed e.g. by Kohlenbach in [88], we can define the μ -operator via bar recursion this functional is well defined in all such models, e.g. \mathcal{C}^ω or \mathcal{M}^ω . Howard's proof of lemma 1.74 is analyzed in the first appendix of [134]. It is rather technical and not essential at this point.

Lemma 1.74 especially implies $\forall g^1 \leq 1 \exists k^0 A[\bar{g}k] < k$, which implies $\forall g^1 \leq 1 \exists k^0 \text{BarSec}_A(\bar{g}k)$ by lemma 1.72. So, as mentioned above, using this result we obtain:

$$\text{BarSec}_A(\emptyset) \leftrightarrow \text{BarSec}(K_A \emptyset, \emptyset).$$

This is, by definition, just another form of:

$$\forall x \left((\emptyset \subseteq x \wedge K_A(\emptyset) = \text{lh}(x)) \rightarrow \text{Sec}(x) \right).$$

So, finally we obtain:

$$\forall x \left(\text{lh}(x) \geq K_A(\emptyset) \rightarrow \text{Sec}(x) \right).$$

What completes the proof that $K_A(\emptyset)$ is the ND-realizer of k in $\text{FAN}(f)$.

To complete the solution of the D-interpretation we still have to find the functional B which satisfies:

$$\forall A, x \left(\text{Sec}(\bar{B}(AB)) \rightarrow (\text{lh}(x) \geq K_A(\emptyset) \rightarrow \text{Sec}(x)) \right).$$

Fortunately, this is easily done. Let y^0 encode either a binary sequence of length $K_A(\emptyset)$ which is in the tree or, if such a sequence doesn't exist, the empty sequence. Now we can define the functional B as the infinite extension of this sequence, $[y]$. See also the theorem 1.79 below.

The same functionals interpret the standard (positive) formulation of WKL, which is just the contrapositive of the outer implication:

$$\forall A, x \ (\text{lh}(x) \geq K_A(\emptyset) \wedge x \in f \rightarrow f(\overline{B}(AB)) = 0).$$

We summarize:

Theorem 1.76 (The ND-interpretation of WKL(f)). *The Weak König's lemma for binary trees given by an arithmetic characteristic function f*

$$\text{BinTree}(f) \wedge \forall k \text{Unbounded}(f, k) \rightarrow \exists b \left(\text{BinFunc}(b) \wedge \forall k \ f(\overline{b}(k)) = 0 \right)$$

is, provably in $\text{WE-HA}^\omega + \text{QF-AC}^{1,0} + \mathbf{B}'_1$, ND-interpreted as follows:

$$\forall A, x \ (\text{lh}(x) \geq K_A(\emptyset) \wedge x \in f \rightarrow f(\overline{B}(AB)) = 0),$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} K_A x &:= \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } A[x] < \text{lh}(x) \\ 1 + \max \{ K_A(x * 0), K_A(x * 1) \} & \text{else} \end{cases}, \\ B(A) &:= [F_f(K_A(\emptyset))], \\ F_f(n) &:= \begin{cases} \min_0 \{ b^0 : b^0 = \langle b_1, \dots, b_n \rangle, \underline{b} \in \{0, 1\}^n \wedge f(b) = 0 \} & \text{if such a } b \text{ exists} \\ \emptyset & \text{else} \end{cases}. \end{aligned}$$

In particular, these terms define total functionals in \mathcal{M}^ω and \mathcal{C}^ω .

Majorants for Howard's Solution

First, note that any term t majorized by a term t^* has at most the complexity of t^* since it can be obtained by bounded search up to t^* . As the complexity of the realizers in theorem 1.76 is not obvious it might be interesting to examine suitable majorants for these realizers:

Theorem 1.77. *The solution of the ND-interpretation of WKL(f) is, provably in $\text{WE-HA}^\omega + \text{QF-AC}^{1,0} + \mathbf{B}'_1$, majorized as follows:*

$$K^* :=_{(10)2} \lambda A^2, x^0. A^2 \mathbf{1} \text{maj}_{(10)2} K \tag{1}$$

$$B^* :=_{1(2)} \lambda A^2. \mathbf{1}^1 \text{maj}_{1(2)} B. \tag{2}$$

Again, these terms define total functionals in \mathcal{M}^ω and \mathcal{C}^ω .

Proof.

(2) Follows directly from the fact:

$$\lambda n^0, x^0. \overline{\mathbf{1}}^1 (\text{lh}(x) + n) \text{maj}_{1(1)} F.$$

(1) According to definition 1.26-(2) suppose A^* majorizes A . We get immediately from the definition of K_A and $A^* \text{maj}_2 A$

$$\forall s \in \{0, 1\}^{A^*1} \forall x \subseteq s \quad K_A x \leq_0 A^*1 - \text{lh}(x).$$

In other words, for any finite binary sequence x we have:

$$\text{lh}(x) \leq_0 A^*1 \rightarrow K_A x \leq_0 A^*1.$$

Now, suppose $\text{lh}(x) > A^*1$ for some x . From $A^* \text{maj}_2 A$ we get $\text{lh}(x) > A[x]$ and we have immediately from the definition of K_A that $K_A x =_0 0 \leq_0 A^*1$.

So finally, we obtain: $K_A x \leq_0 A^*1$, what is the same as $A^*1 \text{maj}_0 K_A x$ for all finite binary sequences x .

□

Summary

Above, we discussed at length the WKL principle purposefully following the notation as used by Kohlenbach in [88], which would unfortunately clash with the remainder of this thesis. Therefore, let us here briefly summarize the important results regarding WKL using a more compatible notation. Also, we resort directly to Shoenfield interpretation.

Definition 1.78. $\text{WKL}_\Delta \equiv \forall f \text{WKL}_\Delta(f)$, where

$$\text{WKL}_\Delta(f) \quad \equiv \quad \exists b^1 \forall k^0 \quad \widehat{\left(\widehat{f} \right)}_g(\bar{b}k) =_0 0, \text{ with}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \widehat{f}n &:= \begin{cases} fn & \text{if } fn \neq 0 \vee (\forall k, l(k * l = n \rightarrow fk = 0) \wedge \forall i < \text{lh}(n) (n_i \leq 1)) \\ 1^0 & \text{else,} \end{cases} \\ f_g n &:= \begin{cases} fn & \text{if } f(g(\text{lh}(n))) = 0 \wedge \text{lh}(g(\text{lh}(n))) = \text{lh}(n) \\ 0^0 & \text{else,} \end{cases} \\ gk &:= gfk := \begin{cases} \min n \leq \bar{1}^1 k (\text{lh}(n) = k \wedge fn = 0) & \text{if such an } n \text{ exists} \\ 0^0 & \text{else,} \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

where for any given number theoretical function f^1 , \widehat{f} assigns a unique characteristic function of a 0/1-tree² and $f_g n$ adds the full subtree if there is no path of length n^3 (this may destroy the tree property of f if present). The function g simply looks for a path of length n and retruns 0 if none exists (otherwise the code of the path itself is returned).

We have: $\widehat{\text{WE-HA}}^\omega \vdash \text{WKL}_\Delta \leftrightarrow \text{WKL}$.

Howard proves in [63] that one can give the realizing functionals for the Sh-interpretation of WKL using only restricted bar recursion and \mathcal{T}_0 . This proof is discussed in great detail above and we use it to obtain the Sh-interpretation of $\text{WKL}(f)$:

²If f was such a characteristic function already, then it is not modified at all (i.e. we would have $\widehat{f} = f$).

³Again, if f defined an infinite tree already, then it is not modified at all (i.e. we would have $f_g = f$).

Theorem 1.79 (The Sh-interpretation of WKL_Δ). *The Weak König's lemma for binary trees*

$$\forall f \exists b^1 \forall k^0 \left(\widehat{f} \right)_g (\bar{b}k) =_0 0$$

is, provably in $\text{WE-HA}^\omega + \mathbf{B}'_1$, Sh-interpreted as follows:

$$\forall f, A \exists b^1 \left(\widehat{f} \right)_g (\bar{b}(Ab)) = 0,$$

where b is realized by $b :=_1 B^{\text{WKL}} Af$:

$$\begin{aligned} B^{\text{WKL}}(A, f) &:= [g(\left(\widehat{f} \right)_{gf}) (K^{\text{WKL}}(A, \emptyset))], \\ K^{\text{WKL}}(A, x) &:= \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } A[x] < \text{lh}(x) \\ 1 + \max \{K_A(x * 0), K_A(x * 1)\} & \text{else} \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

where g is the same term as we used in the Definition ??⁴. Note that K^{WKL} is definable by \mathbf{B}'_1 .

Proposition 1.80. *The solution of the Sh-interpretation of $\text{WKL}(f)$ is, provably in $\widehat{\text{WE-HA}}^\omega + \mathbf{B}'_1$, majorized as follows:*

$$K^* :=_{1(0)(2)} \lambda A^2, x^0. A^2 \mathbf{1} \text{ maj}_{1(0)(2)} K^{\text{WKL}}, \quad B^* :=_{1(2)} \lambda A^2. \mathbf{1}^1 \text{ maj}_{1(2)} B^{\text{WKL}}.$$

1.16 Complexity classes and bar recursion

The interesting question, apart from the concrete form of the realizers, is how the specific bar recursors and rules for bar recursion affect their complexity. Considerable research was done in the general field of investigating the effect of bar recursion on the complexity of the provably total functions of the underlying system by W. A. Howard, G. Kreisel, H. Luckhardt, H. Schwichtenberg and others. We will mainly use the results of Howard (see [60], [63]), who gave an ordinal analysis of bar recursion of type 0 for the cases in which the bar recursion operator has type level 3 or 4 (here we mean the final type level of the operator, not the type level of its arguments) and studied the effect of recursors of specific types on the complexity in general.

There are several different notions of *primitive recursive* functionals. In connection with the D-interpretation Gödel considered the following class of functionals:

Definition 1.81 (Gödel's \mathcal{T} , Gödel 1958). The set theoretic functionals denoted by the closed terms of $\text{E-HA}^\omega / \text{WE-HA}^\omega$ are called *Gödel primitive recursive functionals of finite type*. The quantifier-free term calculus corresponding to WE-HA^ω is also called Gödel's \mathcal{T} .

In addition we define the α -recursive functionals:

Definition 1.82 ((unnested) Ordinal Recursion). Let the well-ordering of natural numbers \prec be as in [138]. By \prec_α we mean the restriction of \prec to numbers $n \prec \alpha$, i.e.

⁴We define $[\cdot]$ analogously for codes of sequences as we did for sequences themselves.

$a \prec_\alpha b \equiv a \prec b \prec \alpha$. A function defined by means of a sequence of explicit definitions and the (unnested) *ordinal recursion* on \prec_α (where y' is the successor of y):

$$f^1(\underline{x}, 0) = G^1(\underline{x}) \quad (1)$$

$$f^1(\underline{x}, y') = H^1(\underline{x}, y', f(\underline{x}, \theta(\underline{x}, y'))), \quad (2)$$

where $\forall \underline{x}, y (\theta(\underline{x}, y') \prec_\alpha y' \wedge \theta(\underline{x}, 0) = 0)$, is called an α -recursive function. By $<\alpha$ -recursive, we mean a β -recursive function with $\beta < \alpha$.

Note that in this section α is used to denote an ordinal as well as to denote a variable, depending on the context.

The class of primitive recursive functionals in the sense of Kleene (see S1-S8 in [69]) is strictly smaller than the class of Gödel primitive recursive functionals. In fact, the primitive recursive functionals in the sense of Kleene are the functionals of pure type defined by the closed terms of $\widehat{\text{WE-HA}}^\omega \upharpoonright / \widehat{\text{E-HA}}^\omega \upharpoonright$ as discussed by Feferman in [33].

For type 1, the Kleene primitive recursive functionals are just the ordinary primitive recursive functions whereas the Gödel primitive recursive functionals of type 1 are the provably total recursive functions of PA, that is $<\epsilon_0$ -recursive functions.

To enable a more subtle description for the complexity of terms we introduce the restricted classes of Gödel's \mathcal{T} .

Definition 1.83 (\mathcal{T}_n). By \mathcal{T}_n we denote the fragment of \mathcal{T} with R_ρ (see definition 1.3) restricted to ρ of type level $\leq n$.

The first interesting question is, how does the Bar Recursion affect the primitive recursive functionals in \mathcal{T} . In other words, how does the addition of B (and its defining axioms) to the systems in definition 1.81 above change the class of such functionals. This was studied in different ways by several researchers. One of the first to publish a partial answer was H. Schwichtenberg:

Proposition 1.84 (Schwichtenberg [140]). *For functionals y, z, u in \mathcal{T} of proper types, also the functionals $B_{0,\rho}yzu$ and $B_{1,\rho}yzu$ are in \mathcal{T} for arbitrary $\rho \in \mathbf{T}$.*

In other words, the terms of \mathcal{T} are closed under the rule of bar recursion $B_{1,\rho}$. This result was used by Kohlenbach in [81] to obtain:

Proposition 1.85 (Kohlenbach [81]). *Let $t^2[\underline{x}^0, \underline{h}^1]$ be a term of \mathcal{T} containing at most the free variables \underline{x} of type 0 and variables \underline{h} of type level 1. Let z, u, n , and y be the respective arguments of $B_{0,\tau}$ of appropriate type for arbitrary $\tau \in \mathbf{T}$. Then the functional*

$$\lambda \underline{x}, \underline{h}, z, u, n, y. B_{0,\tau}(t[\underline{x}, \underline{h}], z, u, n, y)$$

is definable in \mathcal{T} such that WE-HA $^\omega$ proves its characterizing equations.

Using this result and a normalization argument Kohlenbach proves in [81] also another related result (Proposition 4.1, page 1504) of which we state the following corollary (note that the corollary itself can be concluded also from Howard's results in [63]):

Corollary 1.86. *Up to type level 2, the terms (containing only variables of type level ≤ 1) definable in $\mathcal{T}_1 + B_{0,1}$ are definable in \mathcal{T} and vice versa.*

We should mention that the proof of 1.84 was based on ordinal analysis using Tait's result given in [149]:

Proposition 1.87 (Tait [149], p. 189–191). *Given an ordinal $\alpha < \epsilon_0$, the α -recursion can be reduced to primitive recursion at higher type.*

For the purpose of this thesis an earlier published result of Parsons is even more interesting:

Definition 1.88. Let $\omega_k(\omega)$ denote $\omega^{\omega^{\dots^{\omega}}}_k$.

Proposition 1.89 (Parsons [128], p. 361). *The same functions are $<\omega_{k+1}(\omega)$ -recursive as are functions defined by the closed terms of \mathcal{T}_k .*

The search for a finer analysis of bar recursion of type 0 suitable to examine cases where only simple forms of bar recursion are added to \mathcal{T}_n only, rather than to full \mathcal{T} , was brought forward by Howard in [63].

For a term t^0 , Howard defines its *computation size* as the length of its computation tree allowing nondeterministic contractions as defined in [62] and [63]. The corresponding deterministic contraction for Howard's bar recursor, B_H , is defined as follows (see [63]):

$$B_H AFGcH \text{ contr } R_0(\lambda a, b. GcH)(Fc(\lambda u^0. B_H AFG(c * u))H)(lh(c) \dot{-} A[c]), \quad (+)$$

where c is the encoding of a finite sequence of natural numbers c_0, c_1, \dots, c_k for some k and H stands for $H_1 \dots H_n$ for $H_i, i \in \{1, \dots, n\}$, of appropriate type. This corresponds to our definition of the bar recursor $B_{0,\tau}$, (definition 1.37), where A, F, G , and c correspond to y, u, z , and \bar{x}, \bar{n} respectively.

For a term t^1 or t^2 , there are variables a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n s.t. $ta_1 \dots a_n$ has type 0. Howard then defines the computational size of t as the computational size for $ta_1 \dots a_n$. Only terms with type level at most 2 with free variables of type level at most 1 are considered.

Howard extends $\mathcal{T} + B_H$ by the terms $\{\alpha, c, t\}$ of the same type as $B_H A$, where the forming of $\{\alpha, c, t\}$ binds all occurrences of α in t and the proper subterms of $\{\alpha, c, t\}$ consist of all subterms of t . For computation the contraction (+) is replaced by the following four contractions (a subterm αm of $\{\alpha, c, t\}$ can be contracted only when $m < lh(c)$ and only to c_m):

1.

$$B_H AFGcH \text{ contr } \{\alpha, c, A\alpha\}FGcH,$$

where α is chosen so as not to be free in A .

2. If t is a numeral $< lh(c)$ then

$$\{\alpha, c, t\}FGcH \text{ contr } GcH.$$

3. For every t of type 0

$$\{\alpha, c, t\}FGcH \text{ contr } R_0(\lambda a, b. GcH)(Fc(\lambda u^0. \{\alpha, c, t\}FG(c * u))H)(lh(c) \dot{-} t_c),$$

where t_c denotes the result of substituting $[c]$ for α in t .

4.

$$\{\alpha, d, t\}FG(d * n)H \text{ contr } \{\alpha, d * n, t\}FG(d * n)H.$$

From section 4, “Constructive treatment”, of [63] it follows that the function corresponding to a term of computational size α is an α -recursive function and vice-versa. We will use mainly the following result of Howard:

Proposition 1.90 (Howard [63], p. 23). *Let F , G and t have computation sizes f, g and $\text{size}(t)$, respectively, and suppose $\{\alpha, c, t\}$ has type level ≤ 3 . Then $\{\alpha, c, t\}FGc$ has computation size ω^{g+f2^h} , where $h = \omega \text{size}(t) + \omega$.*

In other words proposition 1.90 states that:

Any recursor, having (as functional) type level ≤ 3 (this includes $\mathbf{B}_{0,1}$), applied to ordinal recursive functionals on standard orderings up to $<\omega_k(\omega)$ results in an ordinal recursive functional on standard ordering $<\omega_{k+1}(\omega)$.

The interested reader is encouraged to study the original paper. Here, for brevity, we restrict ourselves just to the simplified reformulation above, using the notation of proposition 1.89, rather than introduce the complete set of definitions and notation used by Howard.

Effective learnability

The Cauchy property of a sequence of real numbers states that in order to know the limit of the sequence up to an approximation 2^{-k} we have to compute the n -th element of the sequence. This n is the most important information we have about the value of the limit of the sequence, unfortunately it is often non-computable in the parameters of the sequence. The paper is about the next best information we may have, an effective bound to the number of mistakes we may do while making assumptions on the value of n . This goal is interesting and the paper contains some relevant results in this direction ...

– anonymous referee about [100], Nov 22, 2012.

Motivation

As mentioned earlier, in this chapter we investigate various levels of (effective) quantitative information on convergence theorems or, more precisely, theorems about Cauchy property of a sequence in a metric space (X, d)

$$\forall k \in \mathbb{N} \exists n \in \mathbb{N} \forall m, \tilde{m} \geq n \ (d(x_m, x_{\tilde{m}}) \leq 2^{-k})$$

and also more general Π_3^0 -theorems. The probably weakest information is a rate of metastability, namely a functional Φ such that

$$\forall k \in \mathbb{N} \forall f : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N} \exists n \leq \Phi(k, f) \forall i, j \in [n; n + f(n)] \ (d(x_i, x_j) \leq 2^{-k}).$$

In next chapter we will discuss some general logical metatheorems for strong systems of analysis based on full classical logic, which guarantee the extractability of (sub-)recursive (and highly uniform) rates of metastability and give a case study on such an extraction.

Another such result is the already discussed extraction of a uniform rate of metastability for the strong convergence in the mean ergodic theorem for uniformly convex Banach spaces X carried out in [?]. The also aforementioned recent observation by Avigad and Rute [13] that the analysis in [?] can be used to obtain a simple effective (and also highly uniform) bound on the number of fluctuations, was one of the main inspirations for the underlying work in [100] on which base large parts of this chapter. With

our effective learnability, we will try to give answer to the question whether there are general logical conditions on convergence proofs to guarantee the extractability of effective bounds on fluctuations, which arises naturally.

Of course, the extractability of a computable rate of convergence is a sufficient condition for this, however this topic is well known (see e.g. [?] or [45]). Let us note though, that all such criteria are based on intuitionistic systems, with the use of “classicality” limited to LEM_{\neg} . Moreover, adding an important weak principle of classical logic, the so-called Markov principle (extended to all finite types)

$$\mathbf{M}^{\omega} : \neg\neg\exists x^{\ell} \varphi_0(x) \rightarrow \exists x^{\ell} \varphi_0(x),$$

is permissible only if LEM_{\neg} is weakened to the so-called lesser-limited-omniscience-principle LLPO. This is particularly interesting, since this is one of the standard examples for how much “classicality” comes so to say automatically in non-standard systems, which we discuss in the last chapter.

The so to say smallest step towards classical logic not covered by either of the above (but provable in their union) is $\Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}$. Note that already $\text{HA} + \Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}$ allows to prove the Cauchy-ness of the Specker sequence, primitive recursive monotone decreasing sequences of rational numbers in $[0, 1]$ which do not have a computable rate of convergence, while the scenarios above typically include AC (which would make $\Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}$ significantly stronger). Much related work to this was done in [152, 1, 53, 31, 18, 7, 5, 6]. An important observation is that $\Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}$ is already the general case. Namely, as far as Π_3^0 -theorems go⁵, there is no difference in proofs based on full classical logic and proofs using only $\Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}$. We discuss this in detail prior to Proposition 2.19, where we formalize and prove this claim.

So in order to have a stronger computational content than simply metastability, but also cover more than the well studied case when we have a full and computable rate of convergence we have to restrict the use of “classicality” somewhere between $\Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}$ and LEM_{\neg} .

It turns out, that the right amount is to allow $\Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}$ to be used only fixed many times as an instance. See Theorem 2.10, where we show that from such proofs one can always extract effective (and in fact primitive recursive in the sense of Gödel’s T) bounds B, L on the effective learnability of a rate of convergence of the sequence in question. Here B, L are effective functionals (in the parameters of the proved statement). We call L the learner or learning procedure and B the bound on the number of steps along this procedure. We will show that this is a strictly stronger information than a rate of metastability as the latter can be obtained from the learnability by a simple and uniform primitive recursive procedure (in the ordinary sense of Kleene – which we will use in this motivation as default). However, there are primitive recursive Cauchy sequences with a primitive recursive rate of metastability which do not admit any computable bound for the learnability (of a rate of convergence).

We will further show that the B, L learnability of a Cauchy statement demonstrates itself in a particular simple structure of the rate of metastability of the underlying sequence:

$$(L^*(\underline{a}^*) \circ g)^{(B^*(\underline{a}^*))}(0),$$

where $f^{(x)}(0)$ denotes the x -times iteration of the function f starting from 0 (note that B^*, L^* do not involve the counterfunction). It is precisely this form of a rate of metastability that has been observed many times in concrete unwindings in ergodic theory and

⁵even with parameters in $\mathbb{N}, \mathbb{N}^{\mathbb{N}}$

fixed point theory (see e.g. [?, ?, ?, 92, 93]) For the first time this, until the knowledge of this result rather dazzling, circumstance can be explained in natural terms. This is because we not only connect the underlying logical structure but also give a rather natural condition, which is to be expected to occur.

On the other hand, this makes our results from the next chapter even more interesting. Namely, a notable exceptions to this restricted format of metastability are the rates of metastability for the ergodic theorem for odd (and even more general) operators in [135] where Wittmann's proof maps to a nested use of the iteration procedure and for the (weak convergence in the) Baillon nonlinear ergodic theorem in [?] where the proof maps nested use of a bar recursive functional. However, both underlying proofs violate our criterion of a bounded use of Σ_1^0 -LEM as defined in 2.10.

Comming back to the original motivation, a bound on the number of fluctuations is a strictly stronger quantitative information still (we give a separating example). Together with the already discussed Specker sequences we get the (w.r.t. effectivity) strict hierarchy of quantitative data for the convergence of Cauchy sequences (with – as quoted at various places above – a plenty of real examples from analysis/ergodic theory as they arise in praxis of proof mining for each level):

1. A rate of convergence.
2. A bound on the number of approximate fluctuations.
3. Function(al)s B, L (see the below for a precise definition) of the learnability of a rate of convergence by B -many mind changes by a learning procedure L .
4. A rate of metastability.

2.1 Fluctuations versus effective learnability

To be specific, let us use in the following the language of (intuitionistic) arithmetic in all finite types HA^ω (more precisely the system WE-HA^ω , see [88]) as well as its extension $\text{HA}^\omega[X, \|\cdot\|]$ by an abstract normed space X in the sense of [86, 45, 88] in order to be able to cover also the aforementioned recent applications of proof mining to ergodic and fixed point theory which need this enriched language. Everything we say extends *mutatis mutandis* also to theories where more conditions on X are prescribed (e.g. X being a uniformly convex or a Hilbert space) and convex subsets C of X being added as well as to metric structures X such as metric, W -hyperbolic and $\text{CAT}(0)$ spaces (see [88] for all this). The type of natural numbers \mathbb{N} is usually denoted by 0 while 1 denotes the type of functions $\mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$.

$\mathcal{S}^{\omega, X}$ denotes the full set-theoretic model of these theories over the base types \mathbb{N} and X . Occasionally, we will need the relation ' x^* majorizes x ' (short: $x^* \text{ maj } x$) due to W.A. Howard (for the finite types over \mathbb{N}) which is defined in the usual hereditary way by induction on the type of x starting from

$$x^* \text{ maj}_0 x \equiv x^* \geq x$$

for x^*, x of type 0 and

$$x^* \text{ maj}_X x \equiv x^* \geq \|x\|$$

for x of type X and x^* of type 0.

Definition 2.1 (the number of fluctuations). For a sequence $x_{(\cdot)}$ in some metric space (X, d) and an $\epsilon > 0$ let $\text{Fluc}(n, i, j)$ denote that there are n fluctuations whose indexes are encoded into i and j .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Fluc}(n, i, j) &:= \text{Fluc}_{x_{(\cdot)}, \epsilon}(n, i, j) := \text{lh}(i) = \text{lh}(j) = n \quad \wedge \\ &\quad \forall k < n \ (i_k < j_k) \quad \wedge \\ &\quad \forall k < n - 1 \ (j_k \leq i_{k+1}) \quad \wedge \\ &\quad \forall k < n \ (d(x_{i_k}, x_{j_k}) > \epsilon). \end{aligned}$$

We call b a bound on the number of ϵ -fluctuations of $x_{(\cdot)}$, iff

$$\forall n > b \forall i, j \neg \text{Fluc}(n, i, j).$$

We call b effective if it is computable in $\epsilon \in \mathbb{Q}_+^*$ and $x_{(\cdot)}$.

In the Language identification in the limit model for inductive inference, the notion of learnable with an existence of a mind change bound was introduced in the sixties (see e.g. [49]). We define a similar concept in the context of general formal theories like PA^ω . Since we require both the learning procedure and the bound on mind changes to be recursive (effective) we call this property *effective learnability*.

Remark 2.2. The proof-theoretic study of learnability by finitely many (though not necessarily effectively bounded) mind changes in analysis has been initiated by Hayashi (see e.g. [51, 52]) who (with Nakata) established the close relation of this concept to limit computability (see e.g. [53]). The concept of mind change for Cauchy statements is also implicit in section 5.1 of [162] (Proof of Lemma 31.c). Effective learnability concepts for functionals $F : D \rightarrow \mathbb{N}^\mathbb{N}$ (with $D \subseteq \mathbb{N}^\mathbb{N}$) have recently been investigated in [56].

Before we consider our most general definition, let us consider learnability of monotone formulas (which is a rather rich class of statements including, in particular, Cauchy statements), since in this case, the definition is not only extremely intuitive, but also fairly definite.

Definition 2.3 ((B, L) -learnable monotone formulas). Consider a Σ_2^0 formula φ with the only parameters $\underline{a}^{\mathcal{L}}$, i.e.

$$\varphi \equiv \exists n^0 \forall x^0 \varphi_0(x, n, \underline{a}),$$

which is monotone in n , i.e.

$$\forall n^0 \forall n' \geq n \forall x^0 (\varphi_0(x, n, \underline{a}) \rightarrow \varphi_0(x, n', \underline{a})).$$

We call such a formula φ (B, L) -learnable, if there are function(al)s B and L such that the following holds (in the full set-theoretic model $\mathcal{S}^{\omega, X}$):

$$\exists i \leq B(\underline{a}) \forall x \varphi_0(x, c_i, \underline{a}),$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} c_0 &:= 0, \\ c_{i+1} &:= \begin{cases} L(x, \underline{a}), & \text{for the } x \text{ with } \neg \varphi_0(x, c_i, \underline{a}) \wedge \forall y < x \varphi_0(y, c_i, \underline{a}) \text{ if it exists} \\ c_i, & \text{else.} \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

We call such a φ *effectively learnable* (with effectively bounded many mind changes) if it is (B, L) -learnable with computable functionals B and L .

This definition is very intuitive in the sense that it formalizes the concept of an (effective) learning process L which learns the witness in an effectively bounded number of attempts in a very straightforward way.

Moreover, this definition allows the learner, i.e. the function L , to use the least amount of non-computable information possible, namely only the smallest counterexample to the learners last candidate for the witness. Nevertheless, we will show that this amount of information is, in a sense, already exhaustive. More precisely, we have the following (we use in the rest of this section a primitive recursive surjective sequence coding denoted by $\langle \dots \rangle$)⁶:

Proposition 2.4. *Consider a monotone formula φ as above. Suppose there are B and L' s.t.*

$$\exists i \leq B(\underline{a}) \forall x \varphi_0(x, c'_i, \underline{a}),$$

where this time L' can access all reasonable information, i.e.

$$c'_0 := 0, \\ c'_{i+1} := \begin{cases} L'(\langle x_0, \dots, x_i \rangle, \langle c'_0, \dots, c'_i \rangle, \underline{a}), & \text{for those } x_j, c'_j, j \leq i \text{ with} \\ & \neg \varphi_0(x_j, c'_j, \underline{a}) \wedge \forall y < x_j \varphi_0(y, c'_j, \underline{a}) \\ & \text{if each exists,} \\ c'_i, & \text{else.} \end{cases}$$

Then φ is (B, L) -learnable in the original sense (as defined in Definition 2.3) and L is primitive recursively definable in L' .

Proof. W.l.o.g we can assume that there is a $j \leq B'(\underline{a})$ s.t. $\forall i < j (c_{i+1} > c_i)$ and $\forall i \geq j (c_{i+1} = c_i)$ (we can actually primitive recursively define a learner which satisfies this property whenever we have B' and L' as above). We set

$$L(x, \underline{a}) := L(\langle \rangle, \langle \rangle, x, \underline{a}) := \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } \varphi_0(x, 0, \underline{a}), \\ L(\langle X(x, 0, \underline{a}) \rangle, \langle 0 \rangle, x, \underline{a}), & \text{else,} \end{cases} \\ L(\underbrace{\langle x_0, \dots, x_i \rangle}_{\underline{x}}, \underbrace{\langle c_0, \dots, c_i \rangle}_{\underline{c}}, x, \underline{a}) := \begin{cases} c_i, & \text{if } \forall j \leq i \varphi_0(x_j, c_j, \underline{a}), \\ l' := L'(\langle \underline{x} \rangle, \langle \underline{c} \rangle, \underline{a}), & \text{if } x = x_i \vee \varphi_0(x, l', \underline{a}), \\ & \wedge_{j \leq i} \neg \varphi_0(x_j, c_j, \underline{a}), \\ L(\langle \underline{x}, X(x, l', \underline{a}) \rangle, \langle \underline{c}, l' \rangle, x, \underline{a}) & \text{else,} \end{cases}$$

where $X(x, c, \underline{a}) := \min\{x' \leq x : \neg \varphi_0(x', c, \underline{a})\}$ (or x if there is no such x').

We show by induction on i that $\forall i (c'_i = c_i)$. This is obvious for $i = 0$, moreover if $\forall x \varphi_0(x, c'_i, \underline{a})$ then also $\forall x \varphi_0(x, c_i, \underline{a})$ and so $c'_{(\cdot)} = c_{(\cdot)}$ (both) by the induction hypothesis.

Otherwise, we have the smallest counterexample x'_i to c'_i , since by our hypothesis $c'_i = c_i$ we have also $x_i = x'_i$ for the smallest counterexample to c_i . So, by monotonicity of φ we obtain for all $j < i$ that $x'_j \leq x_i$, so $X(x_i, c'_j, \underline{a}) = x'_j$ and by definition of L we get in

⁶I.e. the projection, length and concatenation functions are primitive recursive.

total that

$$\begin{aligned}
c_{i+1} &= L(x_i, \underline{a}) = L(\langle X(x_i, 0, \underline{a}) \rangle, \langle 0 \rangle, x_i, \underline{a}) \\
&= L(\langle x'_0 \rangle, \langle 0 \rangle, x_i, \underline{a}) \\
&= L(\langle x'_0 \rangle, X(x_i, L'(\langle x'_0 \rangle, \langle 0 \rangle, \underline{a}), \underline{a}), \langle 0 \rangle, L'(\langle x'_0 \rangle, \langle 0 \rangle, \underline{a}), x_i, \underline{a}) \\
&= L(\langle x'_0 \rangle, X(x_i, c'_1, \underline{a}), \langle 0 \rangle, c'_1, x_i, \underline{a}) \\
&= L(\langle x'_0 \rangle, \langle x'_1 \rangle, \langle 0 \rangle, c'_1, x_i, \underline{a}) \\
&= \dots \\
&= L'(\langle x' \rangle, \langle c' \rangle, \underline{a}) = c'_{i+1}.
\end{aligned}$$

□

So from now on we will simply use L in the form which suits us best.

Speaking of a Cauchy sequence $a_{(\cdot)}$, we would say that it has an effectively learnable rate of convergence, if there is a recursive computation for a bound b from the sequence $a_{(\cdot)}$ and a positive ϵ , such that there is a procedure to learn an ϵ -Cauchy point with at most b computable corrections (computable in a counterexample x , which in turn may not be computable itself!).

Remark 2.5. In Definition 2.3, even the condition that x is the smallest counterexample, i.e. $\forall y < x \varphi_0(y, c_i, \underline{a})$, isn't really necessary. Of course, then we need B to be a bound for any such sequence $c_{(\cdot)}$,⁷ since it is not unique anymore (not in general). However, such a definition would be equivalent:

- Any given bound B for all such sequences is obviously in particular a bound for the one we used in the original definition.
- On the other hand, given B and L satisfying our original definition, we could modify L in such a way, that it looks for the smallest counterexample and uses that for its computation, assuring that we actually generate the same sequence $c_{(\cdot)}$ after all (e.g. set $L'(x, c, \underline{a}) := L(\min\{x' \leq x : \neg\varphi_0(x', c, \underline{a}) \wedge \forall y < x' \varphi_0(y, c, \underline{a})\}, c, \underline{a})$ if such an x' exists and $L'(x, c, \underline{a}) := L(x, c, \underline{a})$ otherwise).

As far as monotone formulas are concerned we have yet another nice property.

Proposition 2.6. A monotone Σ_2^0 -formula φ (see also Definition 2.3) that is (B, L) -learnable (uniformly in the parameters \underline{a}) is also (B^*, L^*) -learnable (uniformly in majorants \underline{a}^* of \underline{a}) for any majorants B^*, L^* of B, L , i.e. (in $\mathcal{S}^{\omega, X}$)

$$\forall \underline{a}^*, \underline{a} (\underline{a}^* \text{ maj } \underline{a} \rightarrow \exists i \leq B^*(\underline{a}^*) \forall x^0 \varphi_0(x, c_i^*, \underline{a})),$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}
c_0^* &:= 0, \\
c_{i+1}^* &:= \begin{cases} L^*(x, \underline{a}^*), & \text{for the } x \text{ with } \neg\varphi_0(x, c_i^*, \underline{a}) \wedge \forall y < x \varphi_0(y, c_i^*, \underline{a}) \text{ if it exists} \\ c_i^*, & \text{else.} \end{cases}
\end{aligned}$$

⁷The alternative, letting B be a bound for just some sequence makes little sense, since if there was any bound and learner at all, then $B(\underline{a}) = 1$ would be a correct bound for the same learner as well.

Proof. Note that $B^*, L^*, \underline{a}^* \text{ maj } B, L, \underline{a}$ implies that

$$B^*(\underline{a}^*) \geq B(\underline{a}) \wedge \forall x^0, y^0 (x \geq y \rightarrow L^*(x, \underline{a}^*) \geq L(y, \underline{a})).$$

Now assume that $c_i^* \geq c_i$. Then by the monotonicity of φ we have for all x

$$\neg \varphi_0(x, c_i^*, \underline{a}) \rightarrow \neg \varphi_0(x, c_i, \underline{a})$$

and so the smallest counterexample x_i to c_i is smaller (or equal) than the smallest counterexample x_i^* to c_i^* and so $c_{i+1}^* = L^*(x_i^*, \underline{a}^*) \geq L(x_i, \underline{a}) = c_{i+1}$. Inductively, we get $c_i^* \geq c_i$ for all $i \leq B(\underline{a})$. \square

Remark 2.7. If the parameters \underline{a} have all types of degree ≤ 1 , then φ in the above proposition is learnable in B^*, L^* uniformly in \underline{a} since $\underline{a}^M \text{ maj } \underline{a}^1$, where $\underline{a}^M(n) := \max\{a(i) : i \leq n\}$.

In this sense, we can extend the term *effectively learnable* as follows. A monotone Σ_2^0 -formula $\varphi(\underline{a})$ is *effectively learnable with finitely mind changes uniformly in majorants \underline{a}^* of the parameters \underline{a}* if it is (B^*, L^*) -learnable (uniformly in majorants \underline{a}^* of the parameters \underline{a} by computable functionals B^*, L^* and all elements of \underline{a}^* are of type level at most one). Note that this means that in the System $\text{HA}^\omega[X, \|\cdot\|]$, \underline{a} could include parameters of types like $X, \mathbb{N} \rightarrow X, X \rightarrow X$.

There are several ways to generalize our learnability definition. Of course one can drop the monotonicity condition, but we can also allow higher or abstract types for n and x (for x we need to consider all sequences $c_{(\cdot)}$ since we can provide only a counterexample x , not the smallest counterexample x – see also Remark 2.5). The question here is, what kind of information we do allow the learning function(al) L to access. At the moment, it seems that there is not such a nice and definitive answer as in the monotone case. However, we will stick with a (not necessarily unique) definition, which

- fits very nicely into the hierarchy of different concepts for computational information (see Proposition 2.15),
- makes effective learnability guaranteed by very clear logical conditions on the provability of the learned formula (see Theorem 2.10),

Although we do not treat the case of learnability for higher type objects in this paper, the following definition easily applies to this case as well and, therefore, is written in this generality:

Definition 2.8 ((B,L)-learnability for general (not necessarily monotone) formulas). Consider an $\exists \forall$ formula φ with the only parameters \underline{a}^σ , i.e.

$$\varphi \equiv \exists n^0 \forall x^0 \varphi_0(x, n, \underline{a}).$$

We call such a formula φ (B, L) -*learnable*, if there are function(al)s B and L such that the following holds:

$$\exists i \leq B(\underline{a}) \forall x \varphi_0(x, c_i, \underline{a}),$$

where

$$c_0 := 0, \\ c_{i+1} := \begin{cases} L(\langle x_0, \dots, x_i \rangle, \underline{a}), & \text{for those } x_j, j \leq i \text{ with} \\ & \neg \varphi_0(x_j, c_j, \underline{a}) \wedge \forall y < x_j \varphi_0(y, c_j, \underline{a}) \\ & \text{if each exists,} \\ c_i, & \text{else.} \end{cases}$$

We call such a φ *effectively learnable*, if it is (B, L) -learnable, σ_i and ρ have type level at most one, and B and L are computable.

Remark 2.9. Again, this definition already captures (so to say in a primitive recursive way) the case where the learner could access the previous values of $c_{(\cdot)}$ as well. Simply consider

$$L(\overbrace{\langle x_0, \dots, x_i \rangle}^{x:=}, \underline{a}) := L'(\langle \underline{x} \rangle, \underbrace{\langle L'(\langle x_0 \rangle, \langle 0 \rangle, \underline{a}) \rangle}_{c'_1:=}, \underbrace{\langle L'(\langle x_0, x_1 \rangle, \langle 0, c'_1 \rangle, \underline{a}) \rangle}_{c'_2:=}, \dots, \langle L'(\langle \underline{x} \rangle, \langle 0, c'_1, \dots, c'_i \rangle, \underline{a}) \rangle, \underline{a}).$$

Of course, one could consider weaker concepts, like a learner which can access only the last counterexample (as in the monotone case). We considered also a learner of the kind $L'(x, c, \underline{a})$ (i.e. a learner who is allowed to use in addition only the lastly learned solution candidate), which doesn't seem to be equivalent to any of the other two concepts.

Let us make the properties of our learnability definition discussed above more transparent by proving the following results:

In the following IP_V^ω denotes the independence-of-premise principle for universal premises in all finite types:

$$\text{IP}_V^\omega : (\forall \underline{x} A_0(\underline{x}) \rightarrow \exists y B(y)) \rightarrow \exists y (\forall \underline{x} A_0(\underline{x}) \rightarrow B(y)),$$

where A_0 is a quantifier-free formula and \underline{x}, y are variables of arbitrary types.

Theorem 2.10 (Bounded Σ_1^0 -LEM guarantees learnability). *Given that*

$$\text{HA}^\omega[X, \|\cdot\|] + \text{AC} + \text{M}^\omega + \text{IP}_V^\omega \vdash \forall \underline{a} \exists l^0 (\forall m \leq 0 \exists u^0 \forall v^0 (\psi_0(u, m, \underline{a}) \vee \neg \psi_0(v, m, \underline{a})) \rightarrow \exists n^0 \forall x^0 \varphi_0(x, n, \underline{a})),$$

where φ_0, ψ_0 are quantifier-free formulas (containing at most the parameters \underline{a} free) and t is a closed term in \mathcal{T} , then $\exists n \forall x \varphi_0(x, n, \underline{a})$ is (valid in $\mathcal{S}^{\omega, X}$) (B, L) -learnable (in the sense of Definition 2.8 and for monotone formulas in the sense of Definition 2.3) by functionals given by closed terms of $\text{HA}^\omega[X, \|\cdot\|]$.

To B, L one can construct majorants B^*, L^* given by closed terms of HA^ω such that if $\exists n \forall x \varphi_0(x, n, \underline{a})$ is monotone (in the sense of Definition 2.3), then it is even learnable in B^*, L^* uniformly in majorants \underline{a}^* of the parameters \underline{a} .

Proof. Suppose that

$$\text{HA}^\omega[X, \|\cdot\|] + \text{AC} + \text{M}^\omega + \text{IP}_V^\omega \vdash \forall \underline{a} \exists l^0 (\forall m \leq l \exists u \forall v (\psi_0(u, m, \underline{a}) \vee \neg \psi_0(v, m, \underline{a})) \rightarrow \exists n \forall x \varphi_0(x, n, \underline{a})).$$

Then by the soundness of the Gödel functional ('Dialectica') interpretation for $\text{HA}^\omega[X, \|\cdot\|] + \text{AC} + \text{M}^\omega + \text{IP}_V^\omega$ (see [88]) we obtain that (note that since we do not need bar recursion to interpret $\text{HA}^\omega[X, \|\cdot\|]$ we do not have to go through the model of strongly majorizable functionals and so do not need to assume any smallness condition on the types of \underline{a} to pass to $\mathcal{S}^{\omega, X}$)

$$\mathcal{S}^{\omega, X} \models \exists l, V, N \forall U, x \left(\forall m \leq l (\psi_0(Um, m, \underline{a}) \vee \neg \psi_0(VxU, m, \underline{a})) \rightarrow \varphi_0(x, N(U), \underline{a}) \right).$$

where $\exists l, V, N'$ is witnessed (uniformly in \underline{a}) by closed terms t, s_V, s_N of $\text{HA}^\omega[X, \|\cdot\|]$. The result when the terms s_V, s_N are applied to \underline{a} , we conveniently name V and N . To show the learnability, let $U_{\underline{v}}$ (where \underline{v} is a $t(\underline{a})$ -tuple) denote the function

$$U_{\underline{v}}(i) := \begin{cases} v_i & \text{if } i < t(\underline{a}), \\ 0 & \text{else,} \end{cases}$$

set $B(\underline{a}) := t(\underline{a})$ and define L in N and V via a sequence of $t(\underline{a})$ -tuples $\underline{v}^{(\cdot)}$. More precisely to compute $L(\underbrace{\langle x_0, x_1, \dots, x_i \rangle}_{x:=}, \underline{a})$ for some i we need to define the tuples $\underline{v}^{(0)}, \dots, \underline{v}^{(i)}$

as follows.

\underline{v}^0 Set $\underline{v}^0 := 0, \dots, 0$ and $c_1 := L(\langle x_0 \rangle, \underline{a}) := N(U_{\underline{v}^0})$.

\underline{v}^1 If $\forall x \varphi_0(x, c_1, \underline{a})$ holds, then there is nothing to be done⁸. Otherwise, we have in particular (provided that x_1 is the minimal counterexample)

$$\exists m \leq t(\underline{a}) (\neg \psi_0(U_{\underline{v}^0} m, m, \underline{a}) \wedge \psi_0(Vx_1(U_{\underline{v}^0}), m, \underline{a}))$$

so we can denote the least such an m by m_0 (put $m_0 := 0$ in case such an m does not exist) and define \underline{v}^1 as \underline{v}^0 except that we set $v_{m_0}^1 := Vx_1(U_{\underline{v}^0})$. Furthermore, we set $c_2 = L(\langle x_0, x_1 \rangle, \underline{a}) := N(U_{\underline{v}^1})$. Note that we have

$$\neg \psi_0(U_{\underline{v}^0} m_0, m_0, \underline{a}) \wedge \psi_0(v_{m_0}^1, m_0, \underline{a}). \quad (\text{v0})$$

\underline{v}^2 Now, if $\forall x \varphi_0(x, c_2, \underline{a})$ then we are finished. Otherwise, similarly as before we have

$$\exists m \leq t(\underline{a}) (\neg \psi_0(U_{\underline{v}^1} m, m, \underline{a}) \wedge \psi_0(Vx_2(U_{\underline{v}^1}), m, \underline{a}))$$

and we can denote the least such an m by m_1 and define \underline{v}^2 as \underline{v}^1 except that we set $v_{m_1}^2 := Vx_2(U_{\underline{v}^1})$. As before this means that

$$\neg \psi_0(U_{\underline{v}^1} m_1, m_1, \underline{a}) \wedge \psi_0(v_{m_1}^2, m_1, \underline{a}), \quad (\text{v1})$$

so in particular we obtain that $m_1 \neq m_0$ by (v0) as $U_{\underline{v}^1} m_1 = v_{m_1}^1$. We set $c_3 = L(\langle x_0, x_1, x_2 \rangle, \underline{a}) := N(U_{\underline{v}^2})$ and continue.

\underline{v}^3 Again, if $\forall x \varphi_0(x, c_3, \underline{a})$ then we are finished. Otherwise, as before, we have that

$$\exists m \leq t(\underline{a}) (\neg \psi_0(U_{\underline{v}^2} m, m, \underline{a}) \wedge \psi_0(Vx_3(U_{\underline{v}^2}), m, \underline{a}))$$

and we can denote the least such an m by m_2 and define \underline{v}^3 as \underline{v}^2 except that we set $v_{m_2}^3 := Vx_3(U_{\underline{v}^2})$. As before this means that

$$\neg \psi_0(U_{\underline{v}^2} m_2, m_2, \underline{a}) \wedge \psi_0(v_{m_2}^3, m_2, \underline{a}), \quad (\text{v2})$$

so in particular we obtain that $m_2 \neq m_1$ by (v1). Moreover, by (v0) and (v2) we have $m_2 \neq m_0$, since from $m_1 \neq m_0$ follows that $v_{m_0}^2 = v_{m_0}^1$. We set $c_4 = L(\langle x_0, x_1, x_2, x_3 \rangle, \underline{a}) := N(U_{\underline{v}^3})$ and continue.

⁸Of course this is undecidable, however the conclusion discussed next is. In this sense if the conclusion is wrong for the x_1 give as input to L , we can simply set $\underline{v}^1 = \underline{v}^0$ and $L(\langle x_0, x_1 \rangle, \underline{a}) := c_1$ (or even 0 for all that it matters).

\underline{v}^{n+1} Finally, in general assume that for some n we have that $\forall i < n \forall j < i \ m_i \neq m_j$ and $\forall i \leq n+1 \neg \forall x \varphi_0(x, c_i, \underline{a})$. Then we have also that

$$\forall i < n (\neg \psi_0(U_{\underline{v}^i} m_i, m_i, \underline{a}) \wedge \psi_0(Vx_{i+2}(U_{\underline{v}^{i+1}}), m_i, \underline{a})). \quad (\text{vi})$$

As usual we have in particular that

$$\exists m \leq t(\underline{a}) (\neg \psi_0(U_{\underline{v}^n} m, m, \underline{a}) \wedge \psi_0(Vx_{n+1}(U_{\underline{v}^n}), m, \underline{a}))$$

and we can denote the least such an m by m_n and define \underline{v}^{n+1} as \underline{v}^n except that we set $v_{m_n}^{n+1} := Vx_{n+1}(U_{\underline{v}^n})$. As before this means that

$$\neg \psi_0(U_{\underline{v}^n} m_n, m_n, \underline{a}) \wedge \psi_0(v_{m_n}^{n+1}, m_n, \underline{a}). \quad (\text{vn})$$

From $\forall 0 < i < n \ (m_0 \neq m_i)$ it follows that $\forall 0 < i < n \ (v_{m_0}^i = v_{m_0}^i)$. Assume that $m_n = m_0$, then

$$U_{\underline{v}^n} m_n = v_{m_n}^n = v_{m_0}^n = v_{m_0}^1$$

and we obtain a contradiction as $\neg \psi_0(v_{m_0}^1, m_0, \underline{a})$ follows from (vi) and $\psi_0(v_{m_0}^1, m_0, \underline{a})$ follows from (vn). This shows that $m_n \neq m_0$, similarly one shows that

$$\forall i < n \ (m_n \neq m_i).$$

As usual, we set $c_{n+2} = L(\langle x_0, \dots, x_{n+1} \rangle, \underline{a}) := N(U_{\underline{v}^{n+1}})$.

This leads to the following definition of L :

$$L(x, \underline{a}) := L(\underbrace{\langle x_0, x_1, \dots, x_i \rangle}_{\underline{x}}, \underline{a}) := N(U_{\underline{v}^i}).$$

Note that since N and U are total, so is L . Moreover, if the values of i , \underline{x} , and c satisfy the conditions from Proposition 2.4, then L behaves as described above.

Finally, since there can be only $t(\underline{a})$ many different m_i 's, it can happen at most $t(\underline{a})$ many times that $\forall x \varphi_0(x, c_i, \underline{a})$ does not hold, where c_i is defined as in Proposition 2.4 with L as above.

The second claim follows from the fact that t, s_V, s_v have majorants t^*, s_V^*, s_N^* given by closed terms of HA^ω (see [88]) which then yield majorants B^*, L^* of B, L . Now apply Proposition 2.6. \square

Remark 2.11. Assume that φ_0 in the theorem comes from a Cauchy statement

$$j_1(x), j_2(x) \geq n \rightarrow \widehat{\|a_{j_1(x)} - a_{j_2(x)}\|}(k+1) \leq_Q 2^{-k},$$

where – referring to the representation of real numbers by number theoretic functions f representing fast Cauchy sequences of rationals – $\widehat{f}(k+1)$ is a 2^{-k-1} -rational approximation to f (see [88] for details). Then φ is monotone and a counterexample x to n satisfies $x \geq n$ (using that for the Cantor pairing function $x \geq j_i(x)$). Assume also that ψ_0 is monotone in u (which always can be arranged by taking $\psi'_0(u, m, \underline{a}) := \exists \tilde{u} \leq u \ \psi_0(\tilde{u}, m, \underline{a})$).

Then the complicated iteration used in defining L can be avoided by taking simply

$$L^*(\langle x_0, \dots, x_i \rangle, \underline{a}^*) := N_{\underline{a}^*}^*(\lambda k. V_{\underline{a}^*}^*(x_i, \lambda n. x_i)),$$

where $\lambda \underline{a}^*. N_{\underline{a}^*}^*, \lambda \underline{a}^*. V_{\underline{a}^*}^*$ are majorants of

$$\tilde{N}_{\underline{a}}(f) := \max \left\{ \max \left\{ N(v^0 * 0) : lh(v) = t_{\underline{a}} \wedge \forall l \leq t_{\underline{a}} (v_l \leq f(l)) \right\}, f(l) : l \leq t_{\underline{a}} \right\}$$

and

$$\tilde{V}_{\underline{a}}(x, f) := \max \left\{ \max \left\{ V(x, v^0 * 0) : lh(v) = t_{\underline{a}} \wedge \forall l \leq t_{\underline{a}} (v_l \leq f(l)) \right\}, f(l) : l \leq t_{\underline{a}} \right\},$$

where N, V, t are as in Theorem 2.10. Note that with N, V also \tilde{N}, \tilde{V} satisfy the claim in the proof and that L^* (for counterexamples x_0, \dots, x_i) is an upper bound for the L defined in terms of \tilde{N}, \tilde{V} as an elementary calculation shows (using that – by the form of φ_0 – a counterexample x to n has to satisfy $x \geq n$). By monotonicity, φ is then also (L^*, B^*) -learnable (uniformly in majorants \underline{a}^* of \underline{a}) where B^* is some majorant of B .

Remark 2.12. The theorem remains valid if arbitrary $\mathcal{S}^{\omega, X}$ -true purely universal sentences are added as axioms to $\text{HA}^\omega[X, \|\cdot\|]$. The part about the majorizing terms B^*, L^* even remains valid – using monotone functional interpretation – if one adds sentences of the form $\Delta := \forall a \exists b \leq sa \forall c F_0(a, b, c)$ with quantifier-free F_0 and closed s as axioms which covers the case of the binary (‘weak’) König’s lemma WKL (which together with AC even implies König’s lemma KL); see [88] for extensive details on all this.

Using the representation of real numbers from [88], each sequence of type $0 \rightarrow 1$ can be viewed as a name of a sequence (a_n) of reals. Now define $\tilde{a}_n := \max_{\mathbb{R}} (0, \min_{i \leq n} a_i)$. Let $\text{PCM}_{ar}(a_n)$ denote the statement that the monotone decreasing sequence (\tilde{a}_n) in $[0, 1]$ is Cauchy (see [88] for details)

$$\text{PCM}_{ar}(a_n) : \forall k \in \mathbb{N} \underbrace{\exists n \in \mathbb{N} \forall m \geq n (|\tilde{a}_m - \tilde{a}_n| \leq 2^{-k})}_{\text{PCM}_{ar}((a_n), k) \equiv}$$

(if (a_n) is already a decreasing sequence in $[0, 1]$, then $(\tilde{a}_n) = (a_n)$). The usual classical proof of $\text{PCM}(a_n)$ uses Σ_2^0 -DNE, but it can be converted into a proof that only needs the weaker Σ_1^0 -LEM (see Proposition 2.19 below). In [152], an explicit such proof is constructed exhibiting a concrete sequence of instances of Σ_1^0 -LEM sufficient for this. From this proof one can read off the following even more detailed fact:

Proposition 2.13. *There is a primitive recursive functional (in the ordinary sense) Φ such that (using the Cantor pairing function)*

$$\text{HA}^\omega \vdash \forall a_{(\cdot)}^{0 \rightarrow 1}, k^0 (\forall m \leq j(2^k - 1, 2^k) \Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}(\Phi(a_{(\cdot)}, m) \rightarrow \text{PCM}_{ar}(a_{(\cdot)}, k)).$$

Proof. The crucial step in Toftdal’s proof in [152] is to show by induction on k that

$$\forall k \exists i \in \{1, \dots, 2^k\} \exists n \forall m \left(\frac{i-1}{2^k} \leq \tilde{a}_{n+m} \leq \frac{i}{2^k} \right),$$

where in the induction step Σ_1^0 -LEM is used in the form (note that, based on our representation of real numbers, $<_{\mathbb{R}} \in \Sigma_1^0$)

$$\exists n \left(\tilde{a}_n < \frac{2i-1}{2^{k+1}} \right) \vee \neg \exists n \left(\tilde{a}_n < \frac{2i-1}{2^{k+1}} \right).$$

So to establish $\text{PCM}_{ar}(a_{(\cdot)}, k)$ one needs all the instances

$$\exists n \left(\tilde{a}_n < \frac{i}{2^j} \right) \vee \neg \exists n \left(\tilde{a}_n < \frac{i}{2^j} \right)$$

for $i \leq l - 1$ and $l \leq 2^k$, i.e. the codes $j(i, l)$ of the instances used can be bounded by $t(k) := j(2^k - 1, 2^k)$. The construction of Φ is clear. \square

While the usual classical proof of PCM_{ar} only needs Σ_1^0 -induction (but Σ_2^0 -DNE), the above proof due to Toftdal needs an instance of the Σ_2^0 -induction rule (Σ_2^0 -IR) which, apparently, is the price to be paid for using only Σ_1^0 -LEM (instead of Σ_2^0 -DNE). Classically, Σ_2^0 -IR is quite strong and proves (relative to PRA) the same Π_3^0 -sentences as Π_2^0 -IA (see e.g. [143][Theorem 3.11]) and so, in particular, the totality of the Ackermann function. In our intuitionistic context, however, it is weak and the functional interpretation used (without negative translation!) in the proof of Theorem 2.10 (and the corollary below) to extract B, L solves Σ_2^0 -IR using only ordinary primitive recursion in the form of R_0 .

As a corollary we obtain that Theorem 2.10 also holds with the original assumption being replaced by $\text{PCM}_{ar}(s(\underline{a}, l), t(\underline{a}))$, where $(s(\underline{a}, l)^{0 \rightarrow 1})_l$ represents some sequence of reals defined by a closed term s in \underline{a} :

Corollary 2.14. *Given that*

$$\text{HA}^\omega[X, \|\cdot\|] + \text{AC} + \text{M}^\omega + \text{IP}_V^\omega \vdash \\ \forall \underline{a} \exists k^0, l^0 \left(\forall m \leq l \text{PCM}_{ar}(s(\underline{a}, m), k) \rightarrow \exists n^0 \forall x^0 \varphi_0(x, n, \underline{a}) \right),$$

where s is a closed term and φ_0 as in Theorem 2.10, then $\exists n^0 \forall x \varphi_0(x, n, \underline{a})$ is (valid in $\mathcal{S}^{\omega, X}$) (B, L) -learnable (uniformly in \underline{a}) by functionals given by closed terms of the system $\text{HA}^\omega[X, \|\cdot\|]$.

To B, L one can construct majorants B^*, L^* given by closed terms of HA^ω such that if $\exists n \forall x \varphi_0(x, n, \underline{a})$ is monotone (see Definition 2.3) then it is even learnable in B^*, L^* uniformly in majorants \underline{a}^* of the parameters \underline{a} .

Remark. Of course, instead of sequences in $[0, 1]$ one can also consider sequences in any compact interval $[-C, C]$, where then the functionals B, L will additionally depend on C .

Likewise, instead of decreasing sequences we may also have increasing ones or, if the Cauchy property is changed into the existence of an approximate infimum

$$\exists n \forall m (a_n \leq a_m + 2^{-k}),$$

also arbitrary sequences in $[-C, C]$.

Proposition 2.15. *Let $\exists m^0 \forall k^0 \varphi_0(n, m, k, \underline{a})$ be a formula in the language of HA^ω (or $\text{HA}^\omega[X, \|\cdot\|]$) with φ_0 being quantifier-free that is (B, L) -learnable in the sense of Definition 2.8 (uniformly in n and \underline{a}) and let B^*, L^* be majorants of B, L . Then a rate of metastability Ω (valid in $\mathcal{S}^{\omega, X}$)*

$$\forall n^0 \forall g^1 \exists m \leq_0 \Omega(g, n) \varphi_0(n, m, g(m), \underline{a})$$

for⁹

$$\forall n^0 \exists m^0 \forall k^0 \varphi_0(n, m, k, \underline{a}) \quad (\varphi)$$

⁹Note that in order to talk about metastability, we need one of the parameters, to have type 0 and we treat it separately.

is given by $\Omega(B^*, L^*, \underline{a}^*)$ (uniformly in majorants \underline{a}^* of the parameters \underline{a}), where $\tilde{g}(c) := \max(c, \max_{c' \leq c} (g(c')))$ and

$$\Omega := \lambda B^*, L^*, \underline{a}^*, g, n . C(L^*, g, n, B^*(n, \underline{a}^*), \underline{a}^*),$$

$$C(i) := C(L^*, g, n, i, \underline{a}^*) := \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } i = 0, \\ L^*(\langle \overbrace{\tilde{g}(C(i-1)+1), \dots, \tilde{g}(C(i-1)+1)}^{i \times} \rangle, n, \underline{a}^*), & \text{else.} \end{cases}$$

Note that Ω is defined using only recursion R_0 of type 0 and hence is primitive recursive in the usual sense of Kleene.

Proof. We reason in $\mathcal{S}^{\omega, X}$. Since φ_0 is quantifier-free, there is a closed term f with $f(n, m, k, \underline{a}) = 0 \leftrightarrow \varphi_0(n, m, k, \underline{a})$. Hence, we have that (for \underline{a}^* majorizing \underline{a})

$$\forall n \exists i \leq B^*(n, \underline{a}^*) \forall k (f(n, c_i, k, \underline{a}) = 0),$$

by the assumptions of the proposition, and we need to show that

$$\forall g, n \exists m \leq \Omega(B^*, L^*, \underline{a}^*, g, n) (f(n, m, g(m), \underline{a}) = 0).$$

Now, fix any g, n and assume towards contradiction that $\Omega(B^*, L^*, \underline{a}^*, g, n)$ is not a rate of metastability, i.e. that

$$\forall m \leq \Omega(B^*, L^*, \underline{a}^*, g, n) (f(n, m, g(m), \underline{a}) \neq 0). \quad (3)$$

By induction on i we obtain that

$$\forall i \leq B^*(n, \underline{a}^*) (c_i \leq C(L^*, g, n, i, \underline{a}^*)). \quad (4)$$

The case $i = 0$ is trivial as $c_0 = C(L^*, g, n, 0, \underline{a}^*) = 0$. Next, suppose that for some $1 \leq i \leq B^*(n, \underline{a}^*)$ the following holds

$$\forall j < i (c_j \leq C(L^*, g, n, j, \underline{a}^*)). \quad (5)$$

Denoting the smallest k s.t. $f(n, m, k, \underline{a}) \neq 0$ by x_m (if this does not exist, we have $c_i = c_{i-1}$ and are done), we obtain by (5) that¹⁰

$$c_i \leq L^*(\langle x_{c_0}, \dots, x_{c_{i-1}} \rangle, n, \underline{a}^*) \leq L^*(\langle \tilde{g}(c_0), \dots, \tilde{g}(c_{i-1}) \rangle, n, \underline{a}^*) \leq C(L^*, g, n, i, \underline{a}^*),$$

since by (3) we have (using that $C(i)$ is nondecreasing in i) that

$$\forall i \leq B^*(n, \underline{a}^*) (m \leq C(L^*, g, n, i, \underline{a}^*) \rightarrow f(n, m, g(m), \underline{a}) \neq 0)$$

and so, in particular, that

$$\forall i \leq B^*(n, \underline{a}^*) (m \leq C(L^*, g, n, i, \underline{a}^*) \rightarrow x_m \leq g(m) \leq \tilde{g}(m)).$$

Finally, we can infer from (4) that

$$\forall i \leq B^*(n, \underline{a}^*) (c_i \leq \Omega(B^*, L^*, \underline{a}^*, g, n)),$$

¹⁰Here we simply assume that our encoding is monotone in its components. If for some reason it was not, we could use a L' which returns the maximal value among all codes coordinatewise bounded by the elements of the encoded input of L^* .

and therefore and by (3) also

$$\forall i \leq B^*(n, \underline{a}^*) \neg \forall k^0 (f(n, c_i, k, \underline{a}) = 0)$$

for all majorizable \underline{a} contradicting the (B, L) -learnability (uniformly in n and \underline{a}) of $\exists m \forall k \varphi_0(n, m, k, \underline{a})$ and the fact that B^* majorizes B (so that $B^*(n, \underline{a}^*) \geq B(n, \underline{a})$). \square

Remark 2.16. Note that Ω has essentially the following form¹¹

$$(L_{n, \underline{a}^*} \circ \tilde{g})^{B^*(n, \underline{a}^*)}(0), \\ L_{n, \underline{a}^*} := \lambda x . L^*(x, n, \underline{a}^*).$$

Moreover, if we have such a rate of metastability for some Cauchy statement φ as considered in Remark 2.11 so that φ is monotone and a counterexample x is always greater than the witness candidate, and given any n, \underline{a}^* we have an f^1 and a b^0 such that for all \underline{a} that are majorized by \underline{a}^*

$$\forall g \exists m \leq (f \circ \tilde{g})^b(0) \varphi_0(n, m, g(m), \underline{a}), \quad (6)$$

then φ is B, L -learnable (uniformly in n and majorants \underline{a}^* for \underline{a}) with

$$B(n, \underline{a}^*) := b, \quad L(x, n, \underline{a}^*) := f(x).$$

To prove this fact, we argue as follows. Fix arbitrary n, \underline{a}^* and consider corresponding f and b . Let

$$g(m) = \min\{x : \neg \varphi_0(n, m, x, \underline{a})\},$$

if such an x exists and 0 otherwise. Note that due to the monotonicity of φ we have $g(m) \neq 0 \rightarrow \tilde{g}(m) = g(m)$. This implies that as long as there is a (the smallest) counterexample x_i to c_i , it holds that

$$c_{i+1} = L(x_i, n, \underline{a}^*) = f(x_i) = (f \circ \tilde{g})c_i = (f \circ \tilde{g})^{i+1}(0). \quad (7)$$

Given all this, assume towards contradiction that

$$\forall i \leq B(n, \underline{a}^*) \exists x \neg \varphi_0(n, c_i, x, \underline{a}), \quad (8)$$

and consider any $m \leq (f \circ \tilde{g})^b(0)$. Due to (7) and (8), we get that $m \leq c_b$ and due to the monotonicity of φ this means that there is a counterexample to m (since there is one for c_b by (8), as $B(n, \underline{a}) = b$), which means that $\neg \varphi_0(n, m, g(m), \underline{a})$ by definition of g . This is a contradiction to (6).

Discussion: What the main results in this section (Theorem 2.10 and Proposition 2.15), taken together, show is that if the proof of a (monotone) Π_3^0 -statement (e.g. a Cauchy statement) uses only a bounded (in the parameters) number of unnested Σ_1^0 -LEM⁻-instances but may use induction of unrestricted complexity, then we get a rate of metastability which – as a functional in the counterfunction g – has a very simple structure (namely only a single use of iteration of g). This is remarkable as e.g. HA^ω does,

¹¹Note that the additional dependency on the number i of iterates in Proposition 2.15 via the length of the sequence $\langle \dots \rangle$ can also be covered by this normal form, since – by $\tilde{g}(C(i-1)+1) \geq \tilde{g}(i) \geq i$ – the length of the sequence $\langle \dots \rangle$ can be majorized by $\tilde{g}(C(i-1)+1)$ itself.

of course, prove $\forall g \exists x \psi_0(g, x)$ -sentences which need much more complicated functionals in g (namely every type-2 functional definable in Gödel's calculus T arrives in this way). What we have shown, however, is that this cannot happen if $\forall g \exists x \psi_0(g, x)$ results as the Herbrand normal form of a Π_3^0 -statement $\varphi \equiv \forall n^0 \exists m^0 \forall k^0 \varphi_0(n, m, k)$ that is provable in HA^ω from the aforementioned restricted uses of $\Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}^-$. To see the difference, let us consider the simple but already illuminating case where the proof of φ does not use classical logic at all. Then one can use modified realizability or functional interpretation to extract a (definable in T) witnessing term t for φ (and hence a bound t^* which is uniform in majorants of the parameters) which then a fortiori is also a rate of metastability for φ which does not use the argument g at all. The 'g-involvement' displayed by a rate of metastability reflects the amount of $\Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}^-$ used in the proof and the former is simple if the latter is low. Moreover the extraction of the rate of metastability via the extraction of the learning procedure L^* proceeds without any use of negative translation but with direct functional interpretation (while modified realizability would not be sufficient as we need the functional witnessing V in the proof of Theorem 2.10).

A sort of complementary scenario would be to allow full classical logic in a proof but to restrict the use of induction to a bounded number of unnested instances of $\Sigma_1^0\text{-IA}$, the latter being used e.g. in the form of PCM_{ar} . So consider a proof

$$\text{G}_3\text{A}^\omega[X, \|\cdot\|] \vdash \forall \underline{a} \left(\text{PCM}_{ar}(t_1(\underline{a}), t_2(\underline{a})) \rightarrow \exists n^0 \forall x^0 \varphi_0(x, n, \underline{a}) \right).$$

Then by negative translation and functional interpretation one can extract a rate of metastability for the conclusion making a single use of the rate of metastability of PCM_{ar} given by a single application of the iteration $\tilde{g}^k(0)$ (see [88] prop.2.26) and terms $t[g]$ of $\text{G}_3\text{A}^\omega$ which can be majorized by terms using only a fixed number of g -nestings (reasoning as in the proof of Proposition 2.32 below). This again leads to a rate of metastability which can be put into the form in Remark 2.16.

So to get a more complicated rate of metastability (e.g. of the form $\tilde{g}^{(\tilde{g}^x(0))}(0)$) requires a nested use of a **combination** of $\Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}^-$ and (at least) $\Sigma_1^0\text{-IA}^-$ as provided in our example of a sentence φ in Proposition 2.32 that is not effectively learnable.

2.2 Cauchy statements and unrestricted use of $\Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}$

In the following, we refer to Friedman's so-called A -translation from [37] (see e.g. [88]). Since we work in the context of weakly extensional systems and the quantifier-free rule of extensionality QF-ER is not sound under the A -translation we simply add for the reminder of this section all \mathcal{S}^ω -true (resp. $\mathcal{S}^{\omega, X}$ -true) purely universal sentences \mathcal{P} in the language of the respective system as axiom (making the use of QF-ER in proofs superfluous as it only proves universal consequences). This, anyhow, is a common device in proof mining as universal axioms do not contribute to the computational content of a proof (this has been stressed by G. Kreisel since the 50's). We denote the extension of the theory \mathcal{T} by the axioms \mathcal{P} by \mathcal{T}_* .

Lemma 2.17. *Friedmann's A -translation is sound also for $\text{HA}_*^\omega + \Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}$. Similarly for $\text{HA}_*^\omega[X, \|\cdot\|]$ (and related extensions).*

Proof. Consider the following instance of $\Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}$

$$\forall y \varphi_0(\underline{a}, y) \vee \exists y \neg \varphi_0(\underline{a}, y).$$

W.l.o.g assume φ_0 is atomic. It suffices to show that

$$\text{HA}_*^\omega + \Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM} \vdash (\Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM})^A.$$

This means we need to prove

$$\forall y(\varphi_0(\underline{a}, y) \vee A) \vee \exists y((\varphi_0(\underline{a}, y) \vee A) \rightarrow A), \quad (1)$$

in $\text{HA}_*^\omega + \Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}$.

Suppose that

1. $\forall y \varphi_0(\underline{a}, y)$ holds. Then also $\forall y(\varphi_0(\underline{a}, y) \vee A)$ holds and therefore also (1).
2. $\exists y \neg \varphi_0(\underline{a}, y)$ holds. Then fix such a y . For this y we get

$$(\varphi_0(\underline{a}, y) \vee A) \rightarrow A$$

and so $\exists y((\varphi_0(\underline{a}, y) \vee A) \rightarrow A)$ holds and therefore also (1).

For $\text{HA}_*^\omega[X, \|\cdot\|]$ one just has to observe that still every quantifier-free formula can be written as an atomic formula of the form $t\underline{a} =_0 0$ and that the additional axioms are all purely universal and so easily imply their own A -translation. \square

Proposition 2.18. *The theory $\text{HA}_*^\omega + \Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}$ is closed under the $\Sigma_2^0\text{-DNE}$ rule. Similarly for $\text{HA}_*^\omega[X, \|\cdot\|]$.*

Proof. Suppose

$$\text{HA}_*^\omega + \Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM} \vdash \neg \neg \exists x \forall y \varphi_0(\underline{a}, x, y),$$

where φ_0 is quantifier free and contains only \underline{a} as free variables. Moreover, w.l.o.g we assume that φ_0 is atomic.

Rewriting the negations in terms of “ \rightarrow ” and “ \perp ” we obtain that

$$\text{HA}_*^\omega + \Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM} \vdash (\exists x \forall y \varphi_0(\underline{a}, x, y) \rightarrow \perp) \rightarrow \perp,$$

and using Friedman’s A -translation (with Lemma 2.17) that

$$\text{HA}_*^\omega + \Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM} \vdash (\exists x \forall y (\varphi_0(\underline{a}, x, y) \vee A) \rightarrow A) \rightarrow A,$$

for any formula A (not containing x, y free). By setting

$$A := \exists x' \forall y' \varphi_0(\underline{a}, x', y'),$$

(we consider only this A throughout the remainder of the proof) we obtain that $\text{HA}_*^\omega + \Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}$ proves

$$(\exists x \forall y (\varphi_0(\underline{a}, x, y) \vee \exists x' \forall y' \varphi_0(\underline{a}, x', y')) \rightarrow \exists x' \forall y' \varphi_0(\underline{a}, x', y')) \rightarrow \exists x' \forall y' \varphi_0(\underline{a}, x', y'). \quad (1)$$

Now the claim follows from

$$\Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM} \vdash \forall y (\varphi_0(\underline{a}, x, y) \vee \exists x' \forall y' \varphi_0(\underline{a}, x', y')) \rightarrow (\forall y \varphi_0(\underline{a}, x, y) \vee \exists x' \forall y' \varphi_0(\underline{a}, x', y')), \quad (2)$$

since using (2) the statement (1) is equivalent to

$$((\exists x \forall y \varphi_0(\underline{a}, x, y) \vee \exists x' \forall y' \varphi_0(\underline{a}, x', y')) \rightarrow \exists x' \forall y' \varphi_0(\underline{a}, x', y')) \rightarrow \exists x' \forall y' \varphi_0(\underline{a}, x', y'),$$

which is equivalent to $\exists x \forall y \varphi_0(\underline{a}, x, y)$.

To show (2) consider the following instance of Σ_1^0 -LEM

$$\forall y \varphi_0(\underline{a}, x, y) \vee \exists y \neg \varphi_0(\underline{a}, x, y).$$

Now suppose that

1. $\forall y \varphi_0(\underline{a}, x, y)$ holds, then (2) is trivially true.
2. $\exists y \neg \varphi_0(\underline{a}, x, y)$ holds, then for such a y we have

$$(\varphi_0(\underline{a}, x, y) \vee \exists x' \forall y' \varphi_0(\underline{a}, x', y')) \rightarrow \exists x' \forall y' \varphi_0(\underline{a}, x', y')$$

and so certainly we have also that

$$\forall y (\varphi_0(\underline{a}, x, y) \vee \exists x' \forall y' \varphi_0(\underline{a}, x', y')) \rightarrow \exists x' \forall y' \varphi_0(\underline{a}, x', y').$$

Finally $(\forall y \varphi_0(\underline{a}, x, y) \vee \exists x' \forall y' \varphi_0(\underline{a}, x', y'))$ follows from $\exists x' \forall y' \varphi_0(\underline{a}, x', y')$ so (2) holds as well. □

It is known, that a Cauchy rate is limit computable (which corresponds to Σ_2^0 -DNE which – as mentioned in the introduction – is strictly stronger than Σ_1^0 -LEM). However, for every provable Cauchy sequence we have that Σ_1^0 -LEM is sufficient:

Proposition 2.19. *If a sequence of real numbers (a_n) (or in some \mathbf{PA}_*^ω -definable Polish space) defined by a closed term of \mathbf{PA}_*^ω , can be proved to be Cauchy in \mathbf{PA}^ω , then the proof can be carried out already in $\mathbf{HA}_*^\omega + \Sigma_1^0$ -LEM. Similarly for $\mathbf{PA}_*^\omega[X, \|\cdot\|]$ and sequences in X .*

Proof. Consider a sequence $x_{(\cdot)}$ and suppose

$$\mathbf{PA}_*^\omega \vdash \forall k \exists n \forall i, j > n (|x_i - x_j| \leq 2^{-k}).$$

Then by the Kuroda negative translation (see e.g. [88]) we obtain that

$$\mathbf{HA}_*^\omega \vdash \forall k \neg \neg \exists n \forall i, j > n (|x_i - x_j| \leq 2^{-k}).$$

By Proposition 2.18 this implies that

$$\mathbf{HA}_*^\omega + \Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM} \vdash \forall k \exists n \forall i, j > n (|x_i - x_j| \leq 2^{-k})$$

(recall that $\leq_{\mathbb{R}} \in \Pi_1^0$). □

2.3 Which Cauchy statements are effectively learnable and which are not

Proposition 2.20 (Implications between different bounding information for Cauchy statements). *Let (x_n) be a Cauchy sequence in a metric space (X, d) .*

1. *A rate of convergence is a bound on the number of fluctuations.*

2. A bound for the number of fluctuations is a bound B on the number of mind changes to learn a rate of convergence (with a very simple learning function L , which is basically the successor function).
3. Primitive recursively (in the ordinary sense of Kleene) in majorants B^*, L^* of functionals B, L such that the Cauchy rate is (B, L) -learnable one can obtain a rate of metastability.

Proof. Consider a Cauchy sequence $x_{(\cdot)}$.

1. Let b be a rate of convergence, i.e.

$$\forall k \forall n, m \geq b(k) \quad (d(x_n, x_m) \leq 2^{-k}).$$

Then $b(k)$ is also a bound on the number of 2^{-k} fluctuations, since any fluctuation has to occur before $b(k)$ (i.e. that one of the indexes of the fluctuation has to be smaller than $b(k)$) and there can be at most $b(k)$ many fluctuations indexed within $[0; b(k)]$.

2. Let b be a bound on the number of 2^{-k} fluctuations, i.e.

$$\forall k \forall n > b(k) \forall i, j \neg \text{Fluc}_{2^{-k}}(n, i, j).$$

Then $b(k)$ is also a bound on the number of mind changes to learn a rate of convergence, since for $L(n) := n + 1$ we have that

$$\forall k \exists l \leq b(k) \forall n, m > c_l \quad (d(x_n, x_m) \leq 2^{-k}). \quad (\text{BE})$$

Formally, $L(i, x_{(\cdot)}, k) := i$, and (where – again – to have φ_0 quantifier-free we officially have to use the 2^{-k-1} -rational approximation $\widehat{d(x_n, x_m)}(k+1)$ of $d(x_n, x_m)$)

$$\varphi_0(j(n, m), c_i, x_{(\cdot)}, k) \equiv ((n > c_i \wedge m > c_i) \rightarrow d(x_n, x_m) \leq 2^{-k}),$$

where $j(n, m)$ is the Cantor pairing function. The statement (BE) can be inferred from the fact that each mind change (c_i) corresponds to a (different) fluctuation (as it is based on a counterexample for $d(x_n, x_m) \leq 2^{-k}$, whose both indexes are greater than the last c_i).

3. Follows directly from Proposition 2.15.

□

In the rest of this section we show that the hierarchy in Proposition 2.20 between the four different quantitative notations for Cauchy sequences discussed in the introduction is strict. That an effective bound on the number of fluctuations does not imply an effective rate of convergence, follows already from the existence of Specker sequences. We can also use the following very simple example with a 2^{-k} -fluctuation bound k and no effective rate of convergence, since such a rate would decide the halting problem:

Definition 2.21 ($\alpha_{(\cdot)}$). We take the Cantor pairing function j and set

$$\alpha_{j(k,n)} := \begin{cases} 2^{-k}, & \text{if } T(k, 0, n), \\ 0, & \text{else,} \end{cases}$$

where T is the primitive recursive Kleene T -predicate.

We next construct primitive recursive sequence $\beta_{(\cdot)}$ of rational numbers in $[0, 1]$ with an effectively (even primitive recursively) learnable Cauchy rate (so in particular with a primitive recursive rate of metastability), which has no computable bound on fluctuations (this example is not captured by the rough sketch of Avigad and Rute as here the number of the oscillations is determined by the length of the computation, not by the index of the machine as suggested in [13]). Furthermore, we also give an example of a primitive recursive (in the ordinary sense) sequence $\gamma_{(\cdot)}$ of rational numbers in $[0, 1]$ which (provably in the fragment of PA based on Σ_1^0 -IA only) is Cauchy (and so has a primitive recursive in the sense of Kleene rate of metastability) which does not have an effectively learnable Cauchy rate.

An effectively learnable sequence with no computable bound on fluctuations

Definition 2.22 ($\beta_{(\cdot)}$). We fix a primitive recursive surjective encoding of triples which is monotone in the third component satisfying $\langle k, n, m \rangle \geq k, n, m$ and set

$$\beta_{\langle k, n, l \rangle} := \begin{cases} 2^{-k}, & \text{if } T(k, 0, n) \wedge l \leq n \wedge l \text{ is even,} \\ 0, & \text{else.} \end{cases}$$

In the next propositions we will show that the sequence $\beta_{(\cdot)}$

- is Cauchy (in fact, it converges to zero) – Proposition 2.23,
- its Cauchy rate is effectively learnable – Proposition 2.26,
- there is no computable (in ϵ and β) bound on the number of ϵ -fluctuations – Proposition 2.30.

Proposition 2.23. *The sequence $\beta_{(\cdot)}$ is Cauchy, provably in $\text{HA}^\omega + \Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}^-$. More precisely we show that*

$$\text{HA}^\omega \vdash \forall k \left(\forall m \leq k \left(\exists u T(m, 0, u) \vee \forall v \neg T(m, 0, v) \right) \rightarrow \exists n \forall x \geq n (\beta_x \leq 2^{-k}) \right).$$

Proof. Consider the terminating computations on input 0 of the Turing machines encoded by $0, \dots, k$. Then for every k there is an n corresponding to the code of the longest such computation. W.l.o.g. we can assume that $n \geq k$ (otherwise set $n := k$). This means we have that

$$n \geq k \wedge \forall n' \forall k' \leq k (T(k', 0, n') \rightarrow n' \leq n). \quad (9)$$

Now, set

$$c(k) := \max\{\langle k', n', l' \rangle : n' \leq n, k' \leq k, l' \leq n'\}.$$

Then c is even a rate of convergence, since

$$\begin{aligned} \langle k', n', l' \rangle > c(k) &\rightarrow k' > k \vee (k' \leq k \wedge n' > n) \vee (k' \leq k \wedge n' \leq n \wedge l' > n') \\ &\rightarrow k' > k \vee \beta_{\langle k', n', l' \rangle} = 0 \rightarrow \beta_{\langle k', n', l' \rangle} < 2^{-k}. \end{aligned}$$

These arguments are constructive, except for the existence of the longest computation n . This existence is a consequence of $\Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}^-$ and $\Pi_1^0\text{-CP}^-$, where $\Pi_1^0\text{-CP}$ is the bounded collection principle for Π_1^0 -formulas (also called $B\Sigma_2^0$ in the literature) which is easily provable by induction in HA^ω . Consider the following $k + 1$ instances of $\Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}^-$:

$$\forall j \leq k (\exists n T(j, 0, n) \vee \forall m \neg T(j, 0, m))$$

which over HA^ω implies

$$\forall j \leq k \exists n_j \forall m (T(j, 0, n_j) \vee \neg T(j, 0, m)).$$

By an application of $\Pi_1^0\text{-CP}^-$, this in turn implies

$$\exists n \forall j \leq k (\exists n' \leq n T(j, 0, n') \vee \forall m \neg T(j, 0, m)),$$

(consider $n = \max\{n_j : j \leq k\}$).

This shows that the convergence is provable in $\text{HA}^\omega + \Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}^-$ and the convergence up to an error 2^{-k} in HA^ω uses only $k + 1$ instances of $\Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}^-$. \square

Lemma 2.24. *For a quantifier-free formula φ_0 with parameters only of type 0, we have that*

$$\text{G}_3\text{A}^\omega + \Sigma_1^0\text{-IA}^- \vdash \forall x^0 \exists u^0 \forall \tilde{x} \leq x (\forall y^0 \varphi_0(\tilde{x}, y) \vee \exists \tilde{u} \leq u \neg \varphi_0(\tilde{x}, \tilde{u})),$$

where $\text{G}_3\text{A}^\omega$ is the finite type extension of Kalmar-elementary arithmetic (based on quantifier-free induction only but with classical logic) from [76] (see also [88]).

Proof. See [88] Lemma 3.18. \square

Remark 2.25. $\Sigma_1^0\text{-IA}^-$ is (over $\text{G}_3\text{A}^\omega$) strictly weaker than $\Pi_1^0\text{-CP}^-$ but the proof in Lemma 2.24 needs $\Sigma_2^0\text{-DNE}$ and so more of classical logic than necessary in the proof based on $\Pi_1^0\text{-CP}^-$. In general, it seems that considering the extraction of computational content from proofs, often some amount of classical logic can be reduced on the cost of more recursion.

If one is interested (only) in a classical proof, we obtain due to Lemma 2.24 (simply consider $\varphi_0(x, y) := \neg T(x, 0, y)$) a proof without the use of $\Pi_1^0\text{-CP}$, which can be formalized in $\text{G}_3\text{A}^\omega + \Sigma_1^0\text{-IA}^-$.

Proposition 2.26. *The rate of convergence is effectively learnable in k , i.e. there are total (elementary) recursive functions B and L , s.t. for any $\beta_{(\cdot)}$, and any k we have that*

$$\forall k \exists n \leq B(k) \forall m > c_n \quad (\beta_m \leq 2^{-k}),$$

where $c_{(\cdot)}$ is defined as in Definition 2.3 with

$$\varphi_0(x, n, k) := x > n \rightarrow \beta_x \leq 2^{-k}.$$

Proof. Obviously, this follows already from Proposition 2.23. Also, it is easy to see that the rate is (B, L) -learnable with the following B and L :

$$\begin{aligned} B(k) &:= k + 1 \\ L(n, k) &:= \langle k, n, n \rangle + 1. \end{aligned}$$

Let $x \geq L(n, k) > \langle k, n, n \rangle$ be a counterexample. Then

$$j_1(x) \leq k \wedge (j_2(x) > n \vee j_3(x) > n) \wedge j_3(x) \leq j_2(x)$$

and so

$$j_1(x) \leq k \wedge j_2(x) > n \wedge j_3(x) \leq j_2(x).$$

The 2nd conjunct implies $j_2(x) > j_2(n)$ and hence $j_1(x) \neq j_1(n)$ if n is a preceding counterexample. However, for numbers $\leq k$ this can happen at most k -many times. Hence $B(k) := k + 1$ and L do the job. \square

Corollary 2.27. $\beta_{(\cdot)}$ has a primitive recursive (in the ordinary sense of Kleene) rate of metastability.

Proof. One can apply Proposition 2.15 to convert the bounds (B, L) from Proposition 2.26 (which are trivially self-majorizing using standard monotonicity properties of the triple coding) into a primitive recursive rate of metastability. Alternatively, one can use that by Lemma 2.24 the Cauchy property of $\beta_{(\cdot)}$ is provably in $G_3A^\omega + \Sigma_1^0\text{-IA}^-$ and so a fortiori in $\widehat{\text{PA}}^\omega \upharpoonright + \text{QF-AC}$ (see [88], Prop.3.31). Then proposition 10.54 in [88] implies the extractability of a primitive recursive rate of metastability (the latter being essentially the rate of metastability for the statement in Lemma 2.24 which is computed in [88][Prop.3.19]). \square

Remark 2.28. One can obtain such a rate of metastability for $\beta_{(\cdot)}$ directly, using previous results of the first author.

By [88] (Prop.13.19) we have that

$$\forall x, f \forall \tilde{x} \leq x (\exists y \leq \Phi x f T(\tilde{x}, 0, y) \vee \forall z \leq f(\Phi x f) \neg T(\tilde{x}, 0, z)), \quad (10)$$

where $\Phi x f \leq \max\{f^i(0) : i \leq x + 1\} =: \Phi^* x f$. (10) (here $f^i(0)$ again denotes the i -times iteration of f) implies

$$\forall z (\Phi x f < z \leq f(\Phi x f) \rightarrow \forall \tilde{x} \leq x \neg T(\tilde{x}, 0, z)) : \quad (11)$$

Define $\tilde{f}(n) := \max\{f(n), n\}$ and $f_k(n) := \tilde{f}(\langle k, n, n \rangle + 1)$ and let

$$\Psi(k, f) := \langle k, \Phi^* k f_k, \Phi^* k f_k \rangle + 1.$$

Then Ψ is a rate of metastability for $\beta_{(\cdot)}$, i.e.:

$$\forall k, f \exists n \leq \Psi(k, f) \forall z \in [n, \tilde{f}(n)] (|\beta_z| < 2^{-k}). \quad (12)$$

To prove (12), define $n := \langle k, \Phi k f_k, \Phi k f_k \rangle + 1 \leq \Psi(k, f)$ and let $z \in [n, \tilde{f}(n)]$. Then $z \geq n > \langle k, \Phi k f_k, \Phi k f_k \rangle$ and so one of the following cases holds:

1. $j_1(z) > k$. Then $|\beta_z| \leq 2^{-j_1(z)} < 2^{-k}$.
2. $j_2(z) > \Phi k f_k \wedge j_1(z) \leq k$. Then $\Phi k f_k < j_2(z) \leq z \leq \tilde{f}(n) = f_k(\Phi k f_k)$. Hence, by (11) (applied to $k, j_1(z), f_k, j_2(z)$ for x, \tilde{x}, f, z), we get $\neg T(j_1(z), 0, j_2(z))$ and so $\beta_z = 0$.
3. $j_3(z) > \Phi k f_k \wedge j_2(z) \leq \Phi k f_k \wedge j_1(z) \leq k$. Then $j_3(z) > j_2(z)$ and so $\beta_z = 0$.

Lemma 2.29 (Termination causes at least n fluctuations). *Suppose the k^{th} -machine terminates on 0 with computation encoded by n (i.e. $T(k, 0, n)$ holds). Then the sequence $\beta_{(\cdot)}$ contains at least n many 2^{-k} -fluctuations.*

Proof. Consider the tuples of indexes $\underline{i}, \underline{j}$, s.t. $i_l := \langle k, n, l \rangle$, $j_l := \langle k, n, l + 1 \rangle$ and $l + 1 \leq n$. Then we have by definition of $\beta_{(\cdot)}$ (using the monotonicity of the encoding in l) that $\text{Fluc}_{\beta_{(\cdot)}, 2^{-k}}(n, \langle \underline{i} \rangle, \langle \underline{j} \rangle)$. \square

Proposition 2.30. *There is no computable bound on the fluctuations of $\beta_{(\cdot)}$.*

Proof. Suppose b_k is a bound on the number of fluctuations by 2^{-k} , then b_k can be used to effectively compute whether the k^{th} Turing machine terminates on input 0 as follows. Let the machine run until the code of the computation reaches b_k (or until it stops). If it terminated, we are done.

Now suppose it terminates with a computation encoded by some $n > b_k$. Then $\beta_{(\cdot)}$ would have at least n many 2^{-k} -fluctuations by Lemma 2.29, which is a contradiction. Therefore if the machine does not terminate with a code of computation at most b_k it does not terminate at all. \square

Metastability does not imply effective learnability

In the next propositions we define a primitive recursive sequence $\gamma_{(\cdot)}$ of rational numbers in $[0, 1]$ (defined in Corollary 2.39 using Definition 2.35) that

- is Cauchy (in fact, it converges to zero) – by Proposition 2.36,
- has a primitive recursive rate of metastability – by Proposition 2.36,
- has no effectively learnable Cauchy rate – by Corollary 2.39.

We use the upper index as a name extension (like \underline{k}^K , meaning a tuple \underline{k} corresponding to a particular K) and as iteration of functions (like $f^n(x)$, meaning we iterate the function f n -many times with the starting point x). When unclear, we use the notation $(f)^n$ to make explicit, that we mean the iteration.

Definition 2.31. For any function f we define $\hat{f}(k, n) := 0$, if $f(k, n) = 0 \wedge \forall m < n (f(k, m) \neq 0)$ and $\hat{f}(k, n) := 1$, otherwise.

Proposition 2.32. The following statement (which is easily provable using $\Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}^-$ combined with $\Pi_1^0\text{-CP}^-$)

$$\varphi := \forall f^1 \leq_1 1 \forall x^0 \exists p \forall z \varphi_0(\hat{f}, x, p, z)$$

where, interpreting $p = j(y, u)$ as a surjective code of some pair y, u ,

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_0(f, x, p, z) := & \forall \tilde{x} \leq x \exists \tilde{y} \leq y \forall \tilde{z} \leq z (f(\tilde{x}, \tilde{y}) = 0 \vee f(\tilde{x}, \tilde{z}) \neq 0) \wedge \\ & \forall \tilde{y} \leq y_{f,x} \exists \tilde{u} \leq u \forall \tilde{z} \leq z (f(\tilde{y}, \tilde{u}) = 0 \vee f(\tilde{y}, \tilde{z}) \neq 0), \end{aligned}$$

with

$$y_{f,x} := \begin{cases} \max \{y' \leq y : y' = \min \{y'' \leq y : \exists x' \leq x (f(x', y'') = 0)\} \}, & \text{if such } y' \text{ exists} \\ x, & \text{else.} \end{cases}$$

is not effectively learnable.

Proof. We prove the claim in three steps.

Step 1 We will show that (informally speaking, since formally we cannot express function iteration and the conclusion would have to use ψ_0 and ψ_0^y defined below)

$$G_3A^\omega \vdash \forall g \forall x (\exists p \forall z \varphi_0(f_g, x, p, z) \rightarrow \exists y' (y' = g^{x(0)}(0))), \quad (\text{GA})$$

for

$$f_g(b, d) := \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } \text{lh}(d) = b + 1 \wedge d_0 = 0 \wedge \forall i < b \ (d_{i+1} = g(d_i)), \\ 1, & \text{else.} \end{cases}$$

Formally, $\exists y' (y' = g^{x(0)}(0))$ is to be read as

$$\exists y, u \ (f_g(x, y) = 0 \wedge f_g(y_x, u) = 0), \quad (\text{GA}^*)$$

where then $y' := u_{y_x}$. Note that we have $f_g =_1 \widehat{f_g}$. To show (GA) fix arbitrary g^1 and x^0 . Now assume $\exists p \forall z \varphi_0(f_g, x, p, z)$ and let us fix such a $p = j(y, u)$ to obtain:

$$\forall z \forall \tilde{x} \leq x \exists \tilde{y} \leq y \forall \tilde{z} \leq z (f_g(\tilde{x}, \tilde{y}) = 0 \vee f_g(\tilde{x}, \tilde{z}) \neq 0) \wedge \quad (13)$$

$$\forall z \forall \tilde{y} \leq y_{f_g, x} \exists \tilde{u} \leq u \forall \tilde{z} \leq z (f_g(\tilde{y}, \tilde{u}) = 0 \vee f_g(\tilde{y}, \tilde{z}) \neq 0). \quad (14)$$

We now show by quantifier-free induction that

$$\forall x' \leq x \exists y' \leq y \ f_g(x', y') = 0. \quad (15)$$

Note that $\exists y' f_g(x', y') = 0$ implies that $y'_{x'} = g^{x'}(0)$. The case $x' = 0$ is trivially satisfied by $y' = \langle 0 \rangle$. Then $y' \leq y$ by (13). So suppose for some $x' < x$ we have $\exists y' \leq y \ f_g(x', y') = 0$. Then we can set

$$z := y' * \langle g(y'_{x'}) \rangle = \langle y'_0, y'_1, \dots, g(y'_{x'}) \rangle$$

to get $f_g(x' + 1, z) = 0$ which concludes the proof of (15) since – again by (13) – $z \leq y$. Note, furthermore, that for $y' \leq y$ (and $x' \leq x$),

$$f_g(x', y') = 0 \rightarrow y' \leq y_{f_g, x}.$$

So we have even that

$$\forall x' \leq x \exists y' \leq y_{f_g, x} \ f_g(x', y') = 0. \quad (16)$$

Now, let y^* denote a y' which satisfies (16) for $x' = x$ and note that $y_x^* \leq y^* \leq y_{f_g, x}$. By quantifier-free induction we show that

$$\forall x' \leq y_{f_g, x} \exists u' \leq u \ f_g(x', u') = 0. \quad (17)$$

The case $x' = 0$ is again trivially satisfied by $u' = \langle 0 \rangle \leq u$ (using (14)) So suppose for some $x' < y_{f_g, x}$ that $\exists u' \leq u \ f_g(x', u') = 0$. Then we can set

$$z := u' * \langle g(u'_{x'}) \rangle = \langle u'_0, u'_1, \dots, g(u'_{x'}) \rangle$$

to get $f_g(x' + 1, z) = 0$, which by (14) implies

$$\exists \tilde{u} \leq u \ f_g(x' + 1, \tilde{u}) = 0$$

and so concludes the proof of (17). Applying (17) we obtain (for $x' = y_x^*$)

$$\exists u' \leq u \ (f_g(x, y^*) = 0 \wedge f_g(y_x^*, u') = 0),$$

which concludes the proof of (GA*) and, therefore, also the proof of (GA).

Step 2 We investigate the terms witnessing the implication (GA). By prenexation we obtain

$$G_3A^\omega \vdash \forall g, x, p \exists y', z (\varphi_0(f_g, x, p, z) \rightarrow y' = g^{g^x(0)}(0)),$$

and, therefore, by program extraction theorems (see Corollary 3.1.3 in [76]), we get closed terms s and t in G_3A^ω , s.t.

$$\forall g, x, p (\varphi_0(f_g, x, p, sgxp) \rightarrow tgap = g^{g^x(0)}(0)). \quad (18)$$

Step 3 Finally, we show that with sufficiently large (in the sense of growth) g , this contradicts the effective learnability of φ . Suppose namely that φ were learnable by computable functionals $B(f, x), L(y, f, x)$. Then also

$$B^*(x) := \sup\{B(f, \tilde{x}) : f \leq_1 1, \tilde{x} \leq x\} \text{ and } L_x^*(y) := \sup\{L(\tilde{y}, f, \tilde{x}) : f \leq_1 1, \tilde{y} \leq y, \tilde{x} \leq x\}$$

are computable (in x resp. in x, y) and majorize B, L . Now by Proposition 2.15 and the fact that f_g is trivially majorized by 1 we get, in particular, that

$$\exists p \leq \Omega(B^*, L_x^*, h_x, x) \varphi_0(f_g, x, p, sgxp),$$

for any g and x , by setting

$$h_x^1 := \lambda p . sgxp.$$

So, we obtain together with (18) that

$$\forall g, x \exists p_x \leq \Omega(B^*, L_x^*, h_x, x) (tgap_x = g^{g^x(0)}(0)).$$

Since s and t are closed terms of G_3A^ω and the variables g, x, p_x have types ≤ 1 by normalization arguments (see Corollary 2.2.24 and Remark 2.2.25 in [76]) we know that there is a constant D , s.t. (for any g that majorizes $\lambda n.2^n$)

$$\forall x, v (\tilde{g}^D(x+v) \geq sgxv, tgapxv).$$

Since we may assume that $\tilde{g}(n) > n$ and, therefore, $\tilde{g}^x(v) \geq x+v$, this yields

$$\forall x, v (\tilde{g}^{D+x}(v) \geq sgxv, tgapxv).$$

As a consequence, we get (using the Ω -definition and that that B^*, L_x^* are selfmajorizing and that we may assume $L_x^*(y) \geq y$) that for all x

$$\tilde{g}^{D+x}(\Omega(B^*, L_x^*, \tilde{g}^{D+x}, x)) \geq \tilde{g}^{D+x}(\Omega(B^*, L_x^*, h_x, x)) \geq tgap_x = g^{g^x(0)}(0).$$

By the definition of Ω (see also Remark 2.16)

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{g}^{D+x}(\Omega(B^*, L_x^*, \tilde{g}^{D+x}, x)) &\leq \tilde{g}^{D+x}((L_x^* \circ \tilde{g}^{D+x})^{B^*(x)}(0)) \leq \\ &\leq \tilde{g}^{D+x}((L_x^* \circ \tilde{g})^{(D+x)B^*(x)}(0)) \leq (L_x^* \circ \tilde{g})^{\widehat{B^*(x)}}(0) \end{aligned}$$

and so (for all x)

$$g^{g^x(0)}(0) \leq (L_x^* \circ \tilde{g})^{\widehat{B^*(x)}}(0)$$

where $\lambda x, y. L_x^*(y)$ and $\widehat{B^*(x)} := (D+x)(B^*(x)+1)$ are fixed total recursive functions that do not depend on g which is not possible for sufficiently fast growing g . \square

Corollary 2.33. *Let φ_0 be as in the previous Proposition. If for a quantifier free formula ψ_0 (with no hidden parameters)*

$$G_3A^\omega + \text{QF-AC} \vdash \forall f \leq 1 \forall x^0 (\exists y^0 \forall z^0 \psi_0(\xi(f), \chi(x), y, z) \rightarrow \exists p^0 \forall z^0 \varphi_0(\hat{f}, x, p, z)),$$

where ξ and χ are closed terms of G_3A^ω , then $\forall f \leq 1 \forall x^0 \exists y^0 \forall z^0 \psi_0(f, x, y, z)$ is also not effectively learnable. Here

$$\text{QF-AC} : \forall x \exists y F_0(x, y) \rightarrow \exists f \forall x F_0(x, f(x)),$$

with quantifier-free F_0 and x, y of arbitrary types.

Proof. This follows analogously from [76] (Corollary 3.1.3.) and our Proposition 2.15 as in the proof of Proposition 2.32. \square

Remark 2.34. We can prove in $G_3A^\omega + \Sigma_1^0\text{-CP}$ (which is included in $G_3A^\omega + \text{QF-AC}^{0,0}$) that φ in Proposition 2.32 is actually equivalent to its monotone version,

$$\tilde{\varphi} \equiv \forall f^1 \leq 1 \forall x^0 \exists q \forall z \exists p \leq q \forall \tilde{z} \leq z \varphi_0(\hat{f}, x, p, z).$$

Since this equivalence holds also pointwise (in f, x), we can use Corollary 2.33 to infer that there is actually a monotone formula, which is not effectively learnable.

Definition 2.35. Define (using a surjective quadruple coding) a primitive recursive sequence of rational numbers in $[0, 1]$ by

$$\gamma(f)_{\langle k, n, i, m \rangle} := \begin{cases} 2^{-k}, & \text{if } \hat{f}(k, n) = 0 \wedge i \leq n \wedge \hat{f}(i, m) = 0, \\ 0, & \text{else.} \end{cases}$$

Proposition 2.36. *The formula stating the existence of a Cauchy point for any f*

$$\psi := \forall f^1 \leq 1, x^0 \exists z \forall k \geq z (\gamma(f)_z < 2^{-x}).$$

though being true, is not effectively learnable. However, there is a primitive recursive (in the ordinary sense of Kleene) rate of metastability for $\gamma(f)_{(\cdot)}$, which does not depend on f .

Proof. The existence of a metastability rate follows from the fact that $\gamma(f)_{(\cdot)}$ is Cauchy for any $f \leq 1$. Moreover, since the proof can be formalized in $G_3A^\omega + \Sigma_1^0\text{-IA}$ there is a primitive recursive rate and since f is trivially majorizable it is also clear that there is even a primitive recursive rate which does not depend on f . (In Remark 2.37 below, we actually give such a rate explicitly.)

To show the unlearnability, due to Corollary 2.33 it suffices to show that

$$G_3A^\omega + \text{QF-AC}^{0,0} \vdash \forall f \leq 1 \forall x^0 (\exists z \forall k \geq z (\gamma(f)_z < 2^{-x}) \rightarrow \exists p \forall z' \varphi_0(\hat{f}, x, p, z')).$$

To prove φ , fix arbitrary f^1 and x^0 and suppose that

$$\exists z \forall k \geq z (\gamma(f)_z < 2^{-x}).$$

Moreover, assume towards contradiction

$$\exists \tilde{x} \leq x \exists a \geq \max(z, x) \hat{f}(\tilde{x}, a) = 0. \quad (19)$$

Since $a \geq \tilde{x}, z$, this implies that $k := \langle \tilde{x}, a, \tilde{x}, a \rangle \geq z$ and $\gamma(f)_k = 2^{-\tilde{x}}$, which is a contradiction.

Hence we can conclude that

$$\forall \tilde{x} \leq x (\exists \tilde{y} < \max(x, z) \hat{f}(\tilde{x}, \tilde{y}) = 0 \vee \forall a \hat{f}(\tilde{x}, a) \neq 0),$$

which is equivalent to

$$\forall \tilde{x} \leq x \forall a \exists \tilde{y} < \max(x, z) (\hat{f}(\tilde{x}, \tilde{y}) = 0 \vee \forall \tilde{a} \leq a \hat{f}(\tilde{x}, \tilde{a}) \neq 0). \quad (20)$$

Next, set $y := \max(x, z)$ and assume towards contradiction that

$$\exists \tilde{y} \leq y_{\hat{f}, x} \exists a \geq z \hat{f}(\tilde{y}, a) = 0. \quad (21)$$

Recall that

$$y_{\hat{f}, x} := \begin{cases} \max \{y' \leq y : y' = \min \{y'' \leq y : \exists x' \leq x (\hat{f}(x', y'') = 0)\}\}, & \text{if such } y' \text{ exists} \\ x, & \text{else.} \end{cases} \quad (22)$$

Note that if $y_{\hat{f}, x} = x$, then φ follows already from (20). Otherwise, denote the smallest $x' \leq x$ for which $\hat{f}(x', y_{\hat{f}, x}) = 0$ by \tilde{x} . Then $k := \langle \tilde{x}, y_{\hat{f}, x}, \tilde{y}, a \rangle \geq z$ and $\gamma(f)_k = 2^{-\tilde{x}}$, which is a contradiction.

Finally, $\exists p \forall z' \varphi_0(\hat{f}, x, p, z')$ follows from not-(21) and (20) (with $y := \max(x, z)$, $p := \langle y, z \rangle$).

□

Remark 2.37. Similarly as before, we can give an explicit such rate of metastability. As in Remark 2.28, there is a $\Phi_f x g \leq \Phi^* x g := \max\{g^i(0) : i \leq x + 1\}$ such that

$$\forall x, f, g \forall \tilde{x} \leq x (\exists y \leq \Phi_f x g (\hat{f}(\tilde{x}, y) = 0) \vee \forall z \leq g(\Phi_f x g) (\hat{f}(\tilde{x}, z) \neq 0)).$$

Define

$$\begin{aligned} \Phi_1 x g &:= \Phi_f \left(x, \lambda y. g_y(\Phi_f(y, g_x)) \right), \\ \Phi_2 x g &:= \Phi_f(\Phi_1 x g, g \Phi_1 x g), \end{aligned}$$

where $g_y(n) := g(y, n)$. Then

$$\forall x, f, g \forall \tilde{x} \leq x \forall \tilde{y} \leq \Phi_1 x g \left\{ \begin{aligned} & \left((\exists y \leq \Phi_1 x g (\hat{f}(\tilde{x}, y) = 0) \vee \forall z \leq g(\Phi_1 x g, \Phi_2 x g) (\hat{f}(\tilde{x}, z) \neq 0)) \wedge \right. \\ & \left. (\exists u \leq \Phi_2 x g (\hat{f}(\tilde{y}, u) = 0) \vee \forall z \leq g(\Phi_1 x g, \Phi_2 x g) (\hat{f}(\tilde{y}, z) \neq 0)) \right). \end{aligned} \right.$$

This implies

$$\forall z (\Phi_1 x g < z \leq g(\Phi_1 x g, \Phi_2 x g) \rightarrow \forall \tilde{x} \leq x (\hat{f}(\tilde{x}, z) \neq 0)) \quad (23)$$

and

$$\forall z (\Phi_2 x g < z \leq g(\Phi_1 x g, \Phi_2 x g) \rightarrow \forall \tilde{x} \leq \Phi_1 x g (\hat{f}(\tilde{x}, z) \neq 0)). \quad (24)$$

Define $\tilde{g}(n) := \max\{g(n), n\}$ and $g_k(n, m) := \tilde{g}(\langle k, n, m \rangle + 1)$ and

$$\Psi(k, g) := \langle k, \Phi_1^* k g_k, \Phi_1^* k g_k, \Phi_2^* k g_k \rangle + 1,$$

where Φ_i^* is defined as Φ_i but with Φ^* and $(g_k)^M$ instead of Φ_f and g_k . To show

$$\forall k, g, f \exists n \leq \Psi(k, g) \forall z \in [n, \tilde{g}(n)] (|\gamma(f)_z| < 2^{-k}),$$

define $n := \langle k, \Phi_1 k g_k, \Phi_1 k g_k, \Phi_2 k g_k \rangle + 1 \leq \Psi(k, g)$ and let $z \in [n, \tilde{g}(n)]$. Then $z \geq n > \langle k, \Phi_1 k g_k, \Phi_1 k g_k, \Phi_2 k g_k \rangle$. Hence one of the following holds:

1. $j_1(z) > k$. Then $|\gamma(f)_z| \leq 2^{-j_1(z)} < 2^{-k}$.
2. $j_2(z) > \Phi_1 k g_k \wedge j_1(z) \leq k$. Then $\Phi_1 k g_k < j_2(z) \leq z \leq \tilde{g}(n) = g_k(\Phi_1 k g_k, \Phi_2 k g_k)$. Hence, by (23) (applied to $j_1(z), k, g_k, j_2(z)$ for \tilde{x}, x, g, z), $\gamma(f)_z = 0$.
3. $j_3(z) > \Phi_1 k g_k \wedge j_2(z) \leq \Phi_1 k g_k \wedge j_1(z) \leq k$. Then $j_3(z) > j_2(z)$ and so $\gamma(f)_z = 0$.
4. $j_4(z) > \Phi_2 k g_k \wedge j_3(z) \leq \Phi_1 k g_k \wedge j_2(z) \leq \Phi_1 k g_k \wedge j_1(z) \leq k$. Then $\Phi_2 k g_k < j_4(z) \leq z \leq \tilde{g}(n) = g_k(\Phi_1 k g_k, \Phi_2 k g_k)$. Hence, by (24) (applied to $j_3(z), k, g_k, j_4(z)$ for \tilde{y}, x, g, z), $\gamma(f)_z = 0$.

Note that the 2-nested use of primitive recursive iteration hidden in the 2-nested application of Φ_f in the definition of Φ_i very much resembles the basic structure of the rate of metastability extracted from a concrete proof in ergodic theory in [135] (see the discussion in the introduction).

Corollary 2.38. Let $\gamma(e)_{(\cdot)}$ be defined as $\gamma(f)_{(\cdot)}$ but with $\hat{f}(x, y) = 0$ being replaced by

$$P(e, x, y) := \text{lh}(y) = x + 1 \wedge y_0 = 0 \wedge \forall i < x (T(e, y_i, y_{i+1})).$$

Then the formula stating the existence of a Cauchy point of $\gamma(e)_{(\cdot)}$ for any number e

$$\psi := \forall e^0, x^0 \exists z \forall k \geq z (\gamma(e)_k < 2^{-x}).$$

is not effectively learnable.

Proof. First note that the Cauchy property of $\gamma(e)_n$ follows from the Cauchy property of $\gamma(f)_n$ since taking $f(x, y) := 0$, if $P(e, x, y)$, and $f(x, y) := 1$, otherwise, both sequences coincide (note that $f = \hat{f}$).

Let e be a code of a total recursive function and define $g(x) := \mu y. T(e, x, y)$. The arguments of both Proposition 2.32 and Proposition 2.36 then remain valid, except the fact that the set of Gödel numbers e – in contrast to f_g – is not majorizable. We also need the additional assumption $\forall x (T(e, x, g(x)))$ in (GA), which expresses that $g(x) := \mu y. T(e, x, y)$ defines a total function. This assumption, however, does not contribute in the course of the functional interpretation argument applied to (GA) ('Step 2' in the proof of Proposition 2.32) as it is purely universal. So as before, the learnability would lead to a constant D and total recursive functions $\lambda e, x, y. L_{e,x}^*(y), B^*$ such that

$$\forall e \forall g \left(\forall x^0 T(e, x, g(x)) \rightarrow \forall x^0 (L_{e,x}^* \circ \tilde{g})^{\widehat{B}^*(e,x)}(0) \geq g^{g^x(0)}(0) \right)$$

where $\widehat{B}^*(e, x) := (D + x + e)(B^*(x) + 1)$.

We can argue similarly as in the proof of Proposition 2.32, since for any fixed g given by some e as above, eventually we have $x > e$, so we can simply choose a total recursive g which grows much faster than $L_{x,x}^*$ and $B^*(x, x)$. \square

Corollary 2.39. Define the primitive recursive sequence of rational numbers in $[0, 1]$ (using the Cantor pairing function)

$$\gamma_{j(e,n)} := \gamma(e)_n \cdot 2^{-e}.$$

This sequence converges to 0 (provably in $G_3A^\omega + \Sigma_1^0\text{-IA}^-$ and hence with a primitive recursive – in the sense of Kleene – rate of metastability) but the formula stating the existence of a Cauchy point of $\gamma(\cdot)$

$$\psi := \forall x^0 \exists z \forall k \geq z (\gamma_k < 2^{-x}).$$

is not effectively learnable.

Proof. Let $\rho_e(x)$ be a rate of convergence for $\gamma(e)_n$ and define $\rho(x) := \max\{\rho_{\tilde{x}}(x) : \tilde{x} \leq x\}$. Then

$$\hat{\rho}(x) := j(x, \rho(x))$$

is a rate of convergence for γ_n towards 0.

Conversely, for any rate ρ of convergence for γ_n we have that $\rho_e(x) := \rho(e + x)$ is a rate of convergence of $\gamma(e)_n$. In particular, the 2^{-e-x} -Cauchy property for γ_n implies the 2^{-x} -Cauchy property of $\gamma(e)_n$. \square

2.4 When learnability implies fluctuation bounds

In some cases, the effective (B, L) -learnability of a convergence rate (meaning that the convergence rate can be learned by L with $B(\underline{a})$ -many mind changes) gives a bound on the number of fluctuations. This, for instance, is the case for bounded monotone sequences. In general, we can say that effective learnability implies the existence of an effective bound of fluctuations, if the learner and the sequence satisfy certain gap conditions.

Proposition 2.40 (Gap conditions on the learner). Let $a_{(\cdot)}$ be some sequence in a metric space (X, d) and let

$$\varphi := \forall k \exists n \forall i, j \underbrace{(n \leq i < j \rightarrow d(a_i, a_j) \leq 2^{-k})}_{\varphi_0(j(i,j), n, k) := \dots}.$$

be a (B, L) -learnable formula (which states simply the Cauchy property of the sequence) and let B^*, L^* be majorants of B, L .

Moreover, suppose that there are functions Δ_*, J^* , s.t. (for $i = j_1(x), j = j_2(x)$ and analogously for x' using the Cantor pairing function)

$$\forall n, x, x' \left((\neg \varphi_0(x, n, k) \wedge \neg \varphi_0(x', n, k) \wedge j \leq i') \rightarrow |j' - j| \geq \Delta_*(x, k) \right),$$

$$\forall n, x (\neg \varphi_0(x, n, k) \rightarrow L^*(x, k) - i \leq J^*(x, k)),$$

and

$$J^* \in \mathcal{O}(\Delta_*) \equiv \forall k \exists N_k, K_k \forall x \geq N_k (K_k \Delta_*(x) \geq J^*(x, k)). \quad (25)$$

Then there is a bound on the number of 2^{-k} -fluctuations, which is primitive recursive in B^*, Δ_*, J^* and N_k, K_k (which witness (25)) given by

$$b(k) := B^*(k) \left(1 + K_k + \max_{n < N_k} \left(\frac{J^*(n, k)}{\Delta_*(n, k)} \right) \right).$$

Note that in the case where $N_k = 0$, we get

$$b(k) = (1 + K_k)B^*(k).$$

Proof. For simplicity, assume $N_k = 0$ (otherwise we could just replace every occurrence of K_k by $(K_k + \max_{n < N_k} (\frac{J^*(n,k)}{\Delta_*(n,k)}))$).

Firstly, note that any 2^{-k} -fluctuation between two indexes i and j corresponds to the counterexample $x = j(i, j)$. So, by definition there are never any fluctuations in the intervals $[c_l, i_l]$, where $x_l = j(i_l, j_l)$ is the smallest counterexample to the solution candidate c_l .

Secondly, from our assumption on Δ_* we get that there are at most

$$\left\lceil \frac{c_{l+1} - i_l}{\Delta_*(x_l, k)} \right\rceil \leq \left\lceil \frac{J^*(x_l, k)}{\Delta_*(x_l, k)} \right\rceil \leq K_k$$

many fluctuations within an interval $[i_l, c_{l+1}]$.

Finally, there are at most $B^*(k)$ such intervals, before a 2^{-k} -Cauchy point is reached, and there can be one additional fluctuation for each pair of such intervals. \square

We now consider the general form of the structure of Birkhoff's proof of the mean ergodic theorem as analyzed in [96] and the argument used in [13] to convert the rate of metastability obtained in [96] into a bound on the number of fluctuations:

Let $x_{(\cdot)}$ be a sequence in some normed space X (in the case at hand X is a uniformly convex Banach space) and $y_{(\cdot)}$ be a sequence in \mathbb{R}_+ definable by terms in $\text{HA}^\omega[X, \|\cdot\|, \dots]$. Suppose the Cauchyness of $x_{(\cdot)}$ is proved using that $y_{(\cdot)}$ has arbitrarily good approximate infima, i.e.

$$\forall \delta > 0 \exists n \forall k \forall \tilde{k} \leq k (y_{\tilde{k}} \geq y_n - \delta) \quad (26)$$

$$\rightarrow \forall \epsilon > 0 \exists m \forall u \forall i, j \in [m, u] (\|x_i - x_j\| \leq \epsilon). \quad (27)$$

This implication is classically equivalent to

$$\begin{aligned} \forall \epsilon > 0 \exists \delta > 0 \left(\exists n \forall k \forall \tilde{k} \leq k (y_{\tilde{k}} \geq y_n - \delta) \rightarrow \right. \\ \left. \exists m \forall u \forall i, j \in [m, u] (\|x_i - x_j\| \leq \epsilon) \right). \end{aligned} \quad (+)$$

Suppose now that we are in the situation of Corollary 2.14, i.e.

$$\text{HA}^\omega[X, \|\cdot\|, \dots] + \text{AC} + \text{M}^\omega + \text{IP}_{\forall}^\omega \vdash (+)$$

then

$$\text{HA}^\omega[X, \|\cdot\|, \dots] + \text{AC} + \text{M}^\omega + \text{IP}_{\forall}^\omega \vdash$$

$$\forall \epsilon > 0 \exists \delta > 0 \forall n \exists m \geq n \forall u \exists k (\forall \tilde{k} \leq k (y_{\tilde{k}} \geq_{\mathbb{R}} y_n - \delta) \rightarrow \forall i, j \in [m, u] (\|x_i - x_j\| <_{\mathbb{R}} \epsilon)).$$

Hence by monotone functional interpretation one extracts terms $\delta_\epsilon > 0$, m_ϵ and k_ϵ (depending additionally only on majorants of the parameters \underline{a} used in the definition of our sequences) s.t. (valid in $\mathcal{S}^{\omega, X}$) for all majorants \underline{a}^* of \underline{a}

$$\forall \epsilon > 0 \forall n, u$$

$$\left(m_\epsilon(n) \geq n \wedge \left(\forall \tilde{k} \leq k_\epsilon(n, u) (y_{\tilde{k}} \geq y_n - \delta_\epsilon) \rightarrow \forall i, j \in [m_\epsilon(n), u] (\|x_i - x_j\| \leq \epsilon) \right) \right). \quad (*)$$

Now define $k_\epsilon^*(u) := \max\{k_\epsilon(i, u) : i \leq u\}$ and consider

$$\forall \epsilon > 0 \forall n, u \left(\forall \tilde{k} \leq k_\epsilon^*(u) (y_{\tilde{k}} \geq y_n - \delta_\epsilon) \rightarrow \forall i, j \in [m_\epsilon(n), u] (\|x_i - x_j\| \leq \epsilon) \right). \quad (**)$$

We can infer (**) from (*) by the following case distinction:¹² Now fix $\epsilon > 0$ and n .

Case 1: $u < m_\epsilon(n)$. Then the conclusion and hence the whole implication is trivially true.

Case 2: $u \geq m_\epsilon(n) \geq n$. Then $k_\epsilon^*(u) \geq k_\epsilon(n, u)$ and so $\forall \tilde{k} \leq k_\epsilon^*(u) (y_{\tilde{k}} \geq y_n - \delta_\epsilon)$ implies $\forall \tilde{k} \leq k_\epsilon(n, u) (y_{\tilde{k}} \geq y_n - \delta_\epsilon)$ and so the claim follows as well.

Now suppose w.l.o.g. that $k_\epsilon^* : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ is injective and for any given u define

$$l_u := (k_\epsilon^*)^{-1}(u).$$

Then (**) applied to $u := l_u$ yields

$$\forall \epsilon > 0 \forall n, u \left(\forall \tilde{k} \leq u (y_{\tilde{k}} \geq y_n - \delta_\epsilon) \rightarrow \forall i, j \in [m_\epsilon(n), (k_\epsilon^*)^{-1}(u)] (\|x_i - x_j\| \leq \epsilon) \right). \quad (-)$$

Now let $N_0, N_1, \dots, N_{S_\epsilon}$ be integers s.t. $N_0 = 0$ and N_{i+1} is the least $m > N_i$ s.t. $y_m < y_{N_i} - \delta_\epsilon$ as long as such an m exists. Assume that $b \geq y_1$ (for some b) and so $S_\epsilon \leq \frac{b}{\delta_\epsilon}$.

By (-) there are no ϵ -fluctuations of $x_{(\cdot)}$ on the S_ϵ many intervals $[m_\epsilon(N_i), (k_\epsilon^*)^{-1}(N_{i+1})]$ for $i = 0, \dots, S_\epsilon - 1$.

In the intervals $[(k_\epsilon^*)^{-1}(N_i), m_\epsilon(N_i)]$ for $i = 1, \dots, S_\epsilon$ and $[0, m_\epsilon(N_0)]$ we have to show that if we have for any $N \in \mathbb{N}$ s many fluctuations indexed within $[(k_\epsilon^*)^{-1}(N), m_\epsilon(N)]$ (or in $[0, m_\epsilon(N_0)]$) each indexed by a pair of indexes (i, j) then the highest index of such fluctuation (j_s) has to be greater than (or equal to) some $\varphi_\epsilon(s, N)$, where φ_ϵ is such that

$$\exists \tilde{s} \forall n (\varphi_\epsilon(\tilde{s}, n) > m_\epsilon(n)).$$

Then, given such an \tilde{s} , we have at most

$$\frac{b}{\delta_\epsilon} + \tilde{s} \left(\frac{b}{\delta_\epsilon} + 1 \right)$$

many fluctuations.

In the case of Birkhoff's proof, the analysis in [96] and the discussion in [13] gives the following data used in [13]:

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_\epsilon &:= \frac{\epsilon^2 \mu}{16b}, & m_\epsilon(n) &:= \lceil \frac{16b}{\epsilon} \rceil n, \\ (k_\epsilon^*)^{-1}(n) &:= \frac{n}{2}, & \varphi_\epsilon(s, n) &:= \left(1 + \frac{\epsilon}{2b}\right)^s n, \end{aligned}$$

and so

$$\tilde{s} \leq \frac{2b \log \lceil \frac{16b}{\epsilon} \rceil}{\epsilon}.$$

The function φ_ϵ results (see [13] for the calculation) from the fact that

$$\|x_{n+k} - x_k\| \leq 2n\|x\|/(n+k)$$

which is established already in Birkhoff's proof and which – for $n = 1$ – shows that (x_k) has a linear rate of asymptotic regularity.

¹²We are grateful to P. Oliva for pointing this out to us.

Remark 2.41. Naturally, we could use the data, which led to the bound of \tilde{s} above, also simply with Proposition 2.40 to obtain a similar fluctuation bound (which has the same structure in ϵ).

For the case of Halpern iterations (with scalar $1/(n+1)$) mentioned in the introduction, the analysis given in [92] yields (roughly) the following data for Hilbert spaces X (see [92] for the detailed definition of Θ_n):

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_\epsilon &:= \frac{\epsilon^2}{14(b+1)^2}, & m_\epsilon(n) &\approx \Theta_n\left(\frac{\epsilon^2}{4}\right)n^6 \approx n^6, \\ (k_\epsilon^*)^{-1}(n) &:= \frac{3nb^2}{\epsilon}. \end{aligned}$$

Most recently, the function m_ϵ could be improved in [101] to $m_\epsilon(n) \approx n^2$ based on the analysis of a different proof for the strong convergence of the Halpern iteration from [161].

However, now the rate of asymptotic regularity roughly is of order (see corollary 6.3 in [92])

$$\|x_{k+1} - x_k\| \leq \frac{b}{\sqrt{k}},$$

which does not lead to a linear (in n) $\varphi_\epsilon(s, n)$ and even if it would, this would not suffice to dominate $m_\epsilon(n)$. So as it stands, the analysis does not seem to yield any fluctuation bound for the Halpern iteration (x_k) .

Proposition 2.42. *Given a bound B_ϵ on the number of fluctuations, there is an in B_ϵ (and the given data $(k_\epsilon^*)^{-1}$ and m_ϵ and the majorants \underline{a}^* of their parameters including ϵ) primitive recursive φ_ϵ satisfying the conditions in the proof:*

$$\forall \epsilon > 0 \forall s, N, i, j (i, j \in [(k_\epsilon^*)^{-1}(N), m_\epsilon(N)] \wedge \text{Fluc}_\epsilon(s, i, j) \rightarrow j_s \geq \varphi_\epsilon(s, N)), \quad (28)$$

$$\exists \tilde{s} \forall n (\varphi_\epsilon(\tilde{s}, n) > m_\epsilon(n)). \quad (29)$$

Proof. Set

$$\varphi_\epsilon(s, n) := \begin{cases} (k_\epsilon^*)^{-1}(n) & \text{if } s \leq B_\epsilon, \\ m_\epsilon(n) + 1 & \text{else.} \end{cases}$$

□

Remark 2.43. In particular, this means that if we know there is for computable (in the majorants \underline{a}^* of the parameters including ϵ) $(k_\epsilon^*)^{-1}$ and m_ϵ no computable φ_ϵ (in \underline{a}^*) satisfying these conditions, then there cannot be a bound on the number of fluctuations, which is computable (in \underline{a}^*).

Interpreting a strong non-linear ergodic theorem

This paper represents a significant contribution to the program of “proof mining” in nonlinear analysis, which aims to extract effective information hidden in the proofs. Applying methods coming from mathematical logic to results obtained by Wittmann [159], the author extracts effective rates of metastability (in the sense of Terence Tao) for nonlinear generalizations of the classical von Neumann mean ergodic theorem.

... the author gets a finitary version of the mean ergodic theorem for nonlinear mappings $T : X \rightarrow X$ satisfying $\|Tx + Ty\| \leq \|x + y\|$ for all $x, y \in X$.

– anonymous referee about [135], Dec 9, 2011.

Context of Proof Mining in Ergodic Theory

The Riesz version of the von Neumann mean ergodic theorem [158] asserts that for any linear operator T on a Hilbert space X , which is nonexpansive, i.e.

$$\forall u, v \in X \quad (\|Tu - Tv\| \leq \|u - v\|),$$

the sequence of the Cesàro means

$$A_n x := \frac{1}{n+1} \sum_{i=0}^n T^i x,$$

converges in norm for any starting point x . It follows from an example by Genel and Lindenstrauss [40] that there is a nonexpansive operator on the unit ball of ℓ_2 , for which the sequence of the Cesàro means does not converge strongly (see also [107]). So in comparison with von Neumann’s linear mean ergodic theorem, in nonlinear ergodic theory one obtains either a weaker conclusion (such as weak convergence or convergence of a different iteration scheme instead of the Cesàro means) or one has to add additional requirements (to preserve at least some linearity).

Let H be a Hilbert space, C a subset of H and $T : C \rightarrow C$ a (possibly nonlinear) mapping. In 1975, Baillon [14] showed that if C is convex and closed, and T is nonexpansive

and has a fixed point, then the sequence of the Cesàro means is weakly convergent to a fixed point of T . A year later, Baillon [15] also proved that if in addition T is *odd*, i.e.

$$-C = C \text{ and } \forall u \in C \ (T(-u) = -Tu),$$

then the sequence of the Cesàro means converges to a fixed point in norm. Shortly after this, Brézis and Browder [25] showed that Baillon's first result is also true for a more general averaging process than the usual Cesàro means and that Baillon's second result remains valid if $0 \in C$ and T is not necessarily odd but satisfies the following, weaker condition:

$$\exists c \in \mathbb{R} \ \forall u, v \in C (\|Tu + Tv\|^2 \leq \|u + v\|^2 + c(\|u\|^2 - \|Tu\|^2 + \|v\|^2 - \|Tv\|^2)). \quad (\text{BB})$$

On the other hand, in 1979, Hirano and Takahashi [59] showed that Baillon's weak convergence result remains true if the mapping is just *asymptotically* nonexpansive, i.e.

$$\forall u, v \in C \ \forall n \in \mathbb{N} \ (\|T^n u - T^n v\| \leq \alpha_n \|u - v\|),$$

for some sequence $(\alpha_n)_n$ of nonnegative real numbers which converges to 1. Moreover, an odd and nonexpansive mapping satisfies the following condition

$$\forall u, v \in C \ (\|T^n u + T^n v\| \leq \|u + v\|) \quad (\text{W})$$

and analogously an odd and asymptotically nonexpansive mapping satisfies the asymptotic version

$$\forall n \in \mathbb{N} \ \forall u, v \in C \ (\|T^n u + T^n v\| \leq \alpha_n \|u + v\|), \quad (\text{W}^-)$$

for some sequence $(\alpha_n)_n$ of nonnegative real numbers which converges to 1. In 1990, Wittmann [159] proved a generalization of Baillon's strong convergence theorem to an arbitrary C and a mapping satisfying the condition (W^-) (see also Theorem 2.2 in [159] and Theorem 3.2 below). Two years later, Wittmann [160] also showed that for a nonexpansive T which has a fixed point, and a convex and closed C , the averaging sequence (x_n) , first defined by Halpern [50] (for $x = 0$) as

$$x_0 := x, \quad x_{n+1} := \alpha_{n+1}x + (1 - \alpha_{n+1})T(x_n),$$

converges to the closest fixed point of T in norm. The Halpern iteration coincides with the Cesàro means for linear maps and $\alpha_n = \frac{1}{n+1}$. We depict this development in Figure 1 (the references in parentheses refer to quantitative versions of the respective theorems, which we discuss below).

There are many further results and generalizations in the field of nonlinear ergodic theory (regarding different spaces see e.g. [30, 58], even weaker "linearity" conditions see e.g. [115, 132], and other improvements) and it is subject to ongoing research.

In this paper we investigate the computational content of Wittmann's nonlinear strong ergodic theorem:

Theorem 3.1 (Wittmann 1990, [159]). *Let S be a subset of a Hilbert space and $T : S \rightarrow S$ be a mapping satisfying*

$$\forall x, y \in S \ (\|T^n x + T^n y\| \leq \alpha \|x + y\|), \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \alpha_n = 1.$$

¹⁵While the results were essentially available on arXiv since 2007, the paper as such was submitted in 2008. Thereafter Kohlenbach and Leuştean extended the result to uniformly convex Banach spaces and gave a better bound.

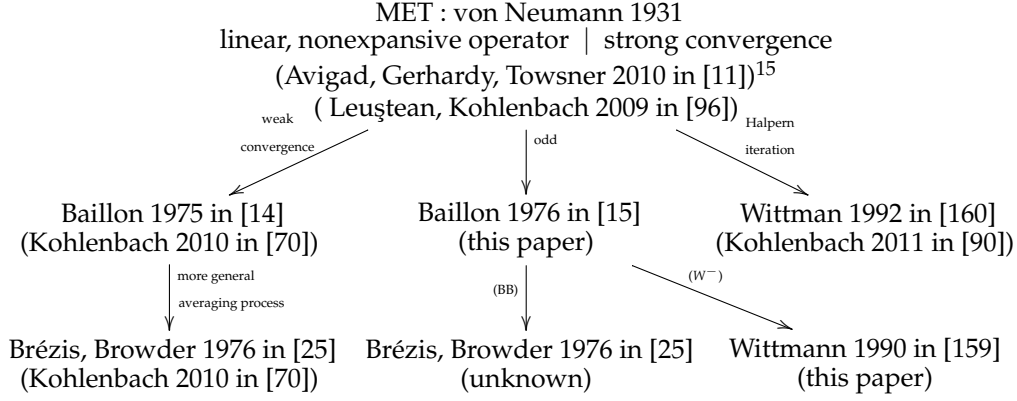


Figure 1: Some nonlinear ergodic theorems (for Hilbert spaces) and their finitisations.

Then for any $x \in S$ the sequence of the Cesàro means,

$$A_n x := \frac{1}{n+1} \sum_{i=0}^n T^i x,$$

is norm convergent.

Although in general the sequence of the ergodic averages does not have a computable rate of convergence (even for the von Neumann's mean ergodic theorem for a separable space and computable x and T), as was shown by Avigad, Gerhardy and Towsner in [11], the so called metastable version nevertheless has a primitive recursive bound. In our case this means that given the assumptions from Wittmann's strong ergodic theorem, the following holds

$$\forall b, l \in \mathbb{N}, g : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}, x \in S \exists m \leq M(l, g, b, K) (\|x\| \leq b \rightarrow \|A_m x - A_{m+g(m)} x\| \leq 2^{-l}),$$

for a primitive recursive M , where K is a rate of convergence for the sequence α in the assumption (W^-) . We will not only prove the existence of such an M but also give such a bound explicitly in Corollary 3.11. For the specific case where $(\alpha_n)_n$ is a constant 1 sequence (i.e. T satisfies (W) rather than (W^-) , see also Theorem 2.2 in [159] and Corollary 3.13 below), M can be defined as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} M(l, g, b) &:= (N(2l+7, g^M, b) + P(2l+7, g^M, b))b2^{2l+8} + 1, \\ P(l, g, b) &:= P_0(l, F(l, g, N(l, g, b), b), b), \\ F(l, g, n, b)(p) &:= p + n + \tilde{g}((n+p)b2^{l+1}), \\ N(l, g, b) &:= (H(l, g, b))^{b2^{l+2}}(0), \\ H(l, g, b)(n) &:= n + P_0(l, F(l, g, n, b), b) + \tilde{g}((n + P_0(l, F(l, g, n, b), b))b2^{l+1}), \end{aligned}$$

where (for $f : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$)

$$P_0(l, f, b) := \tilde{f}^{b2^{2l}}(0), \quad \tilde{g}(n) := n + g(n), \quad g^M(n) := \max_{i \leq n+1} g(i).^{16}$$

Note that apart from the counterfunction g and the precision l , this bound depends only on b and not on S , T or x . For another quantitative result on operators satisfying the condition (W) see [91].

These results, along with those by Avigad, Gerhardy, Towsner [11] and Kohlenbach, Leuştean [96] for the finitary version of the von Neumann ergodic theorem as well as Kohlenbach's bounds for the finitary versions of Baillon's weak ergodic theorem [70] and Wittmann's convergence result for Halpern means [90], can be seen as instances of 'hard analysis' in the sense of T. Tao; see [151, 150], where he discusses the uses and benefits of (the existence of) uniform bounds for such finitary formulations of well-known theorems. It is one of the goals of this paper to demonstrate that there are proof-theoretic means to systematically obtain such uniform bounds. In fact, for many theorems the existence of a uniform bound is guaranteed by Kohlenbach's metatheorems introduced in [86] and refined in [46]. Additionally, proof theoretic methods such as Kohlenbach's monotone functional interpretation (see [75]) can be used to systematically obtain these effective bounds. The paper at hand is a case study in applying such proof mining techniques.

We improve results in the area of nonlinear generalizations of the mean ergodic theorem and their corresponding finitisations (see Figure 1). Moreover, we have here a rare example of an application of these techniques to not necessarily continuous operators. In logical terms this amounts to the subtlety that only a weak version of extensionality is available. Also, for the first time, we obtain a bound which in fact makes use of nested iteration. One can see this quickly on the term M above. While F as a function is defined via iteration of the counterfunction g , it itself is being iterated by P . This is a direct consequence of the logical form of Wittmann's original proof.

It is a surprising observation that so far for all metastable versions of strong ergodic theorems primitive recursive bounds could be obtained.

We discuss the application of general logical metatheorems in more detail in Section 3.3 which is not necessary to understand and verify our main results. We present these, namely the explicit bounds for all three theorems in Wittmann's paper [159], in Section ?? . We explain how to obtain the explicit bounds in Section 3.2, after formalizing Wittmann's proof in Section 3.1. Both of these sections, though inspired by proof theoretic methods, require no facts from logic.

3.1 Arithmetizing Wittmann's proof

The first step of a proof mining process is to investigate the proof of the theorem we want to analyze. For a discussion on proof mining techniques in connection with ergodic theory see [44] and the last section of [11] and for an in-depth analysis of applied proof theory see [88]. The nonconstructive, or ineffective, content of Wittmann's proof are the principle of convergence for bounded monotone sequences of real numbers and the existence of infimum for bounded sequences of real numbers. Formulated in the usual way, both principles state the existence of a real number, which we represent as fast converging Cauchy sequences of rationals¹⁷ encoded as number theoretic functions (i.e. functions in $\mathbb{N}^{\mathbb{N}}$). However, for a given sequence, both principles can be replaced by weaker statements about natural numbers only (as opposed to statements about objects in $\mathbb{N}^{\mathbb{N}}$). In the presence of arithmetical comprehension, these weaker (arithmetical) statements are equivalent to the original (analytical) principles.¹⁸ For the convergence we work with the arithmetic Cauchy property and for infimum we give for any precision an approximate infimum.

1. Arithmetized convergence of a monotone bounded sequence $a_{(\cdot)}$:

$$\forall l \exists n \forall m \geq n \quad (|a_n - a_m| \leq 2^{-l}).$$

2. Arithmetized existence of the infimum of a bounded sequence $a_{(\cdot)}$:

$$\forall l \exists n \forall m \quad (a_n - a_m \leq 2^{-l}).$$

Of course, in this way we don't get a single point which *is* the limit point or infimum. Therefore we have to analyze the proof and see whether such points are actually needed or whether these arithmetical versions suffice. Here, fortunately, it turns out that the latter is the case (see [78] for a general discussion of this point).

Following [88], we show that we can rewrite Wittmann's proof (see [159]) in the language of $\mathcal{A}^\omega[X, \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle]$, carefully using only weak (arithmetized) principles at the relevant places.

Theorem 3.2 (Wittmann 1990, [159]). *Let $X_{(\cdot)}$ be a sequence in a Hilbert space s.t. for all $m, n, k \in \mathbb{N}$*

$$\|X_{n+k} + X_{m+k}\|^2 \leq \|X_n + X_m\|^2 + \delta_k \quad (\text{i})$$

with

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \delta_k = 0. \quad (\text{ii})$$

Then the sequence $A_{(\cdot)}$ defined by

$$A_n := \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n X_i,$$

is norm convergent.

¹⁷We represent rational numbers as pairs of natural numbers. For further details on representations in this context, see [88].

¹⁸While the analytical principles are actually known to be equivalent to arithmetic comprehension (see [145] and – for more detailed results – [82]), the arithmetic versions are equivalent to Σ_1^0 -induction and hence have a functional interpretation by ordinarily primitive recursive functionals (see [88]).

We follow Wittmann's notation and use $X_{(\cdot)}$ to denote the sequence in the Hilbert space (not to be confused with the Hilbert space itself, which might be implied by the notation $\mathcal{A}^\omega[X, \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle]$). Also, to keep the proof more readable, we refer the more technical steps to later sections. There we need to do a thorough analysis of those steps to obtain the precise bounds of the realizers, while here we can settle for their existence.

We formulate conditions (i) and (ii) from the theorem as arithmetical statements as follows (except for the variable K , which we will treat as a given parameter):

$$\forall m, n, k \in \mathbb{N} \quad (||X_{n+k} + X_{m+k}||^2 \leq ||X_n + X_m||^2 + \delta_k), \quad (30)$$

$$\exists K \in \mathbb{N} \forall n \in \mathbb{N} \forall i \geq K(n) \quad (|\delta_i| \leq 2^{-n}). \quad (31)$$

From now on, let K always denote a rate of convergence of the sequence $\delta_{(\cdot)}$ (i.e. a function satisfying (A2)) and B the upper bound of $X_{(\cdot)}$ (such a bound can be defined primitive recursively in $K(0)$ and some elements of $X_{(\cdot)}$, see Theorem ??).

It is easy to show that the sequence $(||X_n||)_n$ is a Cauchy sequence (see proof of Lemma 3.18 below). Such an arithmetical formulation of the convergence of $(||X_n||)_n$ is sufficient to infer that in particular we have that

$$\forall l^0 \exists n^0 \forall m_2^0 \geq m_1^0 \geq n \quad (||X_{m_1}||^2 \leq ||X_{m_2}||^2 + 2^{-(l+1)}). \quad (32)$$

The Skolem function realizing n^0 would correspond to n_ϵ in Wittmann's proof (where he used the standard convergence), however we work only with the fact that such an n exists for any given precision l . From 32 we infer that

$$\forall l \exists n_l \forall m, n \geq n_l \forall k \geq K(l) \quad (\langle X_{n+k}, X_{m+k} \rangle \leq \langle X_n, X_m \rangle + 2^{-l}), \quad (W1)$$

the same way as Wittmann in [159], see also the end of the proof of Lemma 3.20 in Section ??.

From now on, by n_l we always denote an n_l which satisfies (W1). Since the norm of any convex combination of the elements of the sequence is bounded from below by 0, the set of all such convex combinations has an infimum. To give an arithmetic formulation of this fact, it is useful to have a primitive recursive functional C which gives us a 2^{-l} approximation of the smallest convex combination of X_n, X_{n+1}, \dots, X_p (more precisely, of the square of the infimum of the set of the norms of these convex combinations). Clearly, there are many ways to define such a functional. We do so in a straightforward way in Definition 3.15 below. Having such a C in place, the following arithmetical formula

$$\forall l \exists p_l \forall p \geq p_l \quad (C(l, n_l, p_l) \leq C(l, n_l, p) + 2^{-l}), \quad (W2)$$

states the existence of an approximate infimum of all convex combinations of $X_{(\cdot)}$ (see also Lemma 3.16). Similarly as with n_l , from now on by p_l we mean a number satisfying (W2).

Wittmann introduces a specific point $z_{\epsilon, m}$, which we denote by $Z(l, n, p, m)$ and define using our notation in Definition 3.21 below. However, here the precise definition is not as important as the properties of this point. Firstly, we show that for any two natural numbers i and j , the distance between $Z(l, n_l, p_l, i)$ and $Z(l, n_l, p_l, j)$ is arbitrary small for sufficiently large l . Together with the convexity of the square function we have (again, see [159] or the proof of Lemma 3.22.(2) below) that

$$\forall l^0, m^0 \quad (||Z(l, n_l, p_l, m)||^2 \leq C(l, n_l, p_l) + 2^{-l}). \quad (W3)$$

From (W2) we can infer (see the proof of Lemma 3.22.(1) below) that

$$\forall l, i, j \left(\left\| \frac{1}{2} (Z(l, n_l, p_l, i) + Z(l, n_l, p_l, j)) \right\|^2 + 2^{-l} \geq C(l, n_l, p_l) \right),$$

and together with (W3) and the parallelogram identity we can conclude that

$$\forall l, i, j \left(\left\| Z(l, n_l, p_l, i) - Z(l, n_l, p_l, j) \right\|^2 \leq 2^{-l+4} \right).$$

Secondly, it follows from the definition of Z (yet again see [159] or Section ??, proof of Lemma 3.23) that

$$\forall l \forall m \geq p_l \left(\left\| Z(l, n_l, p_l, m) - A_{m+1} \right\| \leq \frac{2(p_l + n_l + K(l)) \sup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \|X_n\|}{m+1} \right),$$

which means that we can make the distance between A_{m+1} and $Z(l, n_l, p_l, m)$ arbitrarily small by choosing m sufficiently large.

In particular we have shown that the distance between any A_i and any A_j is arbitrarily small once i and j are sufficiently large. Note that we can choose an arbitrarily large l first and then we are still free to choose sufficiently large i and j after n_l and p_l are fixed. This concludes the sketch of the proof that $A_{(\cdot)}$ is a Cauchy sequence.

3.2 Obtaining a bound

The goal of this section is to roughly describe how to find a bound for m in

$$\forall l, g \exists m \left(\|A_m - A_{m+g(m)}\| \leq 2^{-l} \right).$$

Similarly as before, for better understanding we leave some technical details for later sections and disregard the monotonicity of the bounds as well as some small corrections needed in the exponent of 2^{-l} . We handle these two aspects very carefully in the sections ?? and ??, where we make also all of the following steps more explicit.

Let the assumptions in the proof of Theorem 3.2 hold and let K , B and C be as before as well.

Furthermore, we assume that N_0 and P_0 are the witnessing terms for (W1) (note that in fact this means rather that we have a witness for Kreisel's no-counterexample interpretation – n.c.i. see [?, 104] – of the convergence of $\|X_n\|$ in the first place) and (W2) as given in [88], i.e. we have that:

$$\forall l, h \forall m, n \in [N_0(l, h); N_0(l, h) + g(N_0(l, h))] \left(\langle X_{m+k}, X_{n+k} \rangle \leq \langle X_m, X_n \rangle + 2^{-l} \right)$$

and

$$\forall l, f \left(C(l, n_l, P_0(l, f)) \leq C(l, n_l, f(P_0(l, f))) + 2^{-l} \right)$$

for any n_l satisfying (W1).

This structure accounts for the already mentioned nested iteration. Eventually, we have to specify a counterfunction f s.t. it is sufficient that this inequality holds for that particular f . This f has to depend on n_l , which will obviously be defined as an iteration, and f itself will be iterated by P_0 .

To obtain a bound for m , we follow the proof from the last section backwards. We define

$$M_0(l, n, p) := 2(p + n + K(l))B2^l,$$

since then we have that $\|Z(l, n_l, p_l, M_0(l, n_l, p_l)) - A_{m+1}\| \leq 2^{-l}$, for the right values of l , n_l and p_l (which we don't know yet).

From the proof we can infer that the largest p needed in (W2) is $K(l) + m + g(m) + n_l + p_l$ (for details see proof of Lemma 3.22.(1)), therefore we need that

$$f(P_0(l, f)) = K(l) + m + g(m) + n_l + P_0(l, f),$$

(where m and $m + g(m)$ correspond to the m and n in (W1)).

Moreover, we can see that the largest m or n needed in (W1) is $n_l + p_l + m + g(m) + K(l)$ (for details see proof of Lemma 3.20 and its application in proof of Lemma 3.22.(2)). So we need that $h(N_0(h, l)) = p_l + m + g(m) + K(l)$.

Keeping in mind that $N_0(l, h)$ corresponds to n_l (and to n below) and $P_0(l, f)$ to p_l (and to p below) we obtain¹⁹

$$\begin{aligned} h(l, g) = \lambda n \cdot \underbrace{P_0(l, \lambda p \cdot K(l) + M_0(l, n, p) + g(M_0(l, n, p)) + p + n)}_{p_l} + \\ + M_0(p_l, n, l) + g(M_0(p_l, n, l)) + K(l), \end{aligned}$$

and define

$$N(l, g) := N_0(l, h(l, g)).$$

Given $N(l, g)$, which corresponds to n_l , and again keeping in mind that $P_0(l, f)$ corresponds to p_l (and to p below), we can define $P(l, g)$ as well:

$$P(l, g) := P_0(l, f(l, g)),$$

where $f(l, g) = \lambda p \cdot K(l) + M_0(p, N(l, g), l) + g(M_0(p, N(l, g), l)) + p + N(l, g)$. Finally we can define the desired witness for m as follows:

$$M(l, g) := M_0(l, N(l, g), P(l, g)).$$

3.3 A general bound existence theorem

The main result of this paper, Corollary 3.11, is a quantitative version of a nonlinear strong ergodic theorem for operators satisfying Wittmann's condition (W^-) on an arbitrary subset of a Hilbert space. In this section we outline how for this type of theorems the existence of such uniform bounds can be obtained by means of a general logical metatheorem. This sort of metatheorems was developed in [86] and [46] (see also [88]) and are applicable to many theorems concerning a wide range of classes of maps and abstract spaces. For example, they were successfully applied to the ergodic theorems mentioned in Figure 1 or to asymptotic regularity theorems in metric fixed point theory [?]. In the last mentioned example, as in this paper, the authors infer from the metatheorems that uniform bounds exist and derive them explicitly.

To apply the metatheorems, we need the analyzed theorem to meet only two conditions:

¹⁹Here and in the following, when considering a complex term $t[a_1, \dots, a_n]$ in several variables a_1, \dots, a_n , the notation $\lambda a_i. t[a_1, \dots, a_n]$ defines (as usual in logic) the function $a_i \mapsto t[a_1, \dots, a_n]$.

1. The proof does not use axioms or rules which are too strong.
2. The analyzed theorem in its logical form is not too complex in terms of quantification.

To formalize the first condition we start with a logical system for so called full classical analysis introduced by Spector in [146].²⁰ Kohlenbach extended this system by an additional basic type and its defining axioms representing a given abstract space and its properties. Kohlenbach also considers cases, where a specific subset of such a space (or rather its characteristic function) has to exist as a constant. For instance in [88] Kohlenbach defines such systems for the theory of metric, hyperbolic, normed, uniformly convex or Hilbert spaces – if required – together with a (bounded) convex subset.²¹ In our case (i.e. simply for a pre-Hilbert space) this extended system is denoted by $\mathcal{A}^\omega[X, \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle]$. In general, the system can be extended to arbitrary Hilbert spaces, however it turns out that the completeness is not necessary for the proof that we analyze.

The second condition has to be investigated for each theorem specifically, depending on the given theorem and the metatheorem we wish to use. Examples are metastable versions of formulas expressing the convergence or fixed point properties of nonexpansive, Lipschitz, weakly quasi-nonexpansive or uniformly continuous functions even simply functions which are majorizable (see Corollary 6.6 in [46] and Theorem 3.3 below). The metatheorem applicable in our scenario follows from Corollary 6.6.7) in [46]. In particular with the theory $\mathcal{A}^\omega[X, \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle]$ with an additional parameter for an arbitrary subset S of the abstract Hilbert space X .²²

Theorem 3.3 (Gerhardy-Kohlenbach [46] - specific case 1). *Let φ_\forall , resp. ψ_\exists , be \forall - resp. \exists -formulas that contain only x, z, f free, resp. x, z, f, v free. Assume that $\mathcal{A}^\omega[X, \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle, S]$ proves the following sentence:*

$$\forall x \in \mathbb{N}^{\mathbb{N}}, z \in S, f \in S^S (\varphi_\forall(x, z, f) \rightarrow \exists v \in \mathbb{N} \psi_\exists(x, z, f, v)).$$

Then there is a computable functional $F : \mathbb{N}^{\mathbb{N}} \times \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N}^{\mathbb{N}} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ s. t. the following holds in all non-trivial (real) inner product spaces $(X, \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle)$ and for any subset $S \subseteq X$

$$\forall x \in \mathbb{N}^{\mathbb{N}}, z \in S, b \in \mathbb{N}, f \in S^S, f^* \in \mathbb{N}^{\mathbb{N}} \\ (\text{Maj}(f^*, f) \wedge \|z\| \leq b \wedge \varphi_\forall(x, z, f) \rightarrow \exists v \leq F(x, b, f^*) \psi_\exists(x, z, f, v)),$$

where

$$\text{Maj}(f^*, f) := \forall n \in \mathbb{N} \forall z \in S (\|z\| \leq_{\mathbb{R}} n \rightarrow \|f(z)\| \leq_{\mathbb{R}} f^*(n)).$$

The theorem holds analogously for finite tuples.

Consider the following metastable version of Wittmann's Theorem 2.1 [159]:

Theorem 3.4 (Theorem 2.1 in [159]). *Let S be a subset of a Hilbert space and $T : S \rightarrow S$ be a mapping satisfying*

$$\forall x, y \in S (\|Tx + Ty\| \leq \|x + y\|). \quad (\text{W})$$

²⁰In particular this system covers full comprehension over numbers, including also full second order arithmetic.

²¹In any such abstract space, its metric plays a major role as two objects are defined to be equal, if and only if their distance is zero.

²²This is analogous to the case where we add C to the theory for normed space, but this time without any additional axioms.

Then for any $x \in S$ the sequence of the Cesàro means,

$$A_n x := \frac{1}{n+1} \sum_{i=0}^n T^i x,$$

is norm convergent.

This theorem has the following form:

$$\forall l \in \mathbb{N}, g \in \mathbb{N}^{\mathbb{N}}, x \in S, T \in S^S \left(W(T) \rightarrow \exists m \in \mathbb{N} (\|A_m x - A_{m+g(m)} x\| < 2^{-l}) \right). \quad (+)$$

Obviously the conclusion, i.e. $\exists m (\|A_m x - A_{m+g(m)} x\| < 2^{-l})$, has the form $\exists m \psi_{\exists}(m, l, g)$ and the assumption $W(T)$, i.e. $\forall x, y \in S (\|Tx + Ty\| \leq \|x + y\|)$, has the form $\varphi_{\forall}(T)$.

Moreover, $W(T)$ already implies $\text{Maj}(\text{id}, T)$ (here id stands simply for the identity function on \mathbb{N}), since $W(T)$ applied to $x = y = z$ implies $\forall z \in S (\|T(z)\| \leq \|z\|)$.

Hence we can apply Theorem 3.3 to (+) by setting

$$\underline{x} :=_{\mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N}^{\mathbb{N}}} l, g, z :=_S x, f :=_{S \rightarrow S} T, f^* :=_{\mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}} \text{id},$$

and

$$\varphi_{\forall}(x, z, f) := W(T), \exists v \in \mathbb{N} \psi_{\exists}(x, z, f, v) := \exists m \in \mathbb{N} (\|A_m x - A_{m+g(m)} x\| < 2^{-l}),$$

to obtain that there is a computable bound $M : \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N}^{\mathbb{N}} \times \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$, s.t.

$$\forall l \in \mathbb{N}, g \in \mathbb{N}^{\mathbb{N}}, x \in S, T \in S^S \\ (\quad W(T) \wedge \|x\| \leq b \rightarrow \exists m \leq_{\mathbb{N}} M(l, g, b) (\|A_m x - A_{m+g(m)} x\| \leq 2^{-l})).$$

It is rather easy to see that the proof can be formalized in $\mathcal{A}^{\omega}[X, \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle, S]$, except for the question of the use of the axiom of extensionality (full extensionality is in general unavailable in any proof-theoretic extraction of computational bounds). Generally, one can avoid the use of full extensionality in proofs of statements about continuous objects. Note that in particular any nonexpansive operator is also continuous. However, in our case, the operator T may be discontinuous. Fortunately, Wittmann proves his main results as a consequence of a statement about a simple sequence of elements in S , which as such is independent of T (see Theorem 2.3 in [159] or Theorem 3.5 below), whereby all relevant equalities are provable directly. Therefore the rule of extensionality suffices to formalize his proof.

Hence the existence of a *uniform computable bound* for the metastable version can be inferred from the metatheorem in [46]. Furthermore, since the metatheorem is established by proof-theoretic reasoning, it provides not only the existence of a uniform bound but also a procedure for its extraction.

Now, in general such a bound might need so called bar-recursion (BR), which is required to interpret the schema of full comprehension over numbers in Spector's system (see [146]). However, once more due to the way how Wittmann proved the analyzed theorem, it is easy to see that the only proof-theoretically non-trivial principles needed in the proof are the existence of the infimum/supremum of bounded sequences and the principle of convergence for bounded monotone sequences. Both of these principles need only bar-recursion restricted to numbers and functions ($\text{BR}_{0,1}$) and not full BR. (Kohlenbach shows in [88, 82] that both principles are provable from arithmetical comprehension which is interpreted in $\mathcal{T}_0 + \text{BR}_{0,1}$.) Moreover, since the bound itself

has only functions and numbers as arguments, it follows from [140, 81] that the bound is not only computable, but that the *bound is a primitive recursive functional in the sense of Gödel's \mathcal{T}* .

These observations can be made a priori, without any in-depth analysis of the proof. In addition, one more conclusion can be drawn before one actually extracts the bound. In general, it is helpful, and sometimes even necessary, to simplify (in the sense of proof-theoretic strength) the analyzed proof. We do so in Section 3.1. As one can see, in fact the proof uses only arithmetical versions of the non-trivial principles (which can be proved by $\Sigma_1^0\text{-IA}$) and therefore we know that the use of $\text{BR}_{0,1}$ can be eliminated as well. Hence, we can infer that there is actually *an ordinary primitive recursive bound* (a bound in \mathcal{T}_0) which we give explicitly in Section ??, Corollary 3.13.

We should point out that the original Corollary in [46] can be used in a more general context than the particular example we just discussed. For instance, it can be applied to both, Theorem 2.2 and Theorem 2.3 in [159]. Take for example the metastable formulation of Theorem 2.3 in [159]:

Theorem 3.5. *Let $X_{(\cdot)}$ be a sequence in a Hilbert space s.t.*

$$\forall m, n, k \in \mathbb{N} \quad (\|X_{n+k} + X_{m+k}\|^2 \leq \|X_n + X_m\|^2 + \delta_k),$$

and $\exists K \in \mathbb{N} \forall n \in \mathbb{N} \forall i \geq Kn \quad (\delta_i \leq 2^{-n})$. Then

$$\forall l \in \mathbb{N}, g : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N} \exists m \quad (\|A_m x - A_{m+g(m)} x\| \leq 2^{-l}).$$

For simplicity, let us here assume that the sequence $\delta_{(\cdot)}$ is in the real unit interval. In this case we have the following additional parameters: $K : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$, $\delta : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow [0, 1]$ and a sequence $z_{(\cdot)} := X_{(\cdot)}$ (rather than a starting point $z := x$). We can apply Corollary 6.6.7) in [46] for the theory $\mathcal{A}^\omega[X, \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle, S]$ again. Additionally we use point 6.6.3). On the other hand, this time we don't need the function parameter f :

Theorem 3.6 (Gerhardy-Kohlenbach [46] - specific case 2). *Let P be a \mathcal{A}^ω -definable Polish space and let φ_\forall , resp. ψ_\exists , be a \forall - resp. an \exists -formula that contains only x, z, f free, resp. x, z, f, v free. Assume that $\mathcal{A}^\omega[X, \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle, S]$ proves the following sentence:*

$$\forall x \in \mathbb{N}^\mathbb{N}, y \in P, z_{(\cdot)} \in \mathbb{N}^S (\varphi_\forall(x, z) \rightarrow \exists v \in \mathbb{N} \psi_\exists(x, z, v)),$$

Then there is a computable functional $F : \mathbb{N}^\mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N}^\mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ s. t. the following holds in all non-trivial (real) inner product spaces $(X, \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle)$ and for any subset $S \subseteq X$

$$\begin{aligned} \forall x \in \mathbb{N}^\mathbb{N}, z_{(\cdot)} \in \mathbb{N}^S, b_{(\cdot)} \in \mathbb{N}^\mathbb{N} \\ (\forall n \in \mathbb{N} (\|z_n\| \leq b_n) \wedge \varphi_\forall(x, z) \rightarrow \exists v \leq F(x, b_{(\cdot)}) \psi_\exists(x, z, v)). \end{aligned}$$

The theorem holds analogously for finite tuples.

Given any rate of convergence for the sequence $\delta_{(\cdot)}$, the metastable version of the assumptions in Theorem 3.5 is purely universal:

$$\forall m, n, k, j \in \mathbb{N} \forall i \geq K(j) (\|X_{n+k} + X_{m+k}\|^2 \leq \|X_n + X_m\|^2 + \delta_k \wedge \delta_i \leq 2^{-n}). \quad (W')$$

Moreover, the Polish space $[0, 1]^\mathbb{N}$ is naturally definable in \mathcal{A}^ω so we obtain by Theorem 3.6 that

$$\begin{aligned} \forall l \in \mathbb{N}, g \in \mathbb{N}^\mathbb{N}, K \in \mathbb{N}^\mathbb{N}, \delta_{(\cdot)} \in [0, 1]^\mathbb{N}, X_{(\cdot)} \in \mathbb{N}^\mathbb{N}, b_{(\cdot)} \in \mathbb{N}^\mathbb{N} \\ (\forall i \in \mathbb{N} (X_i \leq b_i) \wedge W'(X, K, \delta) \rightarrow \\ \exists m \leq_\mathbb{N} M(l, g, b_{(\cdot)}, K) (\|A_m x - A_{m+g(m)} x\| \leq 2^{-l})). \end{aligned}$$

Similarly as before, W' implies $\forall i \in \mathbb{N} (X_i \leq b_i)$ for a suitable $b_{(\cdot)}$. We give such a bound explicitly in Section ??, Theorem ??. To be precise, in Theorem ?? we give a bound $M(l, g, b_0, b_1, \dots, b_{K(0)}, K)$ for an arbitrary sequence $\delta_{(\cdot)} \in \mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{N}}$ converging to zero with the rate K . In the simplified case for the unit interval, it is straightforward to see that the bound also simplifies to an even more uniform bound $M(l, g, b_0, K)$.

To repeat, these are very specific scenarios. We should emphasize that the Corollaries in [46], and the metatheorem(s) even more so, have a much wider range of application.

3.4 Uniform bounds for Wittmann's ergodic theorems

We give a bound for a finitary version of Wittmann's convergence result for a general series in a Hilbert space satisfying a suitable formulation of the condition (W^-) first (see Proposition 3.8 and Theorem 3.10) to derive the bounds for the finitary versions of the actual ergodic theorems later (see Corollary 3.11 and Corollary 3.13).

The proof of Proposition 3.8 is rather involved and we give it in a dedicated section. We denote the set of natural numbers $\{x \in \mathbb{N} : a \leq x \wedge x \leq b\}$ by $[a; b]$.

Remark 3.7. In the following proposition, we omit the term dependencies whenever the arguments are trivial. In particular we omit the dependency on the parameters K and B in the definition of M' . E.g. we write $F(p) := (F(l, g, n))(p) := p + n + K^M(l) + M_0 + g(M_0)$ to define a functional F , which given the natural numbers l, n and B and the functions $g : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ and $K : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ returns a function $F(l, g, n, K, B) : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ which maps any natural number p to the natural number $p + n + K^M(l) + M_0(l, n, p, K, B) + g(M_0(l, n, p, K, B))$.

Proposition 3.8 (Finitary version of Theorem 2.3 in [159]). *Let $K : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ be a function and $X_{(\cdot)}$ a sequence in a Hilbert space s.t. for all $m, n, k \in \mathbb{N}$*

$$\|X_{n+k} + X_{m+k}\|^2 \leq \|X_n + X_m\|^2 + \delta_k, \quad (\text{A1})$$

with

$$\forall l \in \mathbb{N} \forall n \geq K(l) (|\delta_n| < 2^{-l}), \quad (\text{A2})$$

in other words let K be a rate of convergence of (δ_k) towards 0. Furthermore let B be a natural number s.t. $B \geq \|X_i\| + 1$ for all $i \leq K(0)$.

Then the sequence $A_{(\cdot)}$, defined by $A_n := \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n X_i$, is a Cauchy sequence and we have that

$$\forall l \in \mathbb{N}, g : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N} \exists m \leq M'(l, g^M, K, B) (\|A_m - A_{m+g(m)}\| \leq 2^{-l}),$$

with $g^M(n) := \max_{i \leq n} g(n)$, $K^M(n) := \max_{i \leq n} K(n)$, and $M'(l, g, K, B)$ defined as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} M' &:= M'(l, g) := M(2l + 6, g') + 1, \quad g' : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}, \quad g'(n) := g(n + 1), \\ M &:= M(l, g) := M_0(P, N, l), \\ P &:= P(l, g) := P_0(l, F(l, g, N)), \\ F(p) &:= (F(l, g, n))(p) := p + n + K^M(l) + M_0 + g(M_0), \quad F : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}, \\ N &:= N(l, g) := N_0(l + 1, H), \\ H(n) &:= (H(l, g))(n) := H_0(l, g, n, P_0(l, F)), \quad H : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}, \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} H_0 &:= H_0(l, g, n, p) := p + M_0 + g(M_0) + K^M(l), \\ M_0 &:= M_0(l, n, p) := (2n + 2p + 2K^M(l))B2^l, \\ P_0 &:= P_0(l, f) := \tilde{f}^{B^{2^l}}(0), \quad \tilde{f}(n) := n + f(n), \\ N_0 &:= N_0(l, h) := P_0(l + 1, U) + K^M(l + 1), \\ U(n) &:= (U(l, h))(n) := (n + K^M(l + 1)) + h^M(n + K^M(l + 1)), \quad U : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}. \end{aligned}$$

Remark 3.9. From now on we will make use of the following observations regarding this proposition.

1. Due to the condition (A1) we have that $\forall i \in \mathbb{N} \ B \geq \|X_i\|$.
2. The condition (A2) holds for K^M as well. Therefore it is safe to assume that K is already monotone and hence that $K^M = K$.

Sometimes it is useful to work with the following version of the previous theorem, though both these formulations are equivalent (even in very weak systems).

Theorem 3.10 (Finitary version of Theorem 2.3 in [159] for intervals). *Given the assumptions in Proposition 3.8 the sequence $A_{(\cdot)}$ defined by*

$$A_n := \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n X_i,$$

is a Cauchy sequence and we have that

$$\forall l \in \mathbb{N}, g : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N} \ \exists m \leq M'(l + 1, g^M, K, B) \ \forall i, j \in [m; m + g(m)] \ (\|A_i - A_j\| \leq 2^{-l}),$$

with $M'(l, g, K, B)$ defined as in Proposition 3.8.

Proof. Given any l and g , apply Proposition 3.8 to the number $l + 1$ and to the function

$$\begin{aligned} h(n) &:= \min \left\{ i \in [0; g(n)] \text{ s.t.} \right. \\ &\quad \left. \forall j \in [0; g(n)] \ (\|A_{n+i} - A_n\| \geq \|A_{n+j} - A_n\|) \right\}. \end{aligned}$$

It follows that (here again, we omit obvious dependencies on trivial arguments)

$$\exists m \leq M'(l + 1, h^M) \ (\|A_m - A_{m+h(m)}\| \leq 2^{-l-1}).$$

We fix such an m and conclude (by the triangle inequality) that

$$\forall i, j \in [m; m + g(m)] \ (\|A_i - A_j\| \leq 2^{-l}).$$

Moreover, since $\forall n \in \mathbb{N} \ (h^M(n) \leq g^M(n))$ we have that

$$m \leq M'(l + 1, g^M)$$

due to Lemma 3.17. □

Now, we obtain the bound for the metastable version of Theorem 2.2 in Wittmann's paper [159] as a simple conclusion:

Corollary 3.11 (Finitary version of Theorem 2.2 in [159]). *Let S be a subset of a Hilbert space and $T : S \rightarrow S$ be a mapping satisfying*

$$\forall n \in \mathbb{N} \forall x, y \in S \left(\|T^n x + T^n y\| \leq \alpha_n \|x + y\| \right), \quad (33)$$

$$\forall l \in \mathbb{N} \forall n \geq K'(l) \left(|1 - \alpha_n| < 2^{-l} \right). \quad (34)$$

Then for any $x \in S$ and any natural number B' s.t. $B' \geq \|T^i x\|$ for all $i \leq K'(0)$ the sequence of the Cesàro means

$$A_n x := \frac{1}{n+1} \sum_{i=0}^n T^i x$$

is norm convergent and the following holds:

$$\forall l \in \mathbb{N}, g : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N} \exists m \leq M'(l+1, g^M, K, B) \forall i, j \in [m; m+g(m)] \left(\|A_i x - A_j x\| \leq 2^{-l} \right),$$

with $K(l) := K'(l+2\lceil \log_2 B \rceil + 4)$, $B := 2B' + 1$ and M' defined as in Proposition 3.8.

Proof. Fix an arbitrary $x \in S$ and set $X_i := T^i x$, $\delta_n := 4B^2(\alpha_n^2 - 1)$. Next we show that the assumptions of Theorem 3.10 hold for (X_i) , (δ_n) , $K(l)$ and B . Obviously we have that $B \geq \|X_i\| + 1$ for all $i \leq K(0)$, since $2B' \geq \|T^i x\|$ for all $i \in \mathbb{N}$. Now, given any k, n and m , from $\|T^k x + T^k y\| \leq \alpha_k \|x + y\|$ for suitable x and y , we can infer that

$$\|X_{n+k} + X_{m+k}\|^2 \leq \|X_n + X_m\|^2 + (\alpha_k^2 - 1) \|X_n + X_m\|^2 \leq \|X_n + X_m\|^2 + (\alpha_k^2 - 1) 4B^2.$$

Moreover, we have that (we can safely assume that $\alpha_n \geq 1$)

$$|\delta_n| = |4B^2(\alpha_n^2 - 1)| = 4B^2(\alpha_n - 1)(\alpha_n - 1 + 2) = 4B^2((\alpha_n - 1)^2 + 2(\alpha_n - 1)),$$

so using (34) we have that

$$|\delta_n| \leq 4B^2(2^{-2(l+2\lceil \log_2 B \rceil + 4)} + 2^{-(l+2\lceil \log_2 B \rceil + 3)}) \leq 4B^2 2^{-(l+2\lceil \log_2 B \rceil + 2)} \leq 2^{-l}.$$

Hence we obtain by Theorem 3.10 that

$$\forall l, g \exists m \leq M'(l+1, g^M, K, B) \forall i, j \in [m; m+g(m)] \left(\|A_i - A_j\| \leq 2^{-l} \right),$$

with

$$A_n := \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n X_i.$$

Finally, the claim follows from $X_i = T^i x$. □

Remark 3.12. Since the operator T is bounded by α_1 (it follows from (33) that $\forall x \in S \|Tx\| \leq \alpha_1 \|x\|$), we can easily compute a B' from two natural numbers a and b satisfying $a \geq \alpha_1$ and $b \geq \|x\|$. Therefore we can actually compute an $M''(l, g, K, a, b)$ s.t.

$$\forall l \in \mathbb{N}, g : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N} \exists m \leq M''(l, g, K, a, b) \forall i, j \in [m; m+g(m)] \left(\|A_i x - A_j x\| \leq 2^{-l} \right).$$

The following corollary follows immediately from Corollary 3.11.

Corollary 3.13 (Finitary version of Theorem 2.1 in [159]). *Let S be a subset of a Hilbert space and $T : S \rightarrow S$ be a mapping satisfying*

$$\forall x, y \in S \quad (\|Tx + Ty\| \leq \|x + y\|).$$

Then for any $x \in S$ and any natural number $b \geq \|x\|$ the sequence of the Cesàro means $A_n x := \frac{1}{n+1} \sum_{i=0}^n T^i x$ is norm convergent and the following holds:

$$\forall l \in \mathbb{N}, g : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N} \exists m \leq M(l, g^M, b) \forall i, j \in [m; m + g(m)] \quad (\|A_i x - A_j x\| \leq 2^{-l}),$$

with M defined as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} M(l, g, b) &:= (N(2l + 7, g, b) + P(2l + 7, g, b))b2^{2l+8} + 1, \\ P(l, g, b) &:= P_0(l, F(l, g, N(l, g, b), b), b), \\ F(l, g, n, b)(p) &:= p + n + \tilde{g}((n + p)b2^{l+1}), \quad F(l, g, n, b) : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}, \\ H(l, g, b)(n) &:= n + P_0(l, F(l, g, n, b)) + \tilde{g}((n + P_0(l, F(l, g, n, b)))b2^{l+1}), \quad H(l, g, b) : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}, \end{aligned}$$

where $P_0(l, f, b) := \tilde{f}b^{2^{2l}}(0)$, $\tilde{f}(n) := n + f(n)$ and, in this corollary, $f^M(n) := \max_{i \leq n+1} f(i)$.

Note that (due to Lemma 3.17) the bound for m depends only on b , a bound for the norm of the parameter x , and not directly on the starting point itself.

3.5 Proof of Proposition 3.8

From now on, we assume that the assumptions of Proposition 3.8 hold and use the terms as they are defined in that proposition. Moreover, we will sometimes omit obvious dependency on trivial arguments, mainly the parameters K and B . As a first step towards the proof, we define a specific primitive recursive 2^{-l} approximation of the square of the norm of the smallest convex combination of X_n, X_{n+1}, \dots, X_p .

Remark 3.14. Note that while it is convenient to represent convex combinations of a fixed set of elements via finite tuples of rational numbers, not every tuple of rational numbers corresponds to such a convex combination. Moreover, we need a formal way to produce convex combinations of arbitrary length. Therefore we introduce for any tuple of rational numbers \underline{s} a function $\tilde{s} : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ which does have these properties and if \underline{s} did correspond to a valid convex combination of desired length the result remains unchanged. Of course, it is not important to define \tilde{s} in a specific way (or at all).

Definition 3.15 (C). Let

$$C'(\underline{s}, l, n, p, X) := \left\| \sum_{i=0}^p \tilde{s}(i) X_{n+i} \right\|^2$$

and

$$C(l, n, p) := C(l, n, p, X) := \min_{\underline{s} \in S_{p,l}} \{C'(\underline{s}, l, n, p, X)\},$$

where

$$S_{p,l} := \left\{ (s_0, \dots, s_p) \mid \sum_{i=0}^p s_i = 1 \wedge \forall i \in [0; p] \exists k_i \leq \left\lceil \frac{pB^2}{2^{-(l+1)}} \right\rceil \left(s_i = k_i \frac{2^{-(l+1)}}{pB^2} \right) \right\},$$

$$\widetilde{s_0, \dots, s_m}(n) := \begin{cases} s_n & \text{if } n < m \wedge 0 \leq s_n \wedge s_n + \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} \tilde{s}(i) \leq 1, \\ 0 & \text{if } n < m \wedge \neg(0 \leq s_n \wedge s_n + \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} \tilde{s}(i) \leq 1), \\ s_m & \text{if } n = m \wedge 0 \leq s_m \wedge s_m + \sum_{i=0}^{m-1} \tilde{s}(i) = 1, \\ 1 - \sum_{i=0}^{m-1} \tilde{s}(i) & \text{if } n = m \wedge \neg(0 \leq s_m \wedge s_m + \sum_{i=0}^{m-1} \tilde{s}(i) = 1), \\ 0 & \text{else.} \end{cases}$$

Lemma 3.16 (C approximates the smallest convex combination). *For any tuple of rational numbers \underline{s} we have that*

$$\forall l, n, p, X \left(C'(\underline{s}, l, n, p) + 2^{-l} \geq C(l, n, p) \right).$$

Proof. Given \underline{s} choose $\underline{s}' \in S_{p,l}$ s.t. $|s'_i - \tilde{s}(i)| \leq \frac{2^{-(l+1)}}{pB^2}$ for all $i \in [0; p]$. Then we have that

$$\left\| \sum_{i=0}^p \tilde{s}(i) X_{n+i} - \sum_{i=0}^p s'_i X_{n+i} \right\| = \left\| \sum_{i=0}^p (\tilde{s}(i) - s'_i) X_{n+i} \right\| \leq \frac{2^{-(l+1)}}{pB^2} pB = \frac{2^{-(l+1)}}{B},$$

and therefore also that $\left\| \sum_{i=0}^p \tilde{s}(i) X_{n+i} \right\| - \left\| \sum_{i=0}^p s'_i X_{n+i} \right\| \leq \frac{2^{-(l+1)}}{B}$, so finally we get that

$$\left| \left\| \sum_{i=0}^p \tilde{s}(i) X_{n+i} \right\|^2 - \left\| \sum_{i=0}^p s'_i X_{n+i} \right\|^2 \right| \leq \frac{2^{-(l+1)}}{B} \left(B + \frac{2^{-(l+1)}}{B} \right) \leq 2^{-l}.$$

□

We will also use that M majorizes itself (in the sense of Howard [61], see also [88]) and that N_0 and P_0 are the right witnesses for the two main assumptions needed in Wittmann's proof.

Lemma 3.17 (M is a majorant). *Each of the terms M, P, N, M_0, P_0, N_0 majorizes itself. In particular we have:*

$$\forall l \in \mathbb{N}, l' \geq l \forall h', h : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N} (\forall n (h(n) \geq h'(n)) \rightarrow N_0(l', h^M) \geq N_0(l, h'))$$

and

$$\forall l \in \mathbb{N}, g : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N} \forall n \leq N(l, g^M) \forall p \leq P(l, g^M) \\ (P(l, g^M) \geq P_0(l, F(l, g^M, n)) \wedge M(l, g^M) \geq M_0(l, n, p)).$$

Lemma 3.18 (N_0 is correct).

$$\forall l \in \mathbb{N}, h : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N} \exists n \leq N_0(l, h) \forall i, j \in [n; n + h(n)] (\|X_i\|^2 - \|X_j\|^2 \leq 2^{-l}).$$

Proof. W.l.o.g assume that $K = K^M$. The sequence $\|X_i\|^2$ is bounded by 0 and B^2 hence we can apply analogous version of Proposition ?? (actually the proof becomes even simpler, see [88], Proposition 2.26) to obtain that (recall that $P_0(l, u) = \tilde{u}^{B^2 2^l}(0)$):

$$\forall l, u \exists r \leq P_0(l, u) \forall i \leq u(r) \quad (\|X_i\|^2 + 2^{-l} \geq \|X_r\|^2). \quad (\text{R})$$

Note that $N_0(l, h) = P_0(l+1, u) + K(l+1) \geq P_0(l, u)$ with $u(n) := n + K(l+1) + h^M(n + K(l+1))$ so this implies that

$$\forall l, h \exists n \leq N_0(l, h) \quad \left(\left| \|X_{n+h(n)}\|^2 - \|X_n\|^2 \right| \leq 2^{-l} \right), \quad (\text{N0})$$

since the following holds (here $N'_0(l, h, r) = r + K(l+1)$):

$$\begin{aligned} \forall l, h \exists r \leq P_0(l+1, u) \quad & (\|X_{N'_0(l, h, r)+h(N'_0(l, h, r))}\|^2 \leq \|X_r\|^2 + 2^{-l-1} \wedge \\ & \|X_{N'_0(l, h, r)+h(N'_0(l, h, r))}\|^2 + 2^{-l-1} \geq \|X_r\|^2). \end{aligned}$$

The second inequality follows from (R) (for u as above) since

$$u(r) = r + K(l+1) + h^M(r + K(l+1)) \geq N'_0(l, h, r) + h(N'_0(l, h, r)).$$

The first inequality follows from

$$\begin{aligned} \|X_{N'_0(l, h, r)+h(N'_0(l, h, r))}\|^2 &= \|X_{r+K(l+1)+h(N'_0(l, h, r))}\|^2 \\ &\leq \|X_r\|^2 + \frac{\delta_{K(l+1)+h(N'_0(l, h, r))}}{4} \leq \|X_r\|^2 + 2^{-l-1}. \end{aligned}$$

Note that for all $r \leq P_0(l, u)$ we have that $N'_0(l, h, r) \leq N'_0(l, h, P_0(l, u)) \leq N_0(l, h)$. Finally, given any h in the claim, we can define

$$h'(n) := \min \left\{ i \in [0; h(n)] \mid \forall j \in [0; h(n)] \left(\left| \|X_{n+i}\|^2 - \|X_n\|^2 \right| \geq \left| \|X_{n+j}\|^2 - \|X_n\|^2 \right| \right) \right\}.$$

Now the claim follows from (N0) applied to h' , the triangle inequality and the fact that we actually prove not only that $\|X_i\|^2 - \|X_j\|^2 \leq 2^{-l}$ but also $\left| \|X_i\|^2 - \|X_j\|^2 \right| \leq 2^{-l}$, and $N_0(l, h') \leq N_0(l, h^M)$, which follows from lemma 3.17 (we discuss a similar argument in the proof of Theorem 3.10 in more detail). \square

Lemma 3.19 (P_0 is correct).

$$\forall l, n \in \mathbb{N} \forall f : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N} \exists p \leq P_0(l, f, B) \quad (C(l, n, p) \leq C(l, n, f(p)) + 2^{-l}).$$

Proof. Fix an n and l arbitrarily. The sequence (a_i) defined by $a_i := C(l, n, i)$ is monotone, since for $i < j$ we have $\forall \underline{s} \in S_{i,l} \exists \underline{s}' \in S_{j,l} \underline{s} = \underline{s}'$ and therefore also $C(l, n, i) \geq C(l, n, j)$. Moreover (a_i) is a sequence in $[0, B^2]$, since $0 \leq C(l, n, i) \leq \|X_n\|^2 \leq B^2$ (note that $B \geq 1$) for any i . Hence by Proposition ?? we get

$$\forall k \in \mathbb{N}, g \in \mathbb{N}^{\mathbb{N}} \exists n \leq \tilde{g}^{B^2 \cdot 2^k}(0) \forall i, j \in [n; n + g(n)] \quad (|a_i - a_j| < 2^{-k}),$$

which holds in particular also for $g = f$ and $k = l$ which implies that $P_0(l, f, B) = \tilde{f}^{B^2 2^l}(0) = \tilde{g}^{B^2 \cdot 2^k}(0)$. \square

Next three lemmas give a quantitative analysis of the original proof in [159]. By l and g we always denote a natural number and a function $\mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ respectively.

Lemma 3.20 (The scalar product increase is bounded). *For any l and any g , consider $h : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$, $h := H(l, g^M)$. Let n be a witness for Lemma 3.18, i.e.*

$$n \leq N(l, h) \wedge \forall i, j \in [n; n + h(n)] \ (i \leq j \rightarrow \|X_i\|^2 - \|X_j\|^2 \leq 2^{-l-1}). \quad (\text{N})$$

Moreover let $f := F(l, g^M, n)$, p be a number smaller than $P_0(l, f)$ and $m := M_0(l, n, p)$. Then we have that

$$\langle X_{a+k}, X_{b+k} \rangle \leq \langle X_a, X_b \rangle + 2^{-l}$$

holds for all k, a, b s.t. $K^M(l) \leq k \leq K^M(l) + m + g^M(m)$ and $n \leq a, b \leq n + p$.

Proof. We have

$$\|X_{a+k} + X_{b+k}\|^2 \leq \|X_a + X_b\|^2 + 2^{-l} \quad (1)$$

since $k \geq K(l)$. Moreover we can infer

$$\|X_{a+k}\|^2 \geq \|X_a\|^2 - 2^{-l-1} \wedge \|X_{b+k}\|^2 \geq \|X_b\|^2 - 2^{-l-1} \quad (2)$$

from (N), $a \geq n, b \geq n$, and

$$\begin{aligned} a + k, b + k &\leq n + p + m + g^M(m) + K(l) \\ &= n + p + M_0(l, n, p) + g^M(M_0(l, n, p)) + K(l) \\ &\leq n + H(l, g^M)(n) = n + h(n). \end{aligned}$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} \langle X_{a+k}, X_{b+k} \rangle &= \frac{1}{2} (\|X_{a+k} + X_{b+k}\|^2 - \|X_{a+k}\|^2 - \|X_{b+k}\|^2) \\ &\leq \frac{1}{2} (\|X_a + X_b\|^2 + 2^{-l} - \|X_a\|^2 + 2^{-l-1} - \|X_b\|^2 + 2^{-l-1}) \\ &= \langle X_a, X_b \rangle + 2^{-l}. \end{aligned}$$

□

Analogously to Wittmann [159] we define

Definition 3.21 (Z). $Z(l, n, p, m) := \frac{1}{m+1} \sum_{k=K^M(l)}^{K^M(l)+m} \sum_{i=0}^p \tilde{S}_i X_{n+k+i}$, with \underline{s} corresponding to the tuple in the definition of $C(l, n, p)$ (see Definition 3.15 above).

Lemma 3.22 (Zs are close). *For any l and any g , consider $h := H(l, g^M)$. Let n be a witness for Lemma 3.18, i.e.*

$$n \leq N(l, g^M) \wedge \forall i, j \in [n; n + h(n)] \ (i \leq j \rightarrow \|X_i\|^2 - \|X_j\|^2 \leq 2^{-l-1}). \quad (\text{N})$$

Moreover, let $m := M_0(l, n, p)$, $f := F(l, g^M, n)$ and p be a witness for Lemma 3.19, i.e.

$$p \leq P_0(l, f) \wedge (C(l, n, p) \leq C(l, n, f(p)) + 2^{-l}), \quad (\text{P})$$

Then we have that $\|Z(l, n, p, m) - Z(l, n, p, m + g^M(m))\|^2 \leq 2^{-l+4}$.

Proof. Firstly, we will show that

$$\left\| \frac{1}{2} (Z(l, n, p, m) + Z(l, n, p, m + g(m))) \right\|^2 + 2^{-l+1} \geq C(l, n, p). \quad (1)$$

Since $\frac{1}{2} (Z(l, n, p, m) + Z(l, n, p, m + g(m)))$ is a convex combination of

$$X_{n+K(l)}, \dots, X_{n+K(l)+p+m+g(m)},$$

we obtain by Lemma 3.16 that

$$\left\| \frac{1}{2} (Z(l, n, p, m) + Z(l, n, p, m + g(m))) \right\|^2 + 2^{-l} \geq C(l, n, n + K(l) + p + m + g^M(m)).$$

Now, because of

$$\begin{aligned} f(p) &= p + n + K(l) + M_0(l, n, p) + g^M(M_0(l, n, p)) \\ &= n + K(l) + p + m + g^M(m), \end{aligned}$$

it follows from (P) that

$$C(l, n, n + K(l) + p + m + g^M(m)) \geq C(l, n, p) - 2^{-l},$$

which concludes the proof of (1). Secondly, we will show that

$$\forall o \leq m + g(m) \quad (\|Z(l, n, p, o)\|^2 \leq C(l, n, p) + 2^{-l}). \quad (2)$$

Let \underline{s} be the tuple corresponding to the tuple in the definition of $C(l, n, p)$ (note that $\underline{\tilde{s}} = \underline{s}$). By Lemma 3.20 we have

$$\begin{aligned} \left\| \sum_{i=0}^p s_i X_{n+k+i} \right\|^2 &= \sum_{i,j=0}^p s_i s_j \langle X_{n+k+i}, X_{n+k+j} \rangle \\ &\leq \sum_{i,j=0}^p s_i s_j \langle X_{n+i}, X_{n+j} \rangle + \sum_{i,j=0}^p s_i s_j 2^{-l} = \left\| \sum_{i=0}^p s_i X_{n+i} \right\|^2 + 2^{-l}, \end{aligned}$$

for all $K(l) \leq k \leq K(l) + m + g^M(m)$, since $n \leq n + i, n + j \leq n + p$. Together with the convexity of the square function (and the definition of Z) this implies (2).

Finally, the claim follows from (1) and (2) by the parallelogram identity:

$$\begin{aligned} \|Z(l, n, p, m) - Z(l, n, p, \tilde{g}(m))\|^2 &= \\ &= 2\|Z(l, n, p, m)\|^2 + 2\|Z(l, n, p, \tilde{g}(m))\|^2 - \|Z(l, n, p, m) + Z(l, n, p, \tilde{g}(m))\|^2 \\ &\leq 4(C(l, n, p) + 2^{-l}) - 4(C(l, n, p) - 2^{-l+1}) = 2^{-l+2} + 2^{-l+3} \leq 2^{-l+4}. \end{aligned}$$

□

Lemma 3.23 (Zs and As are close). *For any l and any g , consider $h := H(l, g^M)$. Let n be a witness for Lemma 3.18, i.e.*

$$n \leq N(l, g^M) \wedge \forall i, j \in [n; n + h(n)] \quad (i \leq j \rightarrow \|X_i\|^2 - \|X_j\|^2 \leq 2^{-l-1}). \quad (N)$$

Moreover let $f := F(l, g^M, n)$, p be a witness for Lemma 3.19, i.e.

$$p \leq P_0(l, f) \wedge (C(l, n, p) \leq C(l, n, f(p)) + 2^{-l}), \quad (\text{P})$$

and $m := M_0(l, n, p)$, $m' := m + g(m)$. Then we have that

$$\|A_{m+1} - Z(l, n, p, m)\| \leq \frac{1}{m+1} (2n + 2p + 2K(l))B + 2^{-l}$$

and

$$\|A_{m'+1} - Z(l, n, p, m')\| \leq \frac{1}{m'+1} (2n + 2p + 2K(l))B + 2^{-l}.$$

Proof. From the definition of Z we see that (note that $m, m' \geq p$):

$$(m+1)Z(l, n, p, m) - \sum_{i=n+p+K(l)}^{n+K(l)+m} X_i = \sum_{i=0}^{p-1} t_i X_{n+K(l)+i} + \sum_{i=l}^p r_i X_{n+K(l)+m+i},$$

for suitable \underline{t} and \underline{r} with $0 \leq t_i, r_i \leq 1$. Hence (note that $m, m' \geq K(l) + n + p$)

$$\begin{aligned} (m+1)\|Z(l, n, p, m) - A_{m+1}\| &= \left\| \sum_{k=K(l)}^{K(l)+m} \sum_{i=0}^p \tilde{s}_i X_{n+k+i} - \sum_{i=1}^{m+1} X_i \right\| \\ &= \left\| \sum_{i=0}^{p-1} t_i X_{n+K(l)+i} + \sum_{i=1}^p r_i X_{n+K(l)+m+i} + \sum_{i=n+p+K(l)}^{n+K(l)+m} X_i - \sum_{i=1}^{m+1} X_i \right\| \\ &= \left\| \sum_{i=0}^{p-1} t_i X_{n+K(l)+i} + \sum_{i=1}^p r_i X_{n+K(l)+m+i} + \sum_{i=m+2}^{n+K(l)+m} X_i - \sum_{i=1}^{n+p+K(l)-1} X_i \right\| \\ &\leq \left\| \sum_{i=0}^{p-1} t_i X_{n+K(l)+i} - \sum_{i=1}^{n+p+K(l)-1} X_i \right\| + \left\| \sum_{i=1}^p r_i X_{n+K(l)+m+i} \right\| + \left\| \sum_{i=m+2}^{n+K(l)+m} X_i \right\| \\ &\leq (n + p + K(l) - 1)B + pB + (n + K(l) - 1)B \leq (2n + 2p + 2K(l))B. \end{aligned}$$

Obviously, same holds for m' . □

Now, Proposition 3.8 can be proved as follows.

Proof of Proposition 3.8. Fix arbitrary l and g . Set $h := H(l, g^M)$. By Lemma 3.18 we know there is an n s.t.

$$n \leq N(l, g^M) \wedge \forall i, j \in [n; n + h(n)] \ (i \leq j \rightarrow \|X_i\|^2 - \|X_j\|^2 \leq 2^{-l-1}).$$

Let $f := F(l, g^M, n)$. By Lemma 3.19 we know that there is a p s.t.

$$p \leq P_0(l, f) \wedge (C(l, n, p) \leq C(l, n, f(p)) + 2^{-l}).$$

Note that by Lemma 3.17 we have that $p \leq P(l, g^M)$. We set $m := M_0(l, n, p)$. By Lemma 3.17 we get that $m \leq M(l, g^M)$. Finally, it follows from lemmas 3.22 and 3.23

that

$$\begin{aligned}
\|A_{m+1} - A_{m+g(m)+1}\| &\leq \|Z(l, n, p, m) - Z(l, n, p, m + g(m))\| \\
&\quad + 2\left(\frac{1}{m+1}(2n + 2p + 2K(l))B + 2^{-l}\right) \\
&\leq \sqrt{2^{-l+4}} + 2^{-l+1} + \frac{2(2n + 2p + 2K(l))B}{m+1} \\
&= \sqrt{2^{-l+4}} + 2^{-l+1} + \frac{2(2n + 2p + 2K(l))B}{(2n + 2p + 2K(l))B2^l + 1} \\
&< \sqrt{2^{-l+4}} + 2^{-l+1} + 2^{-l+1} \leq 2^{-\frac{l}{2}+3}.
\end{aligned}$$

This proves

$$\forall l, g \exists m \leq M(l, g^M) \left(\|A_{m+1} - A_{m+g(m)+1}\| \leq 2^{-\frac{l}{2}+3} \right),$$

from which the claim follows immediately by the definition of M' . \square

Interpreting Bolzano-Weierstraß

The paper ... presents a direct computational interpretation of the Bolzano-Weierstrass principle (BW), via a combination of the negative translation and Gödel's dialectica interpretation (in the form of Shoenfield's interpretation). It is known in reverse mathematics that BW is equivalent to arithmetical comprehension. The goal of the paper is to find the precise complexity of the functional needed for the interpretation, in particular, when limited induction is available and a single instance of the BW principle is used ...

By naively looking at the proof of BW, one might think that Π_2^0 comprehension is needed even when a single instance of BW is used in a proof. The clever analysis in the paper shows that in fact all one needs is Σ_1^0 comprehension plus weak König's lemma (and WKL can be easily dealt with via the monotone interpretation). In fact, the authors work essentially directly with Σ_1^0 -WKL ...

The authors show that a single instance of BW ... raises the complexity of the realiser by one ... The fact that this jump is optimal is argued ... This exploits the connection between BW and arithmetical comprehension, and standard results of Parson's on the complexity of induction for Σ_n^0 formulas. The monotone functional interpretation of (a single instance of) BW is also considered, resulting in much simpler realisers ...

– anonymous referee about [136], Nov 23, 2009.

Motivation

In the context of proof minning, so far, sequential compactness could be dealt with using an elimination procedure due to U. Kohlenbach ([?, 79, 77, 82]) which replaces (if the underlying context is elementary enough) applications of fixed instances of these principles by their arithmetical counterparts. However, more substantial applications (e.g. in the context of weak compactness arguments) require solving their functional interpretation explicitly (see [71, ?]). In this section, we provide an explicit solution of the (negative translation of the) Gödel functional interpretation as well as the monotone functional interpretation of the Bolzano-Weierstraß theorem BW for $[0, 1]$ and other compact metric spaces. Moreover, we show that the given solution is of optimal complexity and we will use it to obtain optimal program and bound extraction theorems for proofs based on BW applied to fixed bounded sequences in $[0, 1]$ given by a term whose only free variables are the parameters of the theorem to be proved.

As is known from reverse mathematics ([144]) **BW** for compact metric spaces can be proved using \mathbf{CA}_{ar} and – already for $[0, 1]$ – also implies \mathbf{CA}_{ar} . This is independent of whether **BW** is stated to assert the existence of a cluster point or a convergent subsequence. Moreover, these results can be proved relative to a very weak base system \mathbf{RCA}_0 . In fact, already the special case of **BW** stating that every monotone sequence in $[0, 1]$ is convergent implies \mathbf{CA}_{ar} (much refined results in this direction can be found in [82]).

It follows from Spector’s solution of the functional interpretation of classical analysis by his bar recursive functionals $\mathcal{T} + (\mathbf{BR})$ ([146]) that the functional interpretation of \mathbf{CA}_{ar} and hence of **BW** can be solved in the fragment $\mathcal{T}_0 + \mathbf{BR}_{0,1}$, where only the primitive recursor \mathbf{R}_0 for type 0 and the bar recursor $\mathbf{B}_{0,1}$ for the types 0, 1 are used (see [81]). However, for a faithful calibration of the contribution of (single instances of) **BW** and the extraction of realizers of optimal complexity level from proofs of \forall, \exists -statements based on uses of **BW** even a functional interpretation in $\mathcal{T}_0 + \mathbf{BR}_{0,1}$ is too crude. It is crucial to note that the solution of the functional interpretation of **BW** uses only minimal number of nested simple $\mathbf{B}_{0,1}$ -applications. In fact, we will see that a single use of $\mathbf{B}_{0,1}$ plus a use of a weak ‘binary’ form of bar recursion (due to Howard) suffices. Together with results of Howard and Parson this can be used to show that over systems such as

$$\widehat{\mathbf{WE-PA}}^\omega \vdash +\mathbf{QF-AC} + \Sigma_{n+1}^0\text{-IA}$$

(which has a functional interpretation in \mathcal{T}_n , see [129]) the contribution of a use of **BW** in the form

$$\forall n (\mathbf{BW}(\zeta(n)) \rightarrow \exists m \varphi_{\mathbf{QF}}(n, m))$$

in a proof of a sentence

$$\forall n \exists m \varphi_{\mathbf{QF}}(n, m) \text{ (with quantifier-free } \varphi_{\mathbf{QF}})$$

at most increases the complexity of the extractable algorithm f s.t.

$$\forall n \varphi_{\mathbf{QF}}(n, f(n))$$

from $f \in T_n$ to $f \in T_{n+1}$.

We will also show that this increase in general is necessary, thereby establishing the optimality of our result.

So far the aforementioned elimination method (see [77, 82]) has not been developed for systems based on \mathcal{T}_0 -functionals and stronger ones as above. At the same time, the approach in the present section does not seem to be fine enough to re-obtain the results based on the elimination method for systems containing only Kalmar elementary functionals.

The functional dramatically simplifies if we switch to a majorizing functional in the sense of W.A. Howard (and hence to a solution of the monotone functional interpretation of **BW**). In particular, the use of Howard’s ‘binary’ bar recursion then disappears altogether.

In [?], U. Kohlenbach has argued that the solutions provided by monotone functional interpretation of principles P directly correspond to the ‘finitary’ versions of P as discussed in Tao’s program of ‘finitary analysis’ (see [151]). Following [151], the discussion in [?] focuses on the monotone convergence principle **PCM** and the infinitary pigeon-hole principle **IPP**:

$$\mathbf{IPP} \quad : \quad \forall n \in \mathbb{N} \forall f : \mathbb{N} \mapsto \{0, \dots, n\} \exists i \leq n \forall k \in \mathbb{N} \exists m \geq k (f(m) = i).$$

Already for IPP, it is nontrivial to arrive at a ‘correct’ finitization (see [39] for a thorough discussion). However, IPP is just a special case of BW for the discrete spaces $\{0, 1, 2, \dots, n\}$. Hence we take one more step towards investigating the role of functional interpretations in connection with the program of finitizing analytical principles.

In this section we also treat the Bolzano-Weierstraß principle for the compact (w.r.t. the product metric) metric space $\prod_{i \in \mathbb{N}} [-k_i, k_i]$ (for sequences (k_i) in \mathbb{R}_+) whose functional interpretation has the same complexity as the one for the case $[0, 1]$. This is of relevance for the logical analysis of proofs that use the weak compactness of closed, bounded convex sets in Hilbert spaces which can be reduced to the sequential compactness of $\prod_{i \in \mathbb{N}} [-k_i, k_i]$ (see [71, ?]). Though certain uses of weak compactness in strong convergence results can be eliminated, in general it is unavoidable to deal with quantitative forms of weak compactness as provided by functional interpretation (see [?] as well as [?] for discussions).

For simplicity, let us come back to the case of $[0, 1]$ and the Bolzano-Weierstraß theorem in the form stating that every sequence (x_n) of rational numbers in $[0, 1]$ has a cluster point. In order to obtain a solution of the functional interpretation of optimal complexity one has to start with an appropriate proof of this statement: one standard way is to select one of the subintervals $[0, \frac{1}{2}]$, $[\frac{1}{2}, 1]$ that contains infinitely many elements of the sequence (x_n) (by IPP at least one of the two intervals has this property) and then to continue with that interval. In this way one gets a nested sequence $I_0 \supset I_1 \supset I_2, \dots$ of intervals I_k of length 2^{-k} that converges to a cluster point. In order to decide whether an interval I_k contains infinitely many elements of (x_n) one needs Π_2^0 -comprehension since

$$\forall m \exists n \geq m (x_n \in I_k) \in \Pi_2^0.$$

However, in order to get the existence of just **some** sequence $I_0 \supset I_1 \supset I_2, \dots$ of intervals I_n with the above property (rather than deciding this property which would be necessary only for finding – say – a left-most sequence, i.e. for constructing the limit inferior of (x_n) which indeed is of strictly greater complexity, see [82]) one can use König’s lemma for 0/1-trees. Note though, that this is not a use of what is called weak König’s lemma (WKL) in reverse mathematics (see [144]) since the tree predicate is not quantifier-free but is Π_2^0 (and so, in fact, is an instance of what we call Π_2^0 -WKL). Nevertheless, using a single instance of Σ_1^0 -comprehension (short: Σ_1^0 -CA) one can reduce such a Π_2^0 -formula to a Π_1^0 -tree predicate (by absorbing the inner existential quantifier). Now WKL for Π_1^0 -trees (i.e. Π_1^0 -WKL) can easily be reduced to the usual WKL. In this way the use of Π_2^0 -comprehension is replaced by a use of Σ_1^0 -CA plus the use of WKL, where the latter is known not to contribute to the complexity of extractable bounds. In fact, rather than first reducing Π_2^0 -WKL using Σ_1^0 -CA to Π_1^0 -WKL and subsequently to WKL, we work directly with Σ_1^0 -WKL and reduce this via Σ_1^0 -CA in one step to WKL. The functional interpretation of BW, therefore, essentially boils down to solving the functional interpretation of Σ_1^0 -WKL.

4.1 Interpreting Bolzano-Weierstraß

In this section we will use bar recursion to interpret the Bolzano-Weierstraß theorem.

Definition 4.1. The Bolzano-Weierstraß Principle

Let x be a sequence in $\mathbb{P} := \prod_{i \in \mathbb{N}} [-k_i, k_i]$ for a known sequence $(k_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ with k_i in \mathbb{Q}^+ .

Let d^ω denote the standard product metric (as defined e.g. in [144]):

$$d^\omega(a, b) := \mathbb{R} \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2^i} \frac{|a_i - b_i|}{1 + |a_i - b_i|}, \text{ for } a, b \in \mathbb{P}.$$

In the following we tacitly rely on our representation of real numbers by which sequences of real numbers are represented by objects $a^{1(0)}$ and sequences of sequences of real numbers by objects $x^{1(0)(0)}$ (and each such object is a representative of a unique such sequence). We define

$$\text{BW}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\omega} : \quad \forall x^{1(0)(0)} \in \mathbb{P}^{\mathbb{N}} \underbrace{\exists a^{10} \in \mathbb{P} \quad \forall k^0 \exists l^0 \geq_0 k \quad d^\omega(xl, a) \leq_{\mathbb{R}} 2^{-k}}_{\equiv: \text{BW}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\omega}(x^{1(0)(0)})},$$

where by $x \in \mathbb{P}^{\mathbb{N}}$ we mean a sequence of elements of \mathbb{P} – i.e. a sequence (x) of sequences $(xn \in \mathbb{P}, n \in \mathbb{N})$ of real numbers in the corresponding intervals $((xn)i \in [-k_i, k_i], i \in \mathbb{N})$.²³

A Simple Proof of BW based on Σ_1^0 -WKL

To demonstrate the main idea of the proof we only treat $\text{BW}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\omega}$ for sequences of rational numbers in the unit interval $[0, 1]$ – denoted by $\text{BW}_{\mathbb{Q}}$ – which obviously is implied by (and in fact equivalent to)

$$\text{BW}'_{\mathbb{Q}} : \quad \forall s^1 \underbrace{\exists a^1 \forall k^0 \exists l^0 \geq_0 k \quad |\widetilde{a}(k+1) -_{\mathbb{Q}} \widetilde{s}l| \leq_{\mathbb{Q}} \langle 2^{-(k+1)} \rangle}_{\equiv: \text{BW}'_{\mathbb{Q}}(s^1)},$$

where $\tilde{n} := \min_{\mathbb{Q}} \{ \langle 1 \rangle, \max_{\mathbb{Q}} \{ \langle 0 \rangle, n \} \}$. Consider a tree representation of the unit interval $[0, 1]$ which splits the unit interval at level n into 2^n intervals of length 2^{-n} . Note that we can define each node via the path from the root to this interval. This path can be represented by a binary sequence b , where the n -th element defines which branch to take.

We define a predicate $I(b^0, n^0, m^0)$, which tells us, whether the rational number r encoded by $m = \langle r \rangle$ belongs to an interval defined by such a finite binary sequence b of length $\geq n$, i.e. in an interval of length 2^{-n} given by b :

$$\begin{aligned} I(b^0, n^0, m^0) &: \equiv \quad n \leq_0 \text{lh}(b) \wedge \left\langle \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{b_i}{2^i} \right\rangle \leq_{\mathbb{Q}} m \leq_{\mathbb{Q}} \left\langle \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{b_i}{2^i} + \frac{1}{2^n} \right\rangle \\ &\Leftrightarrow \quad n \leq \text{lh}(b) \wedge \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{b_i}{2^i} \leq r \leq \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{b_i}{2^i} + \frac{1}{2^n}. \end{aligned}$$

We know that for a given finite binary sequence b and an infinite sequence of encodings of rational numbers s , there is a function $f_s^{1(0)}$, primitive recursive in b and s , such that:

$$f_s(b, k) =_0 0 \quad \leftrightarrow \quad \left(k > \text{lh}(b) \wedge I(b, \text{lh}(b), \tilde{s}k) \right).$$

²³One can easily construct effective transformations which assign to any x of the type $1(0)(0)$ (or $1(0)$) a unique \tilde{x} in $\mathbb{P}^{\mathbb{N}}$ (or \mathbb{P}), see theorem 4.6.

Now, by $\Sigma_1^0\text{-CA}(f_s)$ we obtain a function g_s , s.t. $\forall b^0 \left(g_s b =_0 0 \leftrightarrow \exists k^0 (f_s(b, k) =_0 0) \right)$. In other words we have for all b^0 :

$$g_s(b) =_0 0 \leftrightarrow \exists k^0 >_0 \text{lh}(b) \ I(b, \text{lh}(b), \tilde{s}k). \quad (+)$$

To show $\text{BinTree}(g_s)$, consider any finite binary sequence b :

$$\begin{aligned} g_s(b) =_0 0 \wedge x \subseteq b &\rightarrow \exists k^0 >_0 \text{lh}(b) \ I(b, \text{lh}(b), \tilde{s}k) \wedge \text{lh}(x) \leq_0 \text{lh}(b) \wedge x \subseteq b \\ &\rightarrow \exists k^0 >_0 \text{lh}(x) \ I(b, \text{lh}(x), \tilde{s}k) \wedge x \subseteq b \\ &\rightarrow \exists k^0 >_0 \text{lh}(x) \ I(x, \text{lh}(x), \tilde{s}k) \rightarrow g_s(x) =_0 0. \end{aligned}$$

To show

$$\forall k \exists x (\text{lh}(x) =_0 k \wedge g_s(x) =_0 0) \quad (++)$$

just consider any given natural number k . By the definition of our tree, it splits the $[0, 1]$ interval at any level, in particular on level k , completely. Therefore, we have: $I(b, \text{lh}(b), \tilde{s}k)$ and $\text{lh}(b) =_0 k$ for a suitable b . As we started with arbitrary k , this implies $(++)$.

Now, we can apply $\text{WKL}(g_s)$ to get:

$$\exists b^1 (\text{BinFunc}(b) \wedge \forall k \ g_s(\bar{b}k) =_0 0). \quad (*)$$

Note that in $(*)$ (and from now on) b^1 is a binary function and g_s takes the encoding of the initial segment, $\langle b(0), \dots, b(k-1) \rangle$, of this infinite sequence as its type 0 argument. Using $(+)$ we can conclude that $(*)$ is equivalent to: $\exists b^1 \leq 1 \ \forall n \ \exists k > n \ I(\bar{b}n, n, \tilde{s}k)$. This means that $\text{BW}'_{\mathbb{Q}}(s)$ is satisfied by \hat{a} where a is defined as:

$$a(n^0) :=_{\mathbb{Q}} \left\langle \sum_{i=1}^{n+1} \frac{b(i-1)}{2^i} + \frac{1}{2^{n+2}} \right\rangle \text{ provided that } \hat{a} =_1 a.$$

It, therefore, remains to show that a represents a real number in the sense of Definition 1.13. W.l.o.g, at this point, we use $r, =, | \cdot |, \dots$ directly instead of the proper syntactic form $\langle r \rangle, =_{\mathbb{Q}}, | \cdot |_{\mathbb{Q}}, \dots$ to achieve better readability. To prove $a =_1 \hat{a} \in \mathbb{R}$, take any natural number n . We have:

$$\begin{aligned} |a(n) - a(n+1)| &= \left| \sum_{i=1}^{n+2} \frac{b(i-1)}{2^i} + \frac{1}{2^{n+3}} - \left(\sum_{i=1}^{n+1} \frac{b(i-1)}{2^i} + \frac{1}{2^{n+2}} \right) \right| \\ &= \left| \frac{b(n+1)}{2^{n+2}} + \frac{1}{2^{n+3}} - \frac{1}{2^{n+2}} \right| = 2^{-(n+3)} < 2^{-(n+1)}, \end{aligned}$$

which concludes the proof.

The only relevant difference for the general case (i.e. for sequences in \mathbb{P}) is the definition of f_s . If we wanted each node i at level n to define a subspace $\mathbb{P}_i^n \subseteq \mathbb{P}$ such that $\exists a_i^n \in \mathbb{P}_i^n \forall b \in \mathbb{P}_i^n d^\omega(a, b) \leq 2^{-n}$, then the number of children couldn't be bounded by a constant.

It turns out that it is simpler to define a representation of \mathbb{P} by a binary tree, where any infinite path defines a single element of \mathbb{P} and provide a function which returns the sufficient level to satisfy the condition above.

We define such a tree as follows. We start by splitting the first dimension into two halves, i.e. the two children represent the spaces $\mathbb{P}_0^1 = [-k_0, 0] \times \prod_{j=1}^{\infty} [-k_j, k_j]$ and

$\mathbb{P}_1^1 = [0, k_0] \times \prod_{j=1}^{\infty} [-k_j, k_j]$. Next two levels arise by first splitting the new intervals in the first dimension and then splitting the second dimension into two halves. At level $\frac{l(l+1)}{2}$ we create the next $l+1$ levels by splitting the new intervals for the first l dimensions and by splitting the original interval for the $(l+1)^{\text{th}}$ dimension. We define formally:

Definition 4.2. Let w be the primitive recursive function representing the number of times we split dimension d up to level n :

$$w(n^0, d^0) := \max_{\mathbb{N}} \{l : l > 0 \wedge 1 + \frac{(d+l)(d+l-1)}{2} + d \leq n \vee l = 0\}.$$

For an encoding of a finite binary sequence $b = \langle b_0, b_1, \dots, b_{n-1} \rangle$ we define

- $D(b^0, d^0) := \langle b_{d(d+1)/2+d}, b_{(d+1)(d+2)/2+d}, \dots, b_{(d+w(n,d)-1)(d+w(n,d))/2+d} \rangle$
(the code for the splittings of dimension d corresponding to the node defined by b
– for $w(n, d) = 0$ we define D to be the empty sequence
– using the Cantor pairing function we could also write $D(b^0, d^0) := \langle b_{\langle i, d \rangle} : i \in \{0, \dots, w(n, d) - 1\} \rangle$,
- $\mathbb{P}_d^b := \begin{cases} [-k_d + \sum_{i=0}^{w(n,d)} \frac{D(b,d)(i)}{2^i} k_d, k_d - \sum_{i=0}^{w(n,d)} \frac{1-D(b,d)(i)}{2^i} k_d] & \text{if } d \leq w(n, 0), \\ [-k_d, k_d] & \text{else.} \end{cases}$
(the partition of the dimension d relevant at the node defined by b),
- $\mathbb{P}^b := \prod_{i=0}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}_i^b$
(the subspace corresponding to the node defined by b).

For a sequence $s \subseteq \mathbb{P}$ we define f_s^1 as follows:

$$f_s(b, k) := \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } k > \text{lh}(b) \wedge \forall i < \text{lh}(b) \ b(i) \leq 1 \wedge \\ & \bigwedge_{i=0}^{w(\text{lh}(b), 0)} (\tilde{s}k)ik \in {}_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{P}_i^b, \\ 1 & \text{else.} \end{cases}$$

From now on our notation refers to this definition.

Lemma 4.3. Define the functions

$$\text{lv}_d^1(n) :=_{\mathbb{N}} 1 + \frac{(\lceil \log_2(k_d(n+2)) \rceil + n + 1)(\lceil \log_2(k_d(n+2)) \rceil + n)}{2} + d,$$

$$\text{lv}(n) :=_{\mathbb{N}} \max_{\mathbb{N}} \{\text{lv}_d(n) : d \leq n + 1\}.$$

Then the following holds for all finite binary sequences b and $n \in \mathbb{N}$:

$$\text{lh}(b) \geq \text{lv}(n) \rightarrow \forall x, y \in \mathbb{P}^b \ (d^w(x, y) \leq 2^{-n}).$$

For the specific x , s.t. x_d is the center of \mathbb{P}_d^b for all dimensions d we have even:

$$A^{\text{BW}}([b]) :=_{1(0)} \lambda d^0, n^0. \left\langle -k_d + \sum_{i=0}^{w(\text{lv}(n), d)-1} \frac{D(\overline{[b]}(\text{lv}(n)), d)(i)}{2^i} k_d + \frac{1}{2^{w(\text{lv}(n), d)}} k_d \right\rangle,$$

$$\text{lh}(b) \geq \text{lv}(n) \rightarrow \forall y \in \mathbb{P}^b \ (d^w(A^{\text{BW}}([b]), y) \leq 2^{-n-1}).$$

Moreover, we have

$$f_s(b, k) = 0 \wedge \text{lh}(b) \geq \text{lv}(n) \rightarrow d^w((\tilde{s}k), A^{\text{BW}}([b])) < 2^{-n}.$$

Proof. W.l.o.g let $l := \text{lh}(b) = \text{lv}(n)$. By definition we have $w(l, d) \geq \lceil \log_2(k_d(n+2)) \rceil + n + 1 - d$. This means $\lceil \log_2(k_d(n+2)) \rceil - w(l, d) \leq d - n - 1$.

So $(n+2)k_d 2^{-w(l, d)} \leq 2^{-n-1+d}$ and $2k_d - \sum_{i=0}^{w(l, d)} 2^{-i} k_d \leq \frac{2^{-n-1+d}}{n+2}$.

By definition of \mathbb{P}_d^b we obtain for all $d \leq n+1$ ($\leq w(l, 0)$): $|\mathbb{P}_d^b| \leq \frac{2^{-n-1+d}}{n+2}$,²⁴ which implies

$$\sum_{d=0}^{n+1} 2^{-d} |\mathbb{P}_d^b| \leq 2^{-n-1} \text{ and } \sum_{d=0}^{\infty} 2^{-d} \frac{|\mathbb{P}_d^b|}{1+|\mathbb{P}_d^b|} \leq 2^{-n}.$$

To show $d^\omega((\tilde{s}k), A^{\text{BW}}([b])) < 2^{-n}$ suppose $\bigwedge_{i=0}^{w(\text{lh}(b), 0)} (\tilde{s}k)ik \in \mathbb{P}_i^b$. This implies there is an $y \in \mathbb{P}^b$ s.t. $\forall d \ |y_d - (\tilde{s}k)_d| \leq 2^{-k}$. Therefore $d^\omega((\tilde{s}k), A^{\text{BW}}([b])) \leq 2^{-n-1} + 2^{-k}$ and since $k > \text{lh}(b) \geq \text{lv}(n) \geq n+2$ also $d^\omega((\tilde{s}k), A^{\text{BW}}([b])) < 2^{-n}$. \square

Furthermore, we need to show the following property of our tree representation of \mathbb{P} .

Lemma 4.4. *At any level $n \in \mathbb{N}$, the union of all spaces corresponding to the paths of length n is the whole space \mathbb{P} :*

$$\bigcup_{b \in \{b^0 : \text{lh}(b) = n \wedge \bigwedge_{i=0}^n b(i) \leq 01\}} \mathbb{P}^b = \mathbb{P}.$$

Proof. Let I_d denote the set of indices within a given, arbitrary long binary sequences b used by D to generate the subsequence $D(b, d)$ ($I_d = \{(d+i)(d+i+1)/2 + d = \langle i, d \rangle : i \in \mathbb{N}\}$). Since the Cantor pairing function is bijective, it follows that for $d_1 \neq d_2$ the intersection $I_{d_1} \cap I_{d_2}$ is empty and we can choose the binary sequences for each dimension independently.

Therefore it suffices to show the following (we scale by $2k_d$ and shift by $\frac{1}{2}$):

$$\forall n \forall x \in [0, 1] \exists b \ (\text{lh}(b) = n \wedge x \in [\sum_{i=1}^n \frac{b(i-1)}{2^i}, 1 - \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{1-b(i-1)}{2^i}]).$$

This holds for any n and x when we choose b as the following binary sequence:

$$b(i) := \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } x \geq \sum_{j=1}^i \frac{b(j-1)}{2^j} + \frac{1}{2^{i+1}}, \\ 0 & \text{else.} \end{cases}$$

\square

Functional Interpretation of $\text{BW}_{\mathbb{R}}^\omega$

From now on we consider s to be an infinite sequence of points in \mathbb{P} , and f_s to be the characteristic function of the corresponding tree (as defined in 4.2 above). From section 1.15, we know that using an appropriate formula ϕ^{WKL} we can write WKL as

$$\forall (h^1) \text{WKL}_\Delta(h) \equiv \forall (h^1) \exists b^1 \forall k \ \phi^{\text{WKL}}(h, b, k) \equiv \forall (h^1) \exists b^1 \forall k \ \widehat{\left(\widehat{h} \right)}_{g(h)}(\bar{b}k) =_0 0,$$

²⁴By $|[a, b]|$, $a, b \in \mathbb{Q}$ we mean the length of the rational interval $[a, b]$.

where φ^{WKL} is quantifier-free.

We introduce the following notations for $\Sigma_1^0\text{-CA}$:

$$\begin{aligned} & \exists g^1 \forall x^0 \varphi_{\Sigma_1^0}^{\text{CA}(f)}(x, gx) \\ & \equiv \exists g^1 \forall x^0 (gx =_0 0 \leftrightarrow \exists z^0 f(x, z) =_0 0) \\ \Leftrightarrow & \exists g^1 \forall x^0 \forall z_2^0 \exists z_1^0 \varphi_{\Sigma_1^0}^{\text{CA}(f)}(x, gx, z_1, z_2) \\ & \equiv \exists g^1 \forall x^0 \forall z_2^0 \exists z_1^0 ((gx =_0 0 \rightarrow f(x, z_1) =_0 0) \wedge (gx =_0 0 \leftarrow f(x, z_2) =_0 0)), \end{aligned}$$

where $\varphi^{\text{CA}(f)}$ is a quantifier-free formula.

The essential step in the proof above is the following implication:

$$(\Sigma_1^0\text{-CA}(f) \wedge \text{WKL}) \rightarrow \left(\exists g, b \forall x, k \left(\varphi_{\Sigma_1^0}^{\text{CA}(f)}(x, gx) \wedge \varphi^{\text{WKL}}(g, b, k) \right) \right), \quad (+)$$

since its conclusion is essentially the same as $\text{WKL}(\psi_f)$, where $\psi_f(k^0) \leftrightarrow \exists n^0 f(k, n) =_0 0$ and k is the variable which is bound by the last for-all quantifier in WKL . Moreover, for f_s as defined above it actually directly implies BW , whereas considered as a schema for arbitrary f^1 it corresponds to $\Sigma_1^0\text{-WKL}$.

The Sh-interpretation of (+) using this representation and applying QF-AC is as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} & \exists G, Z_1, B, H', X', Z_2', K' \forall B', Z_1', G', X, Z_2, K \\ & \left(\left(\varphi^{\text{CA}(f)}(X'(G'X'Z_2')(Z_1'X'Z_2'), G'X'Z_2'(X'(G'X'Z_2')(Z_1'X'Z_2')), Z_1'X'Z_2'(X'(G'X'Z_2')(Z_1'X'Z_2'))(Z_2'(G'X'Z_2')(Z_1'X'Z_2')), \right. \right. \\ & \quad \left. \left. Z_2'(G'X'Z_2')(Z_1'X'Z_2') \right) \wedge \varphi^{\text{WKL}}(H', B'H'K', K'(B'H'K')) \right) \rightarrow \\ & \left(\varphi^{\text{CA}(f)}(XGZ_1B, G(XGZ_1B), Z_1(XGZ_1B)(Z_2GZ_1B), Z_2GZ_1B) \wedge \varphi^{\text{WKL}}(G, B, KGZ_1B) \right) \end{aligned}$$

where, again, each exists-variable (i.e. G, Z_1, B, H', X', Z_2' , and K') may depend on any for-all-variable (i.e. B', Z_1', G', X, Z_2 , and K). E.g. by G we mean in fact $(GB'Z_1'G'XZ_2K)$. This interpretation yields the following functional equations:

$$X'(G'X'Z_2')(Z_1'X'Z_2') = XGZ_1B, \quad H' = G, \quad (1,5)$$

$$G'X'Z_2'(X'(G'X'Z_2')(Z_1'X'Z_2')) = G(XGZ_1B), \quad B'H'K' = B, \quad (2,6)$$

$$Z_1'X'Z_2'(X'(G'X'Z_2')(Z_1'X'Z_2'))(Z_2'(G'X'Z_2')(Z_1'X'Z_2')) = Z_1(XGZ_1B)(Z_2GZ_1B), \quad K'(B'H'K') = KGZ_1B, \quad (3,7)$$

$$Z_2'(G'X'Z_2')(Z_1'X'Z_2') = Z_2GZ_1B. \quad (4)$$

We use a very similar approach to the one used by Gerhardy in [42] to solve such equations for finite DNS. First, we conclude from (5) and (6) that $B = B'GK'$ and from (1) and (2) that $G = G'X'Z_2'$. Using (6), we can set K' to $\lambda b.KGZ_1b$ according to (7). This is not that trivial for X' and Z_2' . However, as pointed out by Gerhardy in [42], in the presence of the λg and λz_1 , which as we know will stand for the input of G and Z_1 , the objects X' and Z_2' become well definable terms:

$$t_{X'} := \lambda g, z_1. Xgz_1(B'g(\lambda b.Kgz_1b)), \quad t_{Z_2'} := \lambda g, z_1. Z_2gz_1(B'g(\lambda b.Kgz_1b)).$$

This makes the rest of our terms we need well defined. This is easy to see since for each term all dependencies are only on the terms defined above:

$$\begin{aligned} t_{Z_1} &:= Z_1't_{X'}t_{Z_2'}, & t_{H'} &:= t_G, \\ t_G &:= G't_{X'}t_{Z_2'}, & t_{K'} &:= \lambda b.Kt_Gt_{Z_1}b, \\ t_B &:= B't_Gt_{K'}. \end{aligned}$$

We have found the realizing terms for the Shoenfield interpretation $(+)^{Sh}$ of $(+)$ for any G' , Z'_1 and B' . To finally obtain the Shoenfield interpretation of $(\Sigma_1^0\text{-WKL}(\varphi))$ we just need to define these three functionals in such a way that the assumptions φ^{WKL} and $\varphi^{\text{CA}(f)}$ are always true.

For $\varphi^{\text{CA}(f)}$, as we know from the functional interpretation of $\Sigma_1^0\text{-CA}$ (see section 1.14), we get:

$$G'^3 = t_h, \quad Z'_1{}^3 = t_z,$$

where t_h and t_z are defined as in the Sh-interpretation of $\Sigma_1^0\text{-CA}$ (see corollary 1.58). For B' , from the interpretation of WKL , we know the following equality holds:

$$\underbrace{\overline{B'H'K'}(K'(B'H'K'))}_{\text{as above}} = \underbrace{\overline{B}(AB)}_{\text{as in section 1.15}}.$$

We use the same notation as we used to define B in section 1.15 and define:

$$B' := \lambda h. \lambda A. [F_h(K_A(\emptyset))],$$

where F_h and K_A are defined as in the Sh-interpretation of WKL (see Theorem 1.79). The terms defined above, using these definitions for G' and B' , then satisfy the Shoenfield interpretation of the conclusion of $(+)$:

$$\forall X, Z_2, K \left(\varphi^{\text{CA}(f)}(Xt_Gt_{Z_1}t_B, t_G(Xt_Gt_{Z_1}t_B), t_{Z_1}(Xt_Gt_{Z_1}t_B)(Z_2t_Gt_{Z_1}t_B), Z_2t_Gt_{Z_1}t_B) \wedge \varphi^{\text{WKL}}(t_G, t_B, Kt_Gt_{Z_1}t_B) \right).$$

Using that $\forall X^{0(10)(1)}, Z^{0(10)(1)}, a^0, b^0 \ t_z XZab =_0 t_z XZa0 = t_Z a 0$ we conclude:

Lemma 4.5.

The principle (which essentially represents²⁵ $\Sigma_1^0\text{-WKL}(\varphi)$):

$$\exists g^1, b^1 \forall x^0, k^0 \left(\varphi_{\Sigma_1^0}^{\text{CA}(f)}(x, gx) \wedge \varphi^{\text{WKL}}(g, b, k) \right),$$

is Sh-interpreted by $(\tau = 01(10)1^{26})$:

$$\forall X^\tau, Z^\tau, K^\tau \left(\varphi^{\text{CA}(f)}(Xt_Gt_Zt_B, t_G(Xt_Gt_Zt_B), t_Z(Xt_Gt_Zt_B)0, Zt_Gt_Zt_B) \wedge \varphi^{\text{WKL}}(t_G, t_B, Kt_Gt_Zt_B) \right),$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} t_B &:=_1 B^{\text{WKL}}(\lambda b. Kt_Gt_Zb, t_G), & t'_X &:=_{0(10)1} \lambda g^1, z^{10}. Xgz(B^{\text{WKL}}(\lambda b. Kgzb, g)), \\ t_Z &:=_{10} t_z t'_X t'_Z, & t'_Z &:=_{0(10)1} \lambda g^1, z^{10}. Zgz(B^{\text{WKL}}(\lambda b. Kgzb, g)), \\ t_G &:=_1 t_h t'_X t'_Z, \end{aligned}$$

The remaining terms are defined as in previous sections.²⁷

²⁵It trivially implies $\Sigma_1^0\text{-WKL}(\varphi)$ (provably in $\widehat{\text{WE-PA}}^\omega$). Let us note, however, that the actual computation of the witnesses for $\Sigma_1^0\text{-WKL}(\varphi)$ still involves some highly non-trivial technical work.

²⁶Or, in a more illustrative notation: $\tau = (\mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}) \rightarrow (\mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}) \rightarrow (\mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}) \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$.

²⁷ B^{WKL} in Theorem 1.79, and t_z, t_h in Theorem 1.58.

Theorem 4.6. *The Bolzano-Weierstraß principle $\text{BW}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\omega}$ for an infinite sequence s of elements in \mathbb{P} (let $\rho = (10)0$ and $\sigma = 0(10)1$, $\widetilde{x^{1(0)}} := \lambda i^0. \min_{\mathbb{R}}(-k_i, \max_{\mathbb{R}}(k_i, xi))$, recall $\mathbb{P} = \prod_{i \in \mathbb{N}} [-k_i, k_i]$):*

$$\forall s^{\rho} \exists a^{1(0)} \forall m^0 \exists l^0 >_0 m \quad d^{\omega}(\widetilde{sl}, \widetilde{a}) <_{\mathbb{R}} 2^{-m}.$$

is Sh-interpreted²⁸ by:

$$\forall s^{\rho}, M^{\sigma} \exists L^1, a^{1(0)} \underbrace{\left(L(MLa) >_0 MLa \wedge d^{\omega}(\widetilde{s(L(MLa))}, \widetilde{a}) <_{\mathbb{R}} 2^{-MLa} \right)}_{\text{BW}_{Sh}(a, MLa, L(MLa), s) :=}$$

where L and a are realized by the terms t_L^3 and t_A^3 (we use the notation from Definition 4.2 and Lemma 4.3):

$$\begin{aligned} t_L(s^{\rho}, M^{\sigma}) &:=_1 \lambda n^0. t_Z(\overline{t_B}(\text{lv}(n)))0, \\ t_A(s^{\rho}, M^{\sigma}) &:=_{1(0)} A^{\text{BW}}(t_B) = \lambda d^0, n^0. \left\langle -k_d + \sum_{i=0}^{w(\text{lv}(n), d)-1} \frac{D(\overline{t_B}(\text{lv}(n)), d)(i)}{2^i} k_d + \frac{1}{2^{w(\text{lv}(n), d)}} k_d \right\rangle, \end{aligned}$$

Here t_B is defined as above, i.e. (B^{WKL} is defined in Theorem 1.79):

$$t_B =_1 B^{\text{WKL}}(M' t_G t_Z, t_G),$$

where as before (with $f := f_s, z^- :=_1 \lambda n. z^{10} n 0, g^+ :=_{10} \lambda a, b. g^1 a$ and $g \upharpoonright_{f_s} := \lambda n. \overleftarrow{f_s}(n, gn)$):

$$\begin{aligned} t_Z &=_{10} \left(\Phi(\lambda g^1. X(g \upharpoonright_{f_s}) g^+ (B^{\text{WKL}}(M'(g \upharpoonright_{f_s}) g^+, g \upharpoonright_{f_s}))) u_{\left(\lambda g^1. Z(g \upharpoonright_{f_s}) g^+ (B^{\text{WKL}}(M'(g \upharpoonright_{f_s}) g^+, g \upharpoonright_{f_s}))) f_s} \right)^{1(0)} \\ t_G &=_1 ((t_Z)^-) \upharpoonright_{f_s}. \end{aligned}$$

Here t_B and t_Z are shortcuts for $t_B X Z M'$ and $t_Z X Z M'$ with fixed X, Z :

$$X :=_{\tau} \lambda g^1, z^{10}, b^1. B(M' g z b, g, z^-, b), \quad Z :=_{\tau} \lambda g^1, z^{10}, b^1. N(M' g z b, g, z^-, b),$$

where $(M')^{\tau}$ (recall $\tau = 01(10)1$) is defined for any given M^{σ} similarly as X and Z as follows:

$$M'(g^1, z^{10}, b^1) :=_0 \text{lv} \left(\underbrace{M(\lambda n^0. z^-(\overline{b}(\text{lv}(n))))}_{\sim t_L} \underbrace{(A^{\text{BW}}(b))}_{\sim t_A} \right). \quad (1)$$

The terms B, X_n ²⁹ and N are primitive recursive, though not trivial, case distinctions:

$$\begin{aligned} B(m^0, g^1, z^1, b^1) &:=_0 \begin{cases} \min_0 \left\{ x^0 \mid \text{lh}(x) \leq_0 m \wedge x \in \{0, 1\}^{\text{lh}(x)} \wedge \neg \varphi^{\text{CA}}(x, gx, zx, Nmgzb) \right\} & \text{if it exists,} \\ X_n(m, g, b) & \text{else,} \end{cases} \\ X_n(m^0, g^1, b^1) &:=_0 \begin{cases} \bar{b}m & \text{if } g(\bar{b}m) =_0 0, \\ \min_0 \{ x^0 \mid \text{lh}(x) = m \wedge f_s(x, m+1) =_0 0 \} & \text{else,} \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

²⁸The quantifier in $<_{\mathbb{R}}$ is irrelevant, see the remark after the theorem.

²⁹The existence of the required x follows from Lemma 4.4.

$$N(m^0, g^1, z^1, b^1) :=_0 \begin{cases} m+1 & \text{if } f_s(X_n(m, g, b), m+1) =_0 0, \\ z(X_n m g b) & \text{else.} \end{cases}$$

Proof. Unwinding φ^{CA} and φ^{WKL} we get by lemma 4.5:

$$\begin{aligned} \forall K^\tau, X^\tau, Z^\tau ((t_G X Z K(X(t_G X Z K)(t_Z X Z K)(t_B X Z K))) =_0 0 \rightarrow \\ f_s((X(t_G X Z K)(t_Z X Z K)(t_B X Z K)), t_Z X Z K(X(t_G X Z K)(t_Z X Z K)(t_B X Z K))0) =_0 0) \end{aligned} \quad (2)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \forall K^\tau, X^\tau, Z^\tau ((t_G X Z K(X(t_G X Z K)(t_Z X Z K)(t_B X Z K))) =_0 0 \leftarrow \\ f_s(X(t_G X Z K)(t_Z X Z K)(t_B X Z K), Z(t_G X Z K)(t_Z X Z K)(t_B X Z K)) =_0 0) \end{aligned} \quad (3)$$

and

$$\forall K^\tau, X^\tau, Z^\tau \overbrace{(t_G X Z K)_{g(t_G X Z K)}(\overline{t_B X Z K}(K(t_G X Z K)(t_Z X Z K)(t_B X Z K)))} =_0 0. \quad (4)$$

Fix an arbitrary M^σ .

We set X, Z and $K :=_\tau M'$ – see (1) – as in the theorem. We will use the following abbreviations:

$$\begin{aligned} x_0 &:=_0 X(t_G X Z K)(t_Z X Z K)(t_B X Z K), & \gamma &:=_1 t_G X Z K, \\ z_0 &:=_0 Z(t_G X Z K)(t_Z X Z K)(t_B X Z K), & z &:=_1 \lambda n^0. t_Z X Z K n 0, \\ k_0 &:=_0 K(t_G X Z K)(t_Z X Z K)(t_B X Z K), & b &:=_1 t_B X Z K. \end{aligned}$$

Note that by (2) the equality $\gamma(x_0) =_0 0$ implies $f_s(x_0, z x_0) =_0 0$ and thereby $\text{BinFunc}([x_0])$. We will not be able to show $\text{BinTree}(\gamma)$ but fortunately we need only to show:

$$\forall x^0 \left((x \subseteq x_0 \wedge \gamma(x_0) =_0 0) \rightarrow \gamma(x) =_0 0 \right) \quad (5)$$

and

$$\text{lh}(x_0) =_0 k_0 \wedge \gamma(x_0) =_0 0. \quad (6)$$

Note that if x_0 was not equal to $X_n(k_0, \gamma, b)$ then

$$\neg \varphi^{\text{CA}}(x_0, \gamma x_0, z x_0, \underbrace{N(k_0, \gamma, z, b)}_{=z_0})$$

would hold, which is a contradiction to (2) or a contradiction to (3). So we can assume that $x_0 = X_n(k_0, \gamma, b)$. Similarly, we have that

$$(\gamma(q) =_0 0 \rightarrow f_s(q, z(q)) =_0 0) \wedge (\gamma(q) =_0 0 \leftarrow f_s(q, z_0) =_0 0). \quad (7)$$

Suppose (7) would not hold for some q' with $\text{lh}(q') \leq k_0$, then x_0 is equal to such a q' by the definition of X and we get a contradiction to (2) \wedge (3) again.

- To prove (5) suppose:

$$x \subseteq x_0 \quad \wedge \quad (8a)$$

$$\gamma(x_0) = 0 \quad (8b)$$

holds for some x . Together with (8b) we obtain from (7):

$$f_s(x_0, z(x_0)) =_0 0,$$

since $\text{lh}(x_0) \leq k_0$ (by the definition of X). We follow the definition of Z . We see that either z_0 directly equals $z(X_n(k_0, \gamma, b))$ or we have $f_s(X_n(k_0, \gamma, b), k_0 + 1) = 0$ and it equals $k_0 + 1$. This means that in both cases we obtain (using that $x_0 = X_n(k_0, \gamma, b)$)

$$f_s(x_0, z_0) =_0 0.$$

By the definition of f_s , see also section 4.1, and (8a) this implies

$$f_s(x, z_0) =_0 0.$$

From (8a) we get $\text{lh}(x) \leq k_0$ and by (7) we obtain

$$\gamma(x) = 0,$$

which concludes the proof of (5).

- Recall that $x_0 = X_n(k_0, \gamma, b)$. This proves the first part of (6):

$$\text{lh}(x_0) =_0 k_0.$$

Now we follow the definition of X_n . Either $\gamma(\bar{b}(k_0)) = 0$ and therefore $x_0 = \bar{b}(k_0)$ and we obtain (6) immediately, or we have that:

$$f_s(X_n(k_0, \gamma, b), k_0 + 1) = 0.$$

In that case, we can infer that

$$z_0 = N(k_0, \gamma, z, b) = k_0 + 1,$$

and we get

$$f_s(x_0, z_0) = 0.$$

Finally, applying (3) concludes the proof of (6).

This concludes the proofs of (5) and (6).

To show $\gamma(\bar{b}(k_0)) = 0$ assume towards contradiction that

$$\gamma(\bar{b}(k_0)) \neq 0.$$

If so, then by definition 1.78 we have also that

$$\widehat{\gamma}(\bar{b}(k_0)) \neq 0.$$

By (6) we know that $\gamma(x_0) = 0$. Using (5) we know that also $\widehat{\gamma}(x_0) = 0$ and since $\text{lh}(x_0) = k_0 = \text{lh}(\bar{b}(k_0))$ we have that

$$\widehat{\gamma}_{g\gamma}(\bar{b}(k_0)) \neq 0.$$

By definition 1.78 this is a contradiction to (4) and we obtain (recall that we started with an arbitrary M):

$$\forall M^\sigma \gamma(\bar{b}(k_0)) =_0 0.$$

This implies that $x_0 = \bar{b}(k_0)$ (by the definition of X_n) and therefore it follows by (2) that:

$$\forall M^\tau f_s(\bar{b}(k_0), z(\bar{b}k_0)) =_0 0.$$

Using the terms t_L and t_A in the short notation (i.e. t_L instead of t_{LsM} , t_B instead of $t_{BXM'}$ and similarly for t_A and t_Z) this becomes

$$\forall M^\sigma f_s(\bar{t}_B(\text{lv}(Mt_L t_A)), t_Z(\bar{t}_B(\text{lv}(Mt_L t_A)))0) =_0 0.$$

This implies by Lemma 4.3 (note that $t_L(Mt_L t_A) \equiv t_Z(\bar{t}_B(\text{lv}(Mt_L t_A)))0$):

$$\forall M^\sigma (t_L(Mt_L t_A) > Mt_L t_A \wedge d^\omega(\widetilde{t_A}, s(\widetilde{t_L(Mt_L t_A)}))) <_{\mathbb{R}} 2^{-Mt_L t_A}.$$

Finally observe that for all n^0 we have $(t_A(s, M))n =_{\mathbb{R}} (\widetilde{t_A(s, M)})n$ and that

$$\begin{aligned} t_Z =_{10} t_z t'_X t'_Z &= (t_g(t_f t'_X)(t_f t'_Z))^+ \\ &= \lambda a, b. \underbrace{t_g(\lambda g^1.X(g \upharpoonright_{f_s})g^+(B^{\text{WKL}}(M'(g \upharpoonright_{f_s})g^+, g \upharpoonright_{f_s})))(\lambda g^1.Z(g \upharpoonright_{f_s})g^+(B^{\text{WKL}}(M'(g \upharpoonright_{f_s})g^+, g \upharpoonright_{f_s})))a,}_{= \Phi(\lambda g^1.X(g \upharpoonright_{f_s})g^+(B^{\text{WKL}}(M'(g \upharpoonright_{f_s})g^+, g \upharpoonright_{f_s})))u^{1(1(0))}} \\ &\quad \underbrace{(\lambda g^1.Z(g \upharpoonright_{f_s})g^+(B^{\text{WKL}}(M'(g \upharpoonright_{f_s})g^+, g \upharpoonright_{f_s})))}_{\text{0001a}} \\ t_G =_1 t_h t'_X t'_Z &= (t_g(t_f t'_X)(t_f t'_Z)) \upharpoonright_{f_s}. \end{aligned}$$

□

Remark. From the proof we actually see how to realize the hidden quantifier in $<_{\mathbb{R}}$. Namely before using Lemma 4.3 we can simply apply the definition of f_s and obtain the following equivalent universal formula (for $\rho = (10)0$ and $\sigma = 0(10)1$ and writing t_L instead of t_{LsM} and t_A instead of t_{AsM}):

$$\forall s^\rho, M^\sigma (t_L(Mt_L t_A) >_0 Mt_L t_A \wedge \bigwedge_{d=0}^{w(\text{lv}(Mt_L t_A))} (s(\widetilde{t_L(Mt_L t_A)}))d(t_L(Mt_L t_A)) \in_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{P}^{\bar{t}_B}(\text{lv}(Mt_L t_A))).$$

Remark. One can also extend Theorem 4.6 to cover the case where the sequence (k_d) is a sequence in \mathbb{R}_+ rather than \mathbb{Q}_+ provided that one adapts the definition of f_s in such a way that also the boundaries of the interval $[-k_d, k_d]$ are replaced by suitable rational approximations etc. Since the application of our analysis of the Bolzano-Weierstraß theorem given in [?] (referred to in the introduction) only uses the monotone functional interpretation given below (Theorem 4.10) as will be usually the case, we restrict ourselves in this paper to treat the case with real k_d only in that context where things are particularly simple (and no approximation of the type mentioned above is needed).

Usually, the Bolzano-Weierstraß theorem is formulated to state the existence of a converging subsequence rather than the existence of a cluster point. The next theorem gives the solution for the Shoenfield interpretation of this formulation:

Theorem 4.7. *The version of the Bolzano-Weierstraß theorem stating the existence of a convergent subsequence is Sh-interpreted as follows (where t_L, t_A are as in theorem 4.6):*

$$\forall s, M \exists f, p (f(M_{fp} + 1) > f(M_{fp}) \wedge d^\omega(\tilde{p}, s(\widetilde{f(M_{fp} + 1)})) < 2^{-M_{fp}})$$

Let M' be obtained from M by

$$M'_{la} := \begin{cases} l^{M(\lambda n.l^n 0)a} 0 & \text{if } (\forall n < M(\lambda n.l^n 0)a) (l^{n+1} 0 > l^n 0), \\ l^{\min_0 \{n: l^{n+1} 0 \leq l^n 0\}} 0 & \text{else.} \end{cases}$$

Define the functionals

$$t_{FsM} := \lambda n. (t_{LsM'})^n 0 \quad \text{and} \quad t_{PsM} := t_{AsM'},$$

then the following holds:

$$\forall s, M \quad (t_{FsM}(M(t_{FsM})(t_{PsM}) + 1) > t_{FsM}(M(t_{FsM})(t_{PsM})) \wedge d^\omega(s(t_{FsM}(M(t_{FsM})(t_{PsM}) + 1)), \widetilde{t_{PsM}}) < 2^{-M(t_{FsM})(t_{PsM})}).$$

Proof. Consider any given s and M and define M' as in the theorem being proved. We denote $t_{LsM'}$, $t_{AsM'}$ and $M(\lambda n.(t_{LsM'})^n 0)(t_{AsM'})$ by l_0 , a_0 and m_0 . Unwinding the terms t_P and t_F in the statement of the theorem leads to:

$$\forall s, M \quad (l_0^{m_0+1} 0 > l_0^{m_0} 0 \wedge d^\omega(\tilde{a}_0, s(\widetilde{l_0^{m_0+1} 0})) \leq 2^{-m_0}).$$

1. If $(\forall n < m_0) (l_0^{n+1} 0 > l_0^n 0)$ then the claim follows directly from theorem 4.6 applied to s and M' (i.e. $M'_{l_0 a_0}$ becomes $l_0^{m_0} 0$) and its proof:

$$l_0(l_0^{m_0} 0) > l_0^{m_0} 0 \wedge d^\omega(s(\widetilde{l_0(l_0^{m_0} 0)}), \tilde{a}_0) <_{\mathbb{R}} 2^{-l_0^{m_0} 0} \quad (4.6 \text{ for } M')$$

where the proof allows us to omit the final step from:

$$l_0(l_0^{m_0} 0) >_0 l_0^{m_0} 0 \wedge \bigwedge_{d=0}^{l_0^{m_0} 0} |(a_0)(l_0^{m_0} 0 + 1)d -_{\mathbb{Q}} s(\widetilde{l_0(l_0^{m_0} 0)d(l_0^{m_0} 0 + 1)})| <_{\mathbb{Q}} 2^{-(l_0^{m_0} 0 + 2)}.$$

To see that $l_0^{m_0} \geq m_0$ recall that $\forall n < m_0 \quad l_0^{n+1} 0 > l_0^n 0$.

2. Otherwise we have $l_0^{i+1} 0 \leq l_0^i 0$ for some $i < m_0$ and $M'_{l_0 a_0} = l_0^i 0$. However this is a contradiction to theorem 4.6 which implies

$$l_0^{i+1} 0 = l_0(l_0^i 0) = l_0(M'_{l_0 a_0}) > M'_{l_0 a_0} = l_0^i 0.$$

□

Remark. Analogously to the previous remark, the proof of Theorem 4.6 gives us a more strict Sh-interpretation.

Applying the majorization results from section 1.15 we obtain a (much easier) solution to the **monotone** Shoenfield interpretation of $\text{BW}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\omega}$ (which is all the information on $\text{BW}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\omega}$ one needs to extract uniform bounds from proofs that use $\text{BW}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\omega}$). Instead of having to majorize explicitly the complicated construction of t_A we can rely on the fact that elements in compact intervals $[-K_d, K_d]$ with $K_d \in \mathbb{N}$ have a representations $x \leq_1 N_{K_d}$, where $N_m(k)$ is a fixed (non-decreasing) primitive recursive function in m, k which can be taken as (see [?], p.93)

$$N_m(k) := j(m2^{k+3} + 1, 2^{k+2} - 1) \text{ for the Cantor pairing function } j.$$

From the proof of Theorem 4.6 it follows that instead of $(A^{\text{BW}}(b))(d)$ we can take any other representative of the same real number, in particular the representative $\leq N_{K_d}$ from the construction in [?](p.93) for $K_d \geq k_d$. As a result, we can replace $t_A(s, M)(d)$ by another representative that is – for all s, M – majorized by N_{K_d} . In fact, we may even allow k_d to be a real number where then in the definition of f_s the clause $'(\tilde{s}k)ik \in_{\mathbb{Q}} \mathbb{P}_i^b'$ has to be replaced by $'(\tilde{s}k)i \in_{\mathbb{R}} \mathbb{P}_i^b'$. The resulting function f_s then no longer is computable but still trivially majorizable by the constant-1 function.

Remark. The shape of N_m above is due to the particular Cauchy representation used in [?]. If one uses the so-called signed-digit representation, it can be improved to the constant- $(2m + 3)$ function, see prop. 14 in [?].

Before we state the monotone functional interpretation of $\text{BW}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\omega}$ we first need, however, a simple lemma:

Lemma 4.8. Define (for $\mathbb{N} \ni K_d \geq k_d$ for all $d \in \mathbb{N}$)

$$\text{lv}^*(n) := (\max_{d \leq n+1} \{K_d, n\} + 2)^4.$$

Then $\text{lv}^* \text{ maj } \text{lv}$.

Proof. observe that for $d \leq n + 1$ we have that

$$\text{lv}_d(n) \leq n + 2 + (\lceil k_d(n + 2) \rceil + n)^2 \leq (n + 2) + (n + 2)^2(\lceil k_d + 1 \rceil)^2 \leq (n + 2)^2(\lceil k_d + 2 \rceil)^2.$$

Moreover lv^* is non-decreasing. \square To give the monotone version of Theorem 4.7, we need the following definition:

Definition 4.9. A majorant for Φ is given by (see also [?] or [21]):

$$\Phi^* y u^{0(1(0))(0)} n x :=_1 \max \left((\Phi y^m u_x^{0(1(0))(0)})^M n x, x^M \right),$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} w^M(n) &:=_{\rho} \max \{w(i) : i \leq_0 n\} \quad (\text{for } w^{\rho 0}, \rho \in T), \\ y^m(x) &:=_0 y(x^M), \\ u_x(n, v) &:=_1 \max \{x^M, v(unv)\}. \end{aligned}$$

Theorem 4.10. Let (k_d) be a sequence of non-negative reals and (K_d) be a sequence of natural numbers with $K_d \geq k_d$ for all $d \in \mathbb{N}$. The realizing terms of the Sh-interpretation of the

Bolzano-Weierstraß principle $\text{BW}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\omega}$ for an infinite sequence s of elements in \mathbb{P} (defined by (k_d) , see also Theorem 4.6 above) can be majorized by terms t_L^* and t_A^* , i.e. t_L^* and t_A^* satisfy the monotone Sh-interpretation of $\text{BW}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\omega}$. The term t_L^* depends only on M (but not on s) and t_A^* even is independent from both s and M , indeed:

$$t_L^*(M) := {}_1 \lambda n^0. \Phi^*(X^*M) u_{(Z^*M)}^{*1(1(0))} 0^0 0^1 (\bar{1}(\text{lv}^*(n))),$$

$$t_A^* := {}_{1(0)} \lambda d^0, n^0. N_{K_d},$$

where

$$N_m(k) := j(m2^{k+3} + 1, 2^{k+2} - 1)$$

and X^*M and Z^*M are defined primitive recursively in M :

$$X^*M := \lambda g^1. \bar{1}(M'g), \quad Z^*M := \lambda g^1. \max_0(M'g, g(\bar{1}(M'g))).$$

The term M' is a similar primitive recursive modification of M as before:

$$M'g := \text{lv}^*(M(\lambda n^0. g(\bar{1}(\text{lv}^*(n))))(t_A^*)).$$

The majorized versions of u and lv , are given by:

$$u_Z^* n^0 v^{1(0)} := \max_0(1, Z(v1)), \quad \text{lv}^*(n) := (\max_{d \leq n+1} \mathbb{N}\{K_d, n\} + 2)^4.$$

Though it is not entirely obvious how we obtain this theorem, the actual steps are purely elementary.

Similarly, we can obtain the majorized version of Theorem 4.7:

Theorem 4.11. The terms t_F^* and t_P^* satisfy the monotone Sh-interpretation of $\text{BW}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\omega}$ stating the existence of a converging subsequence (see also Theorem 4.7 above):

$$t_F^*M := \lambda n. (t_L^*M'')^n 0, \quad t_P^* := t_A^*,$$

with t_L^* and t_A^* defined as in the Theorem 4.10 and the term M'' is a similar primitive recursive modification of M as in Theorem 4.7:

$$M''la := l^{M(\lambda n. l^n(0))^a}(0).$$

Proof. For M^* s-maj M , we have that $(M^*)''$ s-maj M', M'' . Hence $t_L^*((M^*)'')(n) \geq t_{L^*M'}(n)$ and the function $t_L^*((M^*)'')$ is non-decreasing. Therefore $t_F^*M^*$ is non-decreasing as well and majorizes $t_{F^*}M$. \square

4.2 Analysis of the Complexity of the Realizers

Theorem 4.10 implies that we can use only a single application of $\text{B}_{0,1}$ on primitive recursive functionals and primitive recursion to obtain the realizing terms for $\text{BW}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\omega}$.

Now, we can investigate how the principle $\text{BW}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\omega}$ does affect the complexity of the realizers of a given theorem proved using this principle. Depending on the way the $\text{BW}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\omega}$ -principle is used in such a proof, we get the results stated in theorems 4.12 and 4.15 respectively.

Theorem 4.12. Program extraction for proofs based on an instance of $\text{BW}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\omega}$.
 For $n \geq 1$, given a proof using $\text{BW}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\omega}$ on a known sequence sx of elements in \mathbb{P} specified by a closed term s of $\widehat{\text{WE-PA}}^{\omega} \upharpoonright$, i.e. $s \in (\mathbb{P}^{\mathbb{N}})^{\mathbb{N}}$ defines a sequence of such sequences (where the bounds (k_d) used in forming \mathbb{P} are also given by a term rx that may depend on x), and a quantifier-free formula $\varphi_{\text{QF}}(x, y)$ containing only x, y as free variables we have: from a proof

$$\widehat{\text{WE-PA}}^{\omega} \upharpoonright + \text{QF-AC} + \Sigma_n^0\text{-IA} \vdash \forall x^0 (\text{BW}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\omega}(sx) \rightarrow \exists y^0 \varphi_{\text{QF}}(x, y)),$$

we can extract a function $f \in T_n$ by Sh-interpretation s.t.

$$\mathcal{S}^{\omega} \models \forall x^0 \varphi_{\text{QF}}(x, f(x)).$$

Remark. 1. In particular, for $n = 1$ we obtain a $<\omega^{\omega^{\omega}}$ -recursive realizer. Moreover, for the special case $n = 0$, U: Kohlenbach showed in [77] that when some weaker systems than $\widehat{\text{WE-PA}}^{\omega} \upharpoonright + \text{QF-AC}$ are used, namely $\text{G}_{\infty}\text{A}^{\omega} + \text{QF-AC}$, one obtains even $<\omega^{\omega}$ -recursive realizers. Note that this case is not covered by Theorem 4.12 above.

2. Instead of $\widehat{\text{WE-PA}}^{\omega} \upharpoonright$ we may also have the system resulting from this by adding the recursors R_{ρ} with $\deg(\rho) \leq n - 1$.

Corollary 4.13. Theorem 4.12 also holds with $\widehat{\text{E-PA}}^{\omega} \upharpoonright$ instead of $\widehat{\text{WE-PA}}^{\omega} \upharpoonright$ once we restrict QF-AC to the types $(\rho, \tau) := (1, 0)$ and $(\rho, \tau) := (0, 1)$.

Proof. Apply elimination of extensionality to theorem 4.12 (see [113] or [?]). \square

Proof of Theorem 4.12. By soundness of $\widehat{\text{WE-PA}}^{\omega} \upharpoonright$ (see e.g. [?] and [147]) we know that one can construct closed terms t_M and t_Y in T_{n-1} realizing the Sh-interpretation of the analyzed proof:

$$\forall x, L, a (\text{BW}_{\text{Sh}}(a, t_M x L a, L(t_M x L a), sx) \rightarrow \varphi_{\text{Sh}}(x, t_Y x L a)).$$

Now, using the solution terms t_A, t_L for the Shoenfield interpretation of $\text{BW}_{\mathbb{R}}^{\omega}$ from theorem 4.6 we define

$$a := t_A(sx, t_M x) \text{ and } L := t_L(sx, t_M x)$$

and obtain that

$$\text{BW}_{\text{Sh}}(a, t_M x L a, L(t_M x L a), sx).$$

Hence for

$$tx := t_Y x L a = t_Y x (t_L(sx, t_M x))(t_A(sx, t_M x))$$

we have that $\varphi_{\text{QF}}(x, tx)$.

Now let t_M^*, t_Y^* be majorants for t_M, t_Y in T_{n-1} . Then –using the majorants t_L^*, t_A^* of t_L, t_A from theorem 4.10 – we define

$$t^* x := t_Y^* x (t_L^* (t_M^* x))(t_A^* (t_M^* x)).$$

Since $x \text{ maj}_0 x$ we get that $t^* x \geq tx$ for all x . It, therefore, suffices to show that the function denoted by t^* can be defined in T_n : Using Parsons' result from [128] (p. 361) we know that $t_M^* x$ has computational sizes $< \omega_n(\omega)$. This fact allows us to apply

Howard's proposition, see [63] (p. 23), from which it follows that $t_L^*(t_M^*x)y^0$ has computational size $< \omega_{n+1}(\omega)$ and so (using Parson's result again) can be defined by a term in T_n which finishes the proof as t_A^* even is in T_0 . \square

The Theorem 4.12 is optimal in the following sense:

Proposition 4.14. *Any function h given by a closed term in \mathcal{T}_n can be proven to be total in $\widehat{\text{WE-PA}}^\omega \upharpoonright + \text{QF-AC} + \Sigma_n^0\text{-IA}$ using a concrete instance of $\text{BW}(s)$ for a suitable closed term s^1 in \mathcal{T}_0 .*

Proof.

In [82] (Proposition 5.5), U. Kohlenbach gave a construction of a functional F^2 such that (relative to $\widehat{\text{WE-PA}}^\omega \upharpoonright$) $\forall f^{1(0)} (\text{PCM}(F(f)) \rightarrow \Pi_1^0\text{-CA}(f))$, where $\text{PCM}(f^{1(0)})$ is the principle of monotone convergence defined as follows:

$$\forall n (0 \leq_{\mathbb{R}} f(n+1) \leq_{\mathbb{R}} f(n)) \rightarrow \exists g \forall k \forall m_1, m_2 \geq gk \left(|f m_1 -_{\mathbb{R}} f m_2| \leq \frac{1}{k+1} \right).$$

Moreover, in the presence of QF-AC we also have $\forall f^{1(0)} (\text{BW}_{\mathbb{R}}(G(f)) \rightarrow \text{PCM}(f))$ for a suitable functional G . Hence there are functionals F_{\exists} , and F_{\forall} such that (relative to $\widehat{\text{WE-PA}}^\omega \upharpoonright + \text{QF-AC}$) for any function $f^{1(0)}$ the instance $\text{BW}(F_{\exists}f)$, resp. $\text{BW}(F_{\forall}f)$, of BW implies the instance $\Sigma_1^0\text{-CA}(f)$ of $\Sigma_1^0\text{-CA}$, resp. $\Pi_1^0\text{-CA}(f)$ of $\Pi_1^0\text{-CA}$.

By Parsons's results in [129] we know that $\widehat{\text{WE-PA}}^\omega \upharpoonright + \text{QF-AC}$ proves the Π_2^0 sentence stating the totality of h using additionally just finitely many, say m , instances of $\Sigma_{n+1}^0\text{-IA}$ with number parameters only.

Assume that n is odd. Each of these m instances can be reformulated as an instance of $\Sigma_n^0\text{-IA}$ with number and function parameters plus the instances $\forall \underline{a}^0 \Pi_1^0\text{-CA}(t'_i(\underline{a}))$ of Π_1^0 -comprehension, where the term $t'_i \in \mathcal{T}_0$ ($i \in \{1 \dots m\}$) corresponds to the quantifier-free matrix of the induction formula in the i^{th} instance of $\Sigma_{n+1}^0\text{-IA}$ (i.e. t'_i essentially is the characteristic term of that matrix). Furthermore, for suitable closed terms $t_i \in \mathcal{T}_0$ each formula $\forall \underline{a}^0 \Pi_1^0\text{-CA}(t'_i(\underline{a}))$ is equivalent to an instance $\Pi_1^0\text{-CA}(t_i)$ of $\Pi_1^0\text{-CA}$. Moreover, $\bigwedge_{i=0}^m \Pi_1^0\text{-CA}(t_i)$ is equivalent to $\Pi_1^0\text{-CA}(t)$ for a suitable $t \in \mathcal{T}_0$ (see [?] for this).

Analogously, if n is even we obtain the equivalence to $\Sigma_1^0\text{-CA}(t)$.

Finally, $\Pi_1^0\text{-CA}(t)$ and $\Sigma_1^0\text{-CA}(t)$ are derivable from the instances $\text{BW}(F_{\forall}t)$ resp. $\text{BW}(F_{\exists}t)$ of BW . \square

Theorem 4.12 should be contrasted to the case of proofs based on the full (2nd order closure – also w.r.t. the bounding sequence (k_d) from \mathbb{P} – of the) Bolzano-Weierstraß principle BW where the following (equally optimal) result follows from the literature:

Theorem 4.15. *Given a proof using $\text{BW}_{\mathbb{R}}^\omega$ on any given sequence in \mathbb{P} : Let $\varphi_{\text{QF}}(x, y)$ be a quantifier-free formula containing only the free variables x, y . Then from a proof*

$$\widehat{\text{WE-PA}}^\omega \upharpoonright + \text{QF-AC} + \Sigma_\infty^0\text{-IA} + \text{BW}_{\mathbb{R}}^\omega \vdash \forall x^1 \exists y^0 \varphi_{\text{QF}}(x, y)$$

we can extract by Sh-interpretation a closed term $t^1 \in \mathcal{T}$ s.t.

$$\mathcal{S}^\omega \models \forall x^0 \varphi_{\text{QF}}(x, t(x)).$$

Proof. Over $\widehat{\text{WE-PA}}^\omega \upharpoonright + \text{QF-AC}$ the schema of arithmetical comprehension CA_{ar}^0 clearly implies both $\text{BW}_{\mathbb{R}}^\omega$ as well as $\Sigma_\infty^0\text{-IA}$. The system $\widehat{\text{WE-PA}}^\omega \upharpoonright + \text{QF-AC} + \text{CA}_{ar}^0$, however, has a *Sh*-interpretation by terms in $\mathcal{T}_0 + \mathbf{B}_{0,1}$ (see e.g. [?], Theorem 11.14). Hence we get a term $t \in \mathcal{T}_0 + \mathbf{B}_{0,1}$ satisfying $\forall x^1 \varphi_{\text{QF}}(x, t(x))$. Finally, using Corollary 4.4.1 from [81], we can conclude that t can be rewritten as a functional in \mathcal{T} . \square

Functional interpretation for IST

This paper introduces a new realizability and functional interpretation where throughout the interpretation one works with non-empty finite sequences (sets) of witnesses, rather than single witnesses. This, surprisingly, gives rise to functional interpretations which are extremely suitable to deal with the kind of principles used in non-standard analysis such as overspill, underspill and the idealization principle, amongst others. The proposed set of techniques is much more involved than the usual modified realizability and dialectica interpretations, in that one has to deal with two different kinds of quantifiers (internal and external) and a new atomic predicate $st(x)$, and their corresponding defining axioms. The benefit of this is that most of the classical principles of non-standard analysis become either interpretable or are even eliminated by the interpretation, leading to very strong conservation results which extends previous results of Moerdijk and Palmgren (1997) and Avigad and Helzner (2002). This is a well-written paper introducing some novel and powerful ideas in the area of functional interpretation, with some impressive applications to non-standard analysis...

– anonymous referee about [157], Apr 26, 2012.

Motivation

In this section we give functional interpretations for both constructive and classical systems of nonstandard arithmetic. Apart from the two aspects: they show that the nonstandard systems are conservative over ordinary (standard) ones and they show how terms can be extracted from nonstandard proofs; we present the results of a first step towards the interpretation of the countable saturation principle (which will hopefully one day lead to a functional interpretation of proofs based on Loeb measures).

Let us have a short look at the work of Nelson on conservation results for non-standard systems, also because it was a major source of inspiration for [157] (large part of this chapter is based on that article). The idea of Nelson was to add a new unary predicate symbol st to ZFC for an object “being standard”. Using this predicate, he added three new axioms to ZFC governing its use and formalizing the basic non-standard principles. He calls these axioms Idealization, Standardization and Transfer resulting in the system he calls IST, which actually stands for Internal Set Theory. His

main logical result about IST is that it is a conservative extension of ZFC, so any theorem provable in IST (which does not involve the st-predicate, of course) is provable also in ZFC.

He proved the conservativity twice. In the original paper introducing Internal Set Theory [119] (reprinted in Volume 48, Number 4 of the *Bulletin of the American Mathematical Society* in recognition of its status as a classic), and in a later publication [120]. The latter proof is done syntactically by providing a “reduction algorithm” (a rewriting algorithm) for converting proofs performed in IST to ordinary ZFC-proofs. There is a remarkable similarity between this reduction algorithm and the Shoenfield interpretation [142] (see also Definition 1.25). This observation was the starting point for [157].

Let us point out that [157] shows that if one defines a Dialectica-type functional interpretation using the new application, with implication interpreted *à la* Diller–Nahm [32], will interpret and eliminate principles recognizable from nonstandard analysis. By combining that functional interpretation with negative translation, we were able to define a Shoenfield-type functional interpretation for classical nonstandard systems as well. In this way we also obtained conservation and term extraction results for classical systems. The resulting functional interpretations in [157] (see sections 5.3 and 5.5) have some striking similarities with the bounded functional interpretations introduced by Ferreira and Oliva in [36] and [34] (see also [38]).

5.1 Formalities

In this section, we follow very closely [157] and extend our first section to cover the necessary technicalities to formalize proofs in non-standard analysis.

The system $\mathbf{E-HA}^{\omega*}$

In this chapter, $\mathbf{E-HA}^{\omega*}$ will be the extension of the system called $\mathbf{E-HA}_0^\omega$ in [153] and $\mathbf{E-HA}_\rightarrow^\omega$ in [156] with types for finite sequences, see also Definition 1.9 in first chapter (though note that we treat things here a little differently – see below). More precisely, the collection of types T^* (similarly to T , see Definition 1.1) will be smallest set closed under the following rules:

- (i) $0 \in T^*$;
- (ii) $\sigma, \tau \in T^* \Rightarrow (\sigma \rightarrow \tau) \in T^*$;
- (iii) $\sigma \in T^* \Rightarrow \sigma^* \in T^*$.

In dealing with tuples, we will follow the notation and conventions of the first chapter, [153] and [88]. Specifically for this context see also Details in [157]. This includes the enrichment of the term language (Gödel’s \mathcal{T}); it now also includes a constant $\langle \rangle_\sigma$ of type σ^* and an operation c of type $\sigma \rightarrow (\sigma^* \rightarrow \sigma^*)$ (for the empty sequence and the operation of prepending an element to a sequence, respectively), as well as a list recursor $\underline{L}_{\sigma, \rho}$ satisfying the usual axioms (again see [157] and also [156, p. 456] or [88, p. 48]). In addition, we have the recursors and combinators for all the new types in Gödel’s \mathcal{T} , satisfying the usual equations. The resulting extension we will denote by \mathcal{T}^* .

Differently to previous chapters, we will have a primitive notion of equality at every type and equality axioms expressing that equality is a congruence (as in [156, p. 448–9]). Since decidability of quantifier-free formulas is not essential for this paper, this choice

will not create any difficulties. In addition, we assume the axiom of extensionality for functions:

$$f =_{\sigma \rightarrow \tau} g \leftrightarrow \forall x^\sigma f x =_\tau g x.$$

The axiom schemas of the underlying system (i.e. $\mathbf{E-HA}^\omega$) apply to all formulas in the language (i.e., also those containing variables of sequence type and the new terms that belong to \mathcal{T}^*).

Finally, we add the following sequence axiom:

$$\text{SA} : \quad \forall y^{\sigma^*} (y = \langle \rangle_\sigma \vee \exists a^\sigma, x^{\sigma^*} y = c(a, x)).$$

In the usual formalization of $\mathbf{E-HA}^\omega$, as in [88] or [156] (or simply our system from Definition 1.9), for example, one can also talk about sequences, but these have to be coded up (see [88, p. 59]). As a result, $\mathbf{E-HA}^{\omega*}$ is a definitional extension of, and hence conservative over, $\mathbf{E-HA}^\omega$ as defined in [88] or [156].

The system $\mathbf{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$

Definition 5.1 (As given in [157]). The language of the system $\mathbf{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ is obtained by extending that of $\mathbf{E-HA}^{\omega*}$ with unary predicates st^σ as well as two new quantifiers $\forall^{\text{st}} x^\sigma$ and $\exists^{\text{st}} x^\sigma$ for every type $\sigma \in T^*$. Formulas in the language of $\mathbf{E-HA}^{\omega*}$ (i.e., those that do not contain the new predicate st_σ or the two new quantifiers $\forall^{\text{st}} x^\sigma$ and $\exists^{\text{st}} x^\sigma$) will be called *internal*, denoted – as before – by small Greek letters e.g. φ, ψ . Formulas which are not internal will be called *external*, denoted by capital Greek letters, e.g. Φ, Ψ .

Definition 5.2 ($\mathbf{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$, in [157]). The system $\mathbf{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ is obtained by adding to $\mathbf{E-HA}^{\omega*}$ the axioms EQ , $\mathcal{T}_{\text{st}}^*$ and IA^{st} , where

- EQ stands for the defining axioms of the external quantifiers:

$$\begin{aligned} \forall^{\text{st}} x \Phi(x) &\leftrightarrow \forall x (\text{st}(x) \rightarrow \Phi(x)), \\ \exists^{\text{st}} x \Phi(x) &\leftrightarrow \exists x (\text{st}(x) \wedge \Phi(x)), \end{aligned}$$

with $\Phi(x)$ an arbitrary formula, possibly with additional free variables.

- $\mathcal{T}_{\text{st}}^*$ consists of:

1. the axioms $\text{st}(x) \wedge x = y \rightarrow \text{st}(y)$,
2. the axiom $\text{st}(t)$ for each closed term t in \mathcal{T}^* ,
3. the axioms $\text{st}(f) \wedge \text{st}(x) \rightarrow \text{st}(fx)$.

- IA^{st} is the external induction axiom:

$$\text{IA}^{\text{st}} : \quad (\Phi(0) \wedge \forall^{\text{st}} n^0 (\Phi(n) \rightarrow \Phi(n+1))) \rightarrow \forall^{\text{st}} n^0 \Phi(n),$$

where $\Phi(n)$ is an arbitrary formula, possibly with additional free variables.

Here it is to be understood that in $\mathbf{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ the laws of intuitionistic logic apply to all formulas, while the induction axiom from $\mathbf{E-HA}^{\omega*}$

$$(\varphi(0) \wedge \forall n^0 (\varphi(n) \rightarrow \varphi(n+1))) \rightarrow \forall n^0 \varphi(n)$$

applies to internal formulas φ only.

Lemma 5.3 ([157]). $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*} \vdash \Phi(x) \wedge x = y \rightarrow \Phi(y)$ for every formula Φ .

Lemma 5.4 ([157]). $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*} \vdash \text{st}^0(x) \wedge y \leq x \rightarrow \text{st}^0(y)$.

Definition 5.5 ([157]). For any formula Φ in the language of $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$, we define its *internalization* Φ^{int} to be the formula one obtains from Φ by replacing $\text{st}(x)$ by $x = x$, and $\forall^{\text{st}}x$ and $\exists^{\text{st}}x$ by $\forall x$ and $\exists x$, respectively.

One of the reasons $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ is such a convenient system for the proof-theoretic investigations in [157] is because we have the following easy result:

Proposition 5.6 ([157]). *If a formula Φ is provable in $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$, then its internalization Φ^{int} is provable in $\text{E-HA}^{\omega*}$. Hence $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ is a conservative extension of $\text{E-HA}^{\omega*}$ and E-HA^{ω} .*

Operations on finite sequences

We have all the standard operations on finite sequences, see [157] for details and the following lemma.

- Lemma 5.7** ([157]).
1. $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*} \vdash \text{st}(x^{\sigma*}) \rightarrow \text{st}(|x|)$,
 2. $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*} \vdash \text{st}(x^{\sigma*}) \rightarrow \text{st}((x)_i)$,
 3. $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*} \vdash \text{st}(x_0^{\sigma}) \wedge \dots \wedge \text{st}(x_n^{\sigma}) \rightarrow \text{st}(\langle x_0^{\sigma}, \dots, x_n^{\sigma} \rangle)$,
 4. $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*} \vdash \text{st}(x^{\sigma*}) \wedge \text{st}(y^{\sigma*}) \rightarrow \text{st}(x *_{\sigma} y)$.
 5. $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*} \vdash \text{st}(F^{0 \rightarrow \sigma*}) \wedge \text{st}(n^0) \rightarrow \text{st}(F(0) * \dots * F(n-1))$.

Proof. Follows from the $\mathcal{T}_{\text{st}}^*$ -axioms together with the fact that the list recursor L belongs to \mathcal{T}^* . \square

Finite sets

Most of the time, as in [157], we will regard finite sequences as stand-ins for finite sets. We also use the notion of an element and that of one sequence being contained in another, as given in [157].

Definition 5.8 ([157]). For $s^{\sigma}, t^{\sigma*}$ we write $s \in_{\sigma} t$ and say that s is an element of t if

$$\exists i < |t| (s =_{\sigma} (t)_i).$$

For $\underline{s}^{\sigma} = s_0^{\sigma}, \dots, s_{n-1}^{\sigma}$ and $\underline{t}^{\sigma*} = t_0^{\sigma*}, \dots, t_{n-1}^{\sigma*}$ we write $\underline{s} \in_{\sigma} \underline{t}$ and say that \underline{s} is an element of \underline{t} if

$$\bigwedge_{k=0}^{n-1} s_k \in_{\sigma} t_k.$$

In case no confusion can arise, we will drop the subscript and write simply \in instead of \in_{σ} or $\in_{\sigma*}$.

Lemma 5.9 ([157]). $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*} \vdash \text{st}(x^{\sigma*}) \wedge y \in_{\sigma} x \rightarrow \text{st}(y^{\sigma})$.

Definition 5.10 ([157]). For $s^{\sigma^*}, t^{\sigma^*}$ we write $s \preceq_{\sigma} t$ and say that s is contained in t if

$$\forall x^{\sigma} (x \in s \rightarrow x \in t),$$

or, equivalently,

$$\forall i < |s| \exists j < |t| (s)_i =_{\sigma} (t)_j.$$

For $\underline{s}^{\sigma^*} = s_0^{\sigma^*}, \dots, s_{n-1}^{\sigma^*}$ and $\underline{t}^{\sigma^*} = t_0^{\sigma^*}, \dots, t_{n-1}^{\sigma^*}$ we write $\underline{s} \preceq_{\sigma} \underline{t}$ and say that \underline{s} is contained in \underline{t} if

$$\bigwedge_{k=0}^{n-1} s_k \preceq_{\sigma_k} t_k.$$

Lemma 5.11 ([157]). E-HA^{ω^*} proves that \preceq_{σ} determines a preorder on the set of objects of type σ^* . More precisely, for all x^{σ^*} we have $x \preceq_{\sigma} x$, and for all $x^{\sigma^*}, y^{\sigma^*}, z^{\sigma^*}$ with $x \preceq_{\sigma} y$ and $y \preceq_{\sigma} z$, we have $x \preceq_{\sigma} z$.

Definition 5.12 ([157]). A property $\Phi(x^{\sigma^*})$ is called *upwards closed in \underline{x}* if $\Phi(\underline{x}) \wedge \underline{x} \preceq \underline{y} \rightarrow \Phi(\underline{y})$ and *downwards closed in \underline{x}* if $\Phi(\underline{x}) \wedge \underline{y} \preceq \underline{x} \rightarrow \Phi(\underline{y})$.

Induction and extensionality for sequences

Proposition 5.13 ([157]). E-HA^{ω^*} proves the induction schema for sequences:

$$\varphi(\langle \rangle_{\sigma}) \wedge \forall a^{\sigma}, y^{\sigma^*} (\varphi(y) \rightarrow \varphi(c(a, y))) \rightarrow \forall x^{\sigma^*} \varphi(x).$$

A consequence of this is the principle of extensionality for sequences. We follow [157] and call two elements $x^{\sigma^*}, y^{\sigma^*}$ extensionally equal, and write $x =_{e, \sigma^*} y$, iff

$$|x| =_0 |y| \wedge \forall i < |x| ((x)_i =_{\sigma} (y)_i).$$

Proposition 5.14 ([157]). E-HA^{ω^*} proves

$$\forall x^{\sigma^*}, y^{\sigma^*} (x =_{e, \sigma^*} y \rightarrow x =_{\sigma^*} y).$$

Corollary 5.15 ([157]). $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega^*}$ proves

$$\forall x^{\sigma^*} \text{st}(|x|) \wedge \forall i < |x| \text{st}((x)_i) \rightarrow \text{st}(x).$$

Corollary 5.16 ([157]). $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega^*}$ proves the external induction axiom for sequences:

$$\Phi(\langle \rangle_{\sigma}) \wedge \forall^{\text{st}} a^{\sigma}, y^{\sigma^*} (\Phi(y) \rightarrow \Phi(c(a, y))) \rightarrow \forall^{\text{st}} x^{\sigma^*} \Phi(x).$$

Finite sequence application

We already said, that we have all the usual operations on sequences. The following, more involved, operations are crucial for this chapter.

Definition 5.17 (Finite sequence application and abstraction, [157]). If s is of type $(\sigma \rightarrow \tau^*)^*$ and t is of type σ , then

$$s[t] := (s)_0(t) * \dots * (s)_{|s|-1}(t) : \tau^*.$$

For every term s of type $\sigma \rightarrow \tau^*$ we set

$$\Lambda x^{\sigma}.s(x) := \langle \lambda x^{\sigma}.s(x) \rangle : (\sigma \rightarrow \tau^*)^*.$$

Note that we have

$$(\Lambda x.s(x))[t] =_{\tau^*} (\lambda x.s(x))(t) =_{\tau^*} s(t).$$

Also, the same conventions as for ordinary application and abstraction apply.

Moreover, in [157] we also define recursors \underline{R}_ρ for each tuple of types $\underline{\rho}^* = \rho_0^*, \dots, \rho_k^*$, such that

$$\begin{aligned} \underline{R}_\rho(0, \underline{y}, \underline{z}) &=_{\rho^*} \underline{y}, \\ \underline{R}_\rho(n+1, \underline{y}, \underline{z}) &=_{\rho^*} \underline{z}[n, \underline{R}_\rho(n, \underline{y}, \underline{z})], \end{aligned}$$

(where y_i is of type ρ_i^* and z_i is of type $(0 \rightarrow \rho_0^* \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \rho_k^* \rightarrow \rho_i^*)^*$). Indeed, by letting

$$\underline{R}_\rho := \lambda n^0, \underline{y}, \underline{z}. \underline{R}_{\rho^*}(n, \underline{y}, (\lambda \underline{s}^{\rho^*}, t^0. \underline{z}[t, \underline{s}])),$$

where \underline{R}_ρ are constants for simultaneous primitive recursion as in [88], we get

$$\underline{R}_\rho(0, \underline{y}, \underline{z}) =_{\rho^*} \underline{R}_{\rho^*}(0, \underline{y}, (\lambda \underline{s}^{\rho^*}, t^0. \underline{z}[t, \underline{s}])) =_{\rho^*} \underline{y}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \underline{R}_\rho(n+1, \underline{y}, \underline{z}) &=_{\rho^*} \underline{R}_{\rho^*}(n+1, \underline{y}, (\lambda \underline{s}^{\rho^*}, t^0. \underline{z}[t, \underline{s}])) \\ &=_{\rho^*} (\lambda \underline{s}^{\rho^*}, t^0. \underline{z}[t, \underline{s}])(\underline{R}_{\rho^*}(n, \underline{y}, (\lambda \underline{s}^{\rho^*}, t^0. \underline{z}[t, \underline{s}])), n) \\ &=_{\rho^*} \underline{z}[n, \underline{R}_{\rho^*}(n, \underline{y}, (\lambda \underline{s}^{\rho^*}, t^0. \underline{z}[t, \underline{s}]))] \\ &=_{\rho^*} \underline{z}[n, \underline{R}_\rho(n, \underline{y}, \underline{z})]. \end{aligned}$$

We have the following concerning the preorder defined above.

Lemma 5.18 ([157]). E-HA^{ω^*} proves

1. If $s^{(\sigma \rightarrow \tau^*)^*} \preceq \tilde{s}^{(\sigma \rightarrow \tau^*)^*}$, then $s[t] \preceq \tilde{s}[t]$, for all t^σ .
2. If $s \preceq \tilde{s}$, then $s[t] \preceq \tilde{s}[t]$ for all t of suitable types.
3. If $\underline{s} \preceq \underline{\tilde{s}}$, then $\underline{s}[t] \preceq \underline{\tilde{s}}[t]$ for all t of suitable types.

Lemma 5.19 ([157]). $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega^*}$ proves

$$\text{st}^{(\sigma \rightarrow \tau^*)^*}(x) \wedge \text{st}^\sigma(y) \rightarrow \text{st}^{\tau^*}(x[y])$$

and

$$\text{st}^{\sigma \rightarrow \tau^*}(s) \rightarrow \text{st}^{(\sigma \rightarrow \tau^*)^*}(\Lambda x^\sigma. s(x)).$$

5.2 Nonstandard principles

Let us motivate this section with a similar introduction as in [157].

Nonstandard analysis employs the existence of nonstandard models of the first-order theory of the reals (or the natural numbers). One uses the compactness theorem for first-order logic (or, alternatively, the existence of suitable nonprincipal ultrafilters) to show that there are extensions of the natural numbers (or the reals, or other structures)

that are *elementary*, i.e. satisfy the same first-order sentences (or formulas with parameters from the original structure). E.g. for the natural numbers, this means that there are structures ${}^*\mathbb{N}$ and embeddings $i : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow {}^*\mathbb{N}$ that satisfy

$${}^*\mathbb{N} \models \varphi(i(n_0), \dots, i(n_k)) \iff \mathbb{N} \models \varphi(n_0, \dots, n_k)$$

for all first-order formulas $\varphi(x_0, \dots, x_k)$ and natural numbers n_0, \dots, n_k .

The image of i is then called the *standard* natural numbers, while those that do not lie in the image of i are the *nonstandard* natural numbers. Also, it is common to add a new predicate st to the structure ${}^*\mathbb{N}$, which is true only for the standard natural numbers.

The elementarity of the embedding implies that ${}^*\mathbb{N}$ is still a linear order in which the nonstandard natural numbers must be infinite (i.e., bigger than any standard natural number). The point of nonstandard systems is that one can use these infinite natural numbers to prove theorems in the nonstandard structure ${}^*\mathbb{N}$, which must then be true in \mathbb{N} as well, since the embedding i is elementary. The same applies to the reals, with the addition of infinitesimals (nonstandard reals having an absolute value smaller than any positive standard real). Typically, these infinitesimals are then used to prove theorems in analysis in ${}^*\mathbb{R}$ to show that they must hold in \mathbb{R} as well.

Of course, this makes sense only *first-order, internal* statements. So, using nonstandard models requires some understanding about what can and what cannot be expressed in first-order logic as well as whether formulas are internal.

Let us the following, most important principles in nonstandard analysis:

1. **Overspill**: if $\varphi(x)$ is internal and holds for all standard x , then $\varphi(x)$ also holds for some nonstandard x .
2. **Underspill**: if $\varphi(x)$ is internal and holds for all nonstandard x , then $\varphi(x)$ also holds for some standard x .
3. **Transfer**: an internal formula φ (possibly with standard parameters) holds in ${}^*\mathbb{N}$ iff it holds in \mathbb{N} .

These principles will provide us with three criteria with which we will be able to measure the success of the different interpretations. Let us have a closer look.

Remark. Unless we state otherwise, the formulas in this chapter may have additional parameters besides those explicitly shown.

Overspill

When formalised in $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$, overspill (in type 0) is the following statement:

$$\text{OS}_0 : \forall^{\text{st}} x^0 \varphi(x) \rightarrow \exists x^0 (\neg \text{st}(x) \wedge \varphi(x)).$$

Proposition 5.20. [125] *In $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$, the principle OS_0 implies the existence of nonstandard natural numbers,*

$$\text{ENS}_0 : \exists x^0 \neg \text{st}(x),$$

as well as:

$$\text{LLPO}_0^{\text{st}} : \forall^{\text{st}} x^0, y^0 (\varphi(x) \vee \psi(y)) \rightarrow \forall^{\text{st}} x^0 \varphi(x) \vee \forall^{\text{st}} y^0 \psi(y).$$

Formulated for all types, we get:

$$\text{OS} : \forall^{\text{st}} x^\sigma \varphi(x) \rightarrow \exists x^\sigma (\neg \text{st}(x) \wedge \varphi(x)).$$

Generalized, this becomes a higher-type version of Nelson's idealization principle [119]:

$$I : \forall^{\text{st}} x^{\sigma^*} \exists y^{\tau} \forall x' \in_{\sigma} x \varphi(x', y) \rightarrow \exists y^{\tau} \forall^{\text{st}} x^{\sigma} \varphi(x, y).$$

Proposition 5.21. [125] *In $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega^*}$, the idealization principle I implies overspill, as well as the statement that for every type σ there is a nonstandard sequence containing all the standard elements of that type:*

$$\text{USEQ} : \exists y^{\sigma^*} \forall^{\text{st}} x^{\sigma} x \in_{\sigma} y.$$

Proposition 5.22 ([157]). *In $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega^*}$, the idealization principle I implies the existence of non-standard elements of any type,*

$$\text{ENS} : \exists x^{\sigma} \neg \text{st}(x),$$

as well as LLPO^{st} for any type:

$$\text{LLPO}^{\text{st}} : \forall^{\text{st}} x^{\sigma}, y^{\sigma} (\varphi(x) \vee \psi(y)) \rightarrow \forall^{\text{st}} x^{\sigma} \varphi(x) \vee \forall^{\text{st}} y^{\sigma} \psi(y).$$

Of course, classically (intuitionistically, things are not so clear), idealization is equivalent to its dual

$$R : \forall y^{\tau} \exists^{\text{st}} x^{\sigma} \varphi(x, y) \rightarrow \exists^{\text{st}} x^{\sigma^*} \forall y^{\tau} \exists x' \in x \varphi(x', y),$$

which was dubbed the *realization principle* in [157].

Our interpretation for constructive nonstandard analysis actually eliminates the stronger *nonclassical realization principle*:

$$\text{NCR} : \forall y^{\tau} \exists^{\text{st}} x^{\sigma} \Phi(x, y) \rightarrow \exists^{\text{st}} x^{\sigma^*} \forall y^{\tau} \exists x' \in x \Phi(x', y),$$

where $\Phi(x, y)$ can be any formula. This is quite remarkable, as NCR is incompatible with classical logic (hence the name) in that one can prove:

Proposition 5.23 ([157]). *In $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega^*}$, the nonclassical realization principle NCR implies the undecidability of the standardness predicate:*

$$\neg \forall x^{\sigma} (\text{st}(x) \vee \neg \text{st}(x)).$$

Underspill

Underspill (in type 0) is the following statement:

$$\text{US}_0 : \forall x^0 (\neg \text{st}(x) \rightarrow \varphi(x)) \rightarrow \exists^{\text{st}} x^0 \varphi(x).$$

In a constructive context it has the following nontrivial consequence (compare [12]):

Proposition 5.24 ([157]). *In $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega^*}$, the underspill principle US_0 implies*

$$\text{MP}_0^{\text{st}} : (\forall^{\text{st}} x^0 (\varphi(x) \vee \neg \varphi(x)) \wedge \neg \neg \exists^{\text{st}} x^0 \varphi(x)) \rightarrow \exists^{\text{st}} x^0 \varphi(x).$$

In particular, $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega^} + \text{US}_0 \vdash \neg \neg \text{st}^0(x) \rightarrow \text{st}^0(x)$.*

Also underspill has a direct generalization to higher types:

$$\text{US} : \forall x^{\sigma} (\neg \text{st}(x) \rightarrow \varphi(x)) \rightarrow \exists^{\text{st}} x^{\sigma} \varphi(x).$$

Transfer

Following Nelson [119], the transfer principle is usually formulated as follows:

$$\text{TP}_\forall : \forall^{\text{st}} \underline{t} (\forall^{\text{st}} x \varphi(x, \underline{t}) \rightarrow \forall x \varphi(x, \underline{t})),$$

where, this time, x and \underline{t} include all free variables of the formula φ . This is classically, but not intuitionistically, equivalent to the following:

$$\text{TP}_\exists : \forall^{\text{st}} \underline{t} (\exists x \varphi(x, \underline{t}) \rightarrow \exists^{\text{st}} x \varphi(x, \underline{t})),$$

where, once again, we do not allow parameters.

Interpreting transfer is very difficult, especially in a constructive context (in fact, Avigad and Helzner have devoted an entire paper [12] to this issue). In [157], we discuss three problems as follows:

1. Transfer principles together with overspill imply instances of the law of excluded middle, as was first shown by Moerdijk and Palmgren in [118]. In our setting we have:

Proposition 5.25 ([157]). *(a) In $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$, the combination of ENS_0 and TP_\forall implies the law of excluded middle for all internal arithmetical formulas.*

(b) In $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega}$, the combination of USEQ and TP_\forall implies the law of excluded middle for all internal formulas.*

2. As Avigad and Helzner observe in [12], also the combination of transfer principles with underspill results in a system which is no longer conservative over Heyting arithmetic. More precisely, adding US_0 and TP_\forall , or US_0 and TP_\exists , to $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ results in a system which is no longer conservative over Heyting arithmetic HA . The reason is that there are quantifier-free formulas $A(x)$ such that

$$\text{HA} \not\vdash \neg\neg\exists x A(x) \rightarrow \exists x A(x).$$

Since one can prove a version of Markov's Principle in $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*} + \text{US}_0$, adding either TP_\forall or TP_\exists to it would result in a nonconservative extension of HA (and hence of $\text{E-HA}^{\omega*}$). We refer to [12] for more details.

3. The last point applies to functional interpretations only. As is well-known, in the context of functional interpretations the axiom of extensionality always presents a serious problem and when developing a functional interpretation of nonstandard arithmetic, the situation is no different. Now, $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ includes an internal axiom of extensionality (as it is part of $\text{E-HA}^{\omega*}$), but for the functional interpretation that we will introduce in Section 5 that will be harmless. What will be very problematic for us, however, is the following version of the axiom of extensionality: if for two elements f, g of type $\sigma_1 \rightarrow (\sigma_2 \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow 0)$, we define

$$f =^{\text{st}} g := \forall^{\text{st}} x_1^{\sigma_1}, x_2^{\sigma_2}, \dots (f \underline{x} =_0 g \underline{x}),$$

then extensionality formulated as

$$\forall^{\text{st}} f \forall^{\text{st}} x, y (x =^{\text{st}} y \rightarrow fx =^{\text{st}} fy)$$

will have no witness definable in ZFC. But that means that also TP_\forall can have no witness definable in ZFC: for in the presence of TP_\forall both versions of extensionality are equivalent.

To cope with this, we follow the route taken in most sources (beginning with [117]), to have transfer not as a principle, but as a *rule*. As we will see, this turns out to be feasible. In fact, we will have two transfer rules (which are not equivalent, not even classically):

$$\frac{\forall^{\text{st}} x \varphi(x)}{\forall x \varphi(x)} \text{TR}_{\forall} \quad \frac{\exists x \varphi(x)}{\exists^{\text{st}} x \varphi(x)} \text{TR}_{\exists}$$

(this time, no special requirements on the parameters).

5.3 A functional interpretation for $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$

In this section we will define and study a functional interpretation for $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ introduced in [157].

The interpretation

The basic idea of the D_{st} -interpretation (the nonstandard Dialectica interpretation) is to associate to every formula $\Phi(\underline{a})$ a new formula $\Phi(\underline{a})^{D_{\text{st}}} \equiv \exists^{\text{st}} \underline{x} \forall^{\text{st}} \underline{y} \varphi_{D_{\text{st}}}(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a})$ such that

1. all variables in \underline{x} are of sequence type and
2. $\varphi_{D_{\text{st}}}(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a})$ is upwards closed in \underline{x} .

We will interpret the standardness predicate st^σ similarly to the case for Herbrand realizability: For a realizer for the interpretation of $\text{st}^\sigma(x)$ we will require a standard finite list $\langle y_0, \dots, y_n \rangle$ of candidates, one of which must be equal to x .

Definition 5.26 (The D_{st} -interpretation for $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$, [157]). We associate to every formula $\Phi(\underline{a})$ in the language of $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ (with free variables among \underline{a}) a formula $\Phi(\underline{a})^{D_{\text{st}}} \equiv \exists^{\text{st}} \underline{x} \forall^{\text{st}} \underline{y} \varphi_{D_{\text{st}}}(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a})$ in the same language (with the same free variables) by:

- (i) $\varphi(\underline{a})^{D_{\text{st}}} \equiv \varphi_{D_{\text{st}}}(\underline{a}) \equiv \varphi(\underline{a})$ for internal atomic formulas $\varphi(\underline{a})$,
- (ii) $\text{st}^\sigma(u^\sigma)^{D_{\text{st}}} \equiv \exists^{\text{st}} \underline{x} \forall^{\text{st}} \underline{y} u \in_\sigma x$.

Let $\Phi(\underline{a})^{D_{\text{st}}} \equiv \exists^{\text{st}} \underline{x} \forall^{\text{st}} \underline{y} \varphi_{D_{\text{st}}}(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a})$ and $\Psi(\underline{b})^{D_{\text{st}}} \equiv \exists^{\text{st}} \underline{u} \forall^{\text{st}} \underline{v} \psi_{D_{\text{st}}}(\underline{u}, \underline{v}, \underline{b})$. Then

- (iii) $(\Phi(\underline{a}) \wedge \Psi(\underline{b}))^{D_{\text{st}}} \equiv \exists^{\text{st}} \underline{x}, \underline{u} \forall^{\text{st}} \underline{y}, \underline{v} (\varphi_{D_{\text{st}}}(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a}) \wedge \psi_{D_{\text{st}}}(\underline{u}, \underline{v}, \underline{b}))$,
- (iv) $(\Phi(\underline{a}) \vee \Psi(\underline{b}))^{D_{\text{st}}} \equiv \exists^{\text{st}} \underline{x}, \underline{u} \forall^{\text{st}} \underline{y}, \underline{v} (\varphi_{D_{\text{st}}}(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a}) \vee \psi_{D_{\text{st}}}(\underline{u}, \underline{v}, \underline{b}))$,
- (v) $(\Phi(\underline{a}) \rightarrow \Psi(\underline{b}))^{D_{\text{st}}} \equiv \exists^{\text{st}} \underline{U}, \underline{Y} \forall^{\text{st}} \underline{x}, \underline{v} (\forall \underline{y} \in \underline{Y}[\underline{x}, \underline{v}] \varphi_{D_{\text{st}}}(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a}) \rightarrow \psi_{D_{\text{st}}}(\underline{U}[\underline{x}], \underline{v}, \underline{b}))$.

Let $\Phi(\underline{z}, \underline{a})^{D_{\text{st}}} \equiv \exists^{\text{st}} \underline{x} \forall^{\text{st}} \underline{y} \varphi_{D_{\text{st}}}(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{z}, \underline{a})$, with the free variable \underline{z} not occurring among the \underline{a} . Then

- (vi) $(\forall \underline{z} \Phi(\underline{z}, \underline{a}))^{D_{\text{st}}} \equiv \exists^{\text{st}} \underline{x} \forall^{\text{st}} \underline{y} \forall \underline{z} \varphi_{D_{\text{st}}}(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{z}, \underline{a})$,
- (vii) $(\exists \underline{z} \Phi(\underline{z}, \underline{a}))^{D_{\text{st}}} \equiv \exists^{\text{st}} \underline{x} \forall^{\text{st}} \underline{y} \exists \underline{z} \forall \underline{y}' \in \underline{y} \varphi_{D_{\text{st}}}(\underline{x}, \underline{y}', \underline{z}, \underline{a})$,
- (viii) $(\forall^{\text{st}} \underline{z} \Phi(\underline{z}, \underline{a}))^{D_{\text{st}}} \equiv \exists^{\text{st}} \underline{X} \forall^{\text{st}} \underline{z}, \underline{y} \varphi_{D_{\text{st}}}(\underline{X}[\underline{z}], \underline{y}, \underline{z}, \underline{a})$,
- (ix) $(\exists^{\text{st}} \underline{z} \Phi(\underline{z}, \underline{a}))^{D_{\text{st}}} \equiv \exists^{\text{st}} \underline{x}, \underline{z} \forall^{\text{st}} \underline{y} \exists \underline{z}' \in \underline{z} \forall \underline{y}' \in \underline{y} \varphi_{D_{\text{st}}}(\underline{x}, \underline{y}', \underline{z}', \underline{a})$.

Definition 5.27 ([157]). We say that a formula Φ is a \forall^{st} -formula if $\Phi \equiv \forall^{\text{st}} \underline{x} \varphi(\underline{x})$, with $\varphi(\underline{x})$ internal.

Lemma 5.28 ([157]). Let Φ be a \forall^{st} -formula. Then $\Phi^{D_{\text{st}}} \equiv \Phi$.

Note that the clause for $\exists^{\text{st}} z$ causes the interpretation to be not idempotent and that realizers are upwards closed:

Lemma 5.29 ([157]). Let $\Phi(\underline{a})$ be a formula in the language of $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ with interpretation $\exists^{\text{st}} \underline{x} \forall^{\text{st}} \underline{y} \varphi_{D_{\text{st}}}(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a})$. Then the formula $\varphi_{D_{\text{st}}}(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a})$ is provably upwards closed in \underline{x} , i.e.,

$$\text{E-HA}^{\omega*} \vdash \varphi_{D_{\text{st}}}(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a}) \wedge \underline{x} \preceq \underline{x}' \rightarrow \varphi_{D_{\text{st}}}(\underline{x}', \underline{y}, \underline{a}).$$

The D_{st} -interpretation will allow us to interpret the nonclassical realization principle NCR, and also both I and HAC. Additionally we will be able to interpret a herbrandized independence of premise principle for formulas of the form $\forall^{\text{st}} x \varphi(x)$, and also a herbrandized form of a generalized Markov's principle:

1. $\text{HIP}_{\forall^{\text{st}}}$:

$$(\forall^{\text{st}} x \varphi(x) \rightarrow \exists^{\text{st}} y \Psi(y)) \rightarrow \exists^{\text{st}} y (\forall^{\text{st}} x \varphi(x) \rightarrow \exists y' \in y \Psi(y')),$$

where $\Psi(y)$ is a formula in the language of $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ and $\varphi(x)$ is an internal formula. If $\Psi(y)$ is upwards closed in y , then this is equivalent to

$$(\forall^{\text{st}} x \varphi(x) \rightarrow \exists^{\text{st}} y \Psi(y)) \rightarrow \exists^{\text{st}} y (\forall^{\text{st}} x \varphi(x) \rightarrow \Psi(y)).$$

2. HGMP^{st} :

$$(\forall^{\text{st}} x \varphi(x) \rightarrow \psi) \rightarrow \exists^{\text{st}} x (\forall x' \in x \varphi(x') \rightarrow \psi),$$

where $\varphi(x)$ and ψ are internal formulas in the language of $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$. If $\varphi(x)$ is downwards closed in x , then this is equivalent to

$$(\forall^{\text{st}} x \varphi(x) \rightarrow \psi) \rightarrow \exists^{\text{st}} x (\varphi(x) \rightarrow \psi).$$

The latter gives us a form of Markov's principle by taking $\psi \equiv 0 =_0 1$ and $\varphi(x) \equiv \neg \varphi_0(x)$ (with $\varphi_0(x)$ internal and quantifier-free), whence the name.

Theorem 5.30 (Soundness of the D_{st} -interpretation, [157]). Let $\Phi(\underline{a})$ be a formula of $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ and let Δ_{int} be a set of internal sentences. If

$$\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*} + \text{I} + \text{NCR} + \text{HAC} + \text{HGMP}^{\text{st}} + \text{HIP}_{\forall^{\text{st}}} + \Delta_{\text{int}} \vdash \Phi(\underline{a})$$

and $\Phi(\underline{a})^{D_{\text{st}}} \equiv \exists^{\text{st}} \underline{x} \forall^{\text{st}} \underline{y} \varphi_{D_{\text{st}}}(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a})$, then from the proof we can extract closed terms \underline{t} in \mathcal{T}^* such that

$$\text{E-HA}^{\omega*} + \Delta_{\text{int}} \vdash \forall \underline{y} \varphi_{D_{\text{st}}}(\underline{t}, \underline{y}, \underline{a}).$$

Remark. We could define a system $\text{E-HA}_{\text{nst}}^{\omega*}$ by adding primitive predicates nst^σ ("non-standard") to $\text{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ for each finite type σ , along with axioms

$$\forall x^\sigma (\text{nst}(x) \leftrightarrow \neg \text{st}(x)).$$

If we then extend the D_{st} -interpretation by

$$(\text{nst}^\sigma(x^\sigma))^{D_{\text{st}}} \equiv \forall^{\text{st}} y^\sigma y \neq_\sigma x,$$

we get an analogue of Theorem 5.30, since $(\text{nst}(x) \rightarrow \neg \text{st}(x))^{D_{\text{st}}}$ is provably equivalent to

$$\exists^{\text{st}} Y \forall^{\text{st}} z (\forall y \in Y[z] (y \neq x) \rightarrow x \notin z)$$

and $(\neg \text{st}(x) \rightarrow \text{nst}(x))^{D_{\text{st}}}$ to

$$\exists^{\text{st}} Z \forall^{\text{st}} y (\forall z' \in Z[y] x \notin z' \rightarrow y \neq x),$$

so that we can take $Y[z] := z$ and $Z[y] := \langle \langle y \rangle \rangle$ respectively.

The characteristic principles of the nonstandard functional interpretation

In [157] we proved that the characteristic principles of the nonstandard functional interpretation are I, NCR, HAC, $\text{HIP}_{\forall^{\text{st}}}$, and HGMP^{st} . For notational simplicity we will let

$$\mathbf{H} := \mathbf{E}\text{-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*} + \mathbf{I} + \mathbf{NCR} + \mathbf{HAC} + \mathbf{HIP}_{\forall^{\text{st}}} + \mathbf{HGMP}^{\text{st}}.$$

Theorem 5.31 (Characterization theorem for the nonstandard functional interpretation, [157]).

1. For any formula Φ in the language of $\mathbf{E}\text{-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ we have

$$\mathbf{H} \vdash \Phi \leftrightarrow \Phi^{D_{\text{st}}}.$$

2. For any formula Ψ in the language of $\mathbf{E}\text{-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ we have: If for all Φ in $\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{E}\text{-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*})$ (with $\Phi^{D_{\text{st}}} \equiv \exists^{\text{st}} \underline{x} \forall^{\text{st}} \underline{y} \varphi_{D_{\text{st}}}(\underline{x}, \underline{y})$) the implication

$$\mathbf{H} + \Psi \vdash \Phi \implies \text{there are closed terms } \underline{t} \in \mathcal{T}^* \text{ s.t. } \mathbf{E}\text{-HA}^{\omega} \vdash \forall \underline{y} \varphi_{D_{\text{st}}}(\underline{t}, \underline{y}) \quad (9)$$

holds, then $\mathbf{H} \vdash \Psi$.

Theorem 5.30 allows us to extract a finite sequence of candidates for the existential quantifier in formulas of the form $\forall^{\text{st}} x \exists^{\text{st}} y \varphi(x, y)$, in the following sense:

Theorem 5.32 (Main theorem on program extraction by the D_{st} -interpretation, [157]). Let $\forall^{\text{st}} x \exists^{\text{st}} y \varphi(x, y)$ be a sentence of $\mathbf{E}\text{-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ with $\varphi(x, y)$ an internal formula, and let Δ_{int} be a set of internal sentences. If

$$\mathbf{E}\text{-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*} + \mathbf{I} + \mathbf{NCR} + \mathbf{HAC} + \mathbf{HGMP}^{\text{st}} + \mathbf{HIP}_{\forall^{\text{st}}} + \Delta_{\text{int}} \vdash \forall^{\text{st}} x \exists^{\text{st}} y \varphi(x, y),$$

then from the proof we can extract a closed term t in \mathcal{T}^* such that

$$\mathbf{E}\text{-HA}^{\omega*} + \Delta_{\text{int}} \vdash \forall x \exists y \in t(x) \varphi(x, y).$$

It follows from the soundness of the D_{st} -interpretation (Theorem 5.30) that it can be used to eliminate nonstandard principles, like overspill, realization and idealization, from proofs. It also allows one to eliminate underspill, since we have the following result (recall that \mathbf{R} is the realization principle from Section 4.1):

Proposition 5.33 ([157]). We have

$$\mathbf{E}\text{-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*} + \mathbf{R} + \mathbf{HGMP}^{\text{st}} \vdash \mathbf{US},$$

and therefore the underspill principle \mathbf{US} is eliminated by the D_{st} -interpretation.

We also have:

Proposition 5.34 ([157]). The system $\mathbf{H} \equiv \mathbf{E}\text{-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*} + \mathbf{I} + \mathbf{NCR} + \mathbf{HAC} + \mathbf{HGMP}^{\text{st}} + \mathbf{HIP}_{\forall^{\text{st}}}$ is closed under both transfer rules, TR_{\forall} and TR_{\exists} .

5.4 The system $E\text{-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ and negative translation

By combining the functional interpretation from the previous section with negative translation we can obtain conservation and term extraction results for classical systems as well. We will work out the details in this and the next section.

First, we need to set up a suitable classical system $E\text{-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$. It will be an extension of $E\text{-PA}^{\omega*}$, which is $E\text{-HA}^{\omega*}$ with the law of excluded middle added for all formulas. When working with classical systems, we will often take the logical connectives \neg, \vee, \forall as primitive and regard the others as defined. In a similar spirit, the language of $E\text{-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ will be that of $E\text{-PA}^{\omega*}$ extended just with unary predicates st^σ for every type $\sigma \in T^*$; the external quantifiers $\forall^{\text{st}}, \exists^{\text{st}}$ are regarded as abbreviations:

$$\begin{aligned}\forall^{\text{st}}x \Phi(x) &::= \forall x (\text{st}(x) \rightarrow \Phi(x)), \\ \exists^{\text{st}}x \Phi(x) &::= \exists x (\text{st}(x) \wedge \Phi(x)).\end{aligned}$$

Definition 5.35 ($E\text{-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$). The system $E\text{-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ is

$$E\text{-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*} := E\text{-PA}^{\omega*} + \mathcal{T}_{\text{st}}^* + \text{IA}^{\text{st}}$$

where

- $\mathcal{T}_{\text{st}}^*$ consists of:
 1. the schema $\text{st}(x) \wedge x = y \rightarrow \text{st}(y)$,
 2. a schema providing for each closed term t in \mathcal{T}^* the axiom $\text{st}(t)$,
 3. the schema $\text{st}(f) \wedge \text{st}(x) \rightarrow \text{st}(fx)$.
- IA^{st} is the external induction axiom:

$$\text{IA}^{\text{st}} : (\Phi(0) \wedge \forall^{\text{st}}n^0 (\Phi(n) \rightarrow \Phi(n+1))) \rightarrow \forall^{\text{st}}n^0 \Phi(n).$$

Again we warn the reader that the induction axiom from $E\text{-PA}^{\omega*}$

$$(\varphi(0) \wedge \forall n^0 (\varphi(n) \rightarrow \varphi(n+1))) \rightarrow \forall n^0 \varphi(n)$$

is supposed to apply to internal formulas φ only.

As for $E\text{-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$, we have:

Proposition 5.36. *If a formula Φ is provable in $E\text{-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$, then its internalization Φ^{int} is provable in $E\text{-PA}^{\omega*}$. Hence $E\text{-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ is a conservative extension of $E\text{-PA}^{\omega*}$ and $E\text{-PA}^\omega$.*

We will now show how negative translation provides an interpretation of $E\text{-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ in $E\text{-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$. Various negative translations exist, with the one due to Gödel and Gentzen being the most well-known. Here, we work with two variants, the first of which is due to Kuroda [110].

Definition 5.37 (Kuroda's negative translation for $E\text{-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$). For an arbitrary formula Φ in the language of $E\text{-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$, we define its Kuroda negative translation in $E\text{-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ as

$$\Phi^{\text{Ku}} ::= \neg\neg\Phi_{\text{Ku}},$$

where Φ_{Ku} is defined inductively on the structure of Φ as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\Phi_{Ku} &:= \Phi \quad \text{for atomic formulas } \Phi, \\ (\neg\Phi)_{Ku} &:= \neg\Phi_{Ku}, \\ (\Phi \vee \Psi)_{Ku} &:= \Phi_{Ku} \vee \Psi_{Ku}, \\ (\forall x \Phi(x))_{Ku} &:= \forall x \neg\neg\Phi_{Ku}(x).\end{aligned}$$

Theorem 5.38. $E\text{-PA}_{st}^{\omega*} \vdash \Phi \leftrightarrow \Phi^{Ku}$ and if $E\text{-PA}_{st}^{\omega*} + \Delta \vdash \Phi$ then $E\text{-HA}_{st}^{\omega*} + \Delta^{Ku} \vdash \Phi^{Ku}$.

Proof. It is clear that, classically, Φ , Φ_{Ku} and Φ^{Ku} are all equivalent. The second statement is proved by induction on the proof of $E\text{-PA}_{st}^{\omega*} + \Delta \vdash \Phi$. For the cases of the axioms and rules of classical logic and $E\text{-PA}^{\omega*}$, see, for instance, [88, Proposition 10.3]. As the Kuroda negative translation of every instance of \mathcal{T}_{st}^* or IA^{st} is provable in $E\text{-HA}_{st}^{\omega*}$ using the same instance of \mathcal{T}_{st}^* or IA^{st} , the statement is proved. \square

It will turn out to be convenient to introduce a second negative translation, extracted from the work of Krivine by Streicher and Reus (see [108, 148, 147]). This translation will interpret $E\text{-PA}_{st}^{\omega*}$ into $E\text{-HA}_{nst}^{\omega*}$ (see Remark 5.3).

Definition 5.39 (Krivine's negative translation for $E\text{-PA}_{st}^{\omega*}$). For an arbitrary formula Φ in the language of $E\text{-PA}_{st}^{\omega*}$, we define its Krivine negative translation in $E\text{-HA}_{nst}^{\omega*}$ as

$$\Phi^{Kr} := \neg\Phi_{Kr},$$

where Φ_{Kr} is defined inductively on the structure of Φ as follows

$$\begin{aligned}\varphi_{Kr} &:= \neg\varphi \quad \text{for an internal atomic formula } \varphi, \\ \text{st}(x)_{Kr} &:= \text{nst}(x), \\ (\neg\Phi)_{Kr} &:= \neg\Phi_{Kr}, \\ (\Phi \vee \Psi)_{Kr} &:= \Phi_{Kr} \wedge \Psi_{Kr}, \\ (\forall x \Phi(x))_{Kr} &:= \exists x \Phi_{Kr}(x).\end{aligned}$$

Theorem 5.40. For every formula Φ in the language of $E\text{-PA}_{st}^{\omega*}$, we have:

1. $E\text{-HA}_{nst}^{\omega*} \vdash \Phi^{Kr} \leftrightarrow \Phi^{Ku}$.
2. If $E\text{-PA}_{st}^{\omega*} + \Delta \vdash \Phi$, then $E\text{-HA}_{nst}^{\omega*} + \Delta^{Kr} \vdash \Phi^{Kr}$.

Proof. Item 1 is easily proved by induction on the structure of Φ . Item 2 follows from item 1 and Theorem 5.38. \square

5.5 A functional interpretation for $E\text{-PA}_{st}^{\omega*}$

We will now combine negative translation and our functional interpretation D_{st} to obtain a functional interpretation of the classical system $E\text{-PA}_{st}^{\omega*}$.

The interpretation

Definition 5.41. (S_{st} -interpretation for $\text{E-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$.) To each formula $\Phi(\underline{a})$ with free variables \underline{a} in the language of $\text{E-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ we associate its S_{st} -interpretation

$$\Phi^{S_{\text{st}}}(\underline{a}) := \forall^{\text{st}} \underline{x} \exists^{\text{st}} \underline{y} \varphi_S(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a}),$$

where φ_S is an internal formula. Moreover, \underline{x} and \underline{y} are tuples of variables whose length and types depend only on the logical structure of Φ . The interpretation of the formula is defined inductively on its structure. If

$$\Phi^{S_{\text{st}}}(\underline{a}) := \forall^{\text{st}} \underline{x} \exists^{\text{st}} \underline{y} \varphi_S(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a}) \text{ and } \Psi^{S_{\text{st}}}(\underline{b}) := \forall^{\text{st}} \underline{u} \exists^{\text{st}} \underline{v} \psi_S(\underline{u}, \underline{v}, \underline{b}),$$

then

- (i) $\varphi^{S_{\text{st}}} := \varphi$ for atomic internal $\varphi(\underline{a})$,
- (ii) $(\text{st}(z))^{S_{\text{st}}} := \exists^{\text{st}} x (z = x)$,
- (iii) $(\neg \Phi)^{S_{\text{st}}} := \forall^{\text{st}} \underline{y} \exists^{\text{st}} \underline{x} \forall y \in \underline{y} [\underline{x}] \neg \varphi_S(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a})$,
- (iv) $(\Phi \vee \Psi)^{S_{\text{st}}} := \forall^{\text{st}} \underline{x}, \underline{u} \exists^{\text{st}} \underline{y}, \underline{v} (\varphi_S(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a}) \vee \psi_S(\underline{u}, \underline{v}, \underline{b}))$,
- (v) $(\forall z \varphi)^{S_{\text{st}}} := \forall^{\text{st}} \underline{x} \exists^{\text{st}} \underline{y} \forall z \exists y' \in \underline{y} \varphi_S(\underline{x}, \underline{y}', z)$.

Theorem 5.42. (Soundness of the S_{st} -interpretation.) Let $\Phi(\underline{a})$ be a formula in the language of $\text{E-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ and suppose $\Phi(\underline{a})^{S_{\text{st}}} \equiv \forall^{\text{st}} \underline{x} \exists^{\text{st}} \underline{y} \varphi(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a})$. If Δ_{int} is a collection of internal formulas and

$$\text{E-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*} + \Delta_{\text{int}} \vdash \Phi(\underline{a}),$$

then one can extract from the formal proof a sequence of closed terms \underline{t} in \mathcal{T}^* such that

$$\text{E-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*} + \Delta_{\text{int}} \vdash \forall \underline{x} \exists \underline{y} \in \underline{t}(\underline{x}) \varphi(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a}).$$

Our proof of this theorem relies on the following lemma:

Lemma 5.43. Let $\Phi(\underline{a})$ be a formula in the language of $\text{E-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ and assume

$$\begin{aligned} \Phi^{S_{\text{st}}} &\equiv \forall^{\text{st}} \underline{x} \exists^{\text{st}} \underline{y} \varphi(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a}) \text{ and} \\ (\Phi_{\text{Kr}})^{D_{\text{st}}} &\equiv \exists^{\text{st}} \underline{u} \forall^{\text{st}} \underline{v} \theta(\underline{u}, \underline{v}, \underline{a}). \end{aligned}$$

Then the tuples \underline{x} and \underline{u} have the same length and the variables they contain have the same types. The same applies to \underline{y} and \underline{v} . In addition, we have

$$\text{E-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*} \vdash \varphi(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a}) \leftrightarrow \neg \theta(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a}).$$

Proof. The proof is by induction on the structure of Φ .

- (i) If $\Phi \equiv \psi$, an internal and atomic formula, then $\varphi \equiv \psi$ and $\theta \equiv \neg \psi$, so $\text{E-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*} \vdash \varphi \leftrightarrow \neg \theta$.
- (ii) If $\Phi \equiv \text{st}(z)$, then $\varphi \equiv y = z$ and $\theta \equiv y \neq z$, so $\text{E-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*} \vdash \varphi \leftrightarrow \neg \theta$.

(iii) If $\Phi \equiv \neg\Phi'$ with $(\Phi')^{S_{st}} \equiv \forall^{\text{st}}\underline{x}\exists^{\text{st}}\underline{y}\varphi'(\underline{x},\underline{y},\underline{a})$ and $(\Phi'_{Kr})^{D_{st}} \equiv \exists^{\text{st}}\underline{u}\forall^{\text{st}}\underline{v}\theta'(\underline{u},\underline{v},\underline{a})$, then $\varphi \equiv \forall\underline{y}' \in \underline{Y}[\underline{x}] \neg\varphi'(\underline{x},\underline{y}')$ and $\theta \equiv \neg\forall\underline{i} \in \underline{Y}[\underline{x}] \theta'(\underline{x},\underline{i})$. Since $\mathbf{E-PA}^{\omega*} \vdash \varphi' \leftrightarrow \neg\theta'$ by induction hypothesis, also $\mathbf{E-PA}^{\omega*} \vdash \varphi \leftrightarrow \neg\theta$.

(iv) If $\Phi \equiv \Phi_0 \vee \Phi_1$ with

$$\Phi_i^{S_{st}} \equiv \forall^{\text{st}}\underline{x}\exists^{\text{st}}\underline{y}\varphi_i(\underline{x},\underline{y},\underline{a})$$

and

$$((\Phi_i)_{Kr})^{D_{st}} \equiv \exists^{\text{st}}\underline{u}\forall^{\text{st}}\underline{v}\theta_i(\underline{u},\underline{v},\underline{a}),$$

then $\varphi \equiv \varphi_0 \vee \varphi_1$ and $\theta \equiv \theta_0 \wedge \theta_1$. Since $\mathbf{E-PA}^{\omega*} \vdash \varphi_i \leftrightarrow \neg\theta_i$ by induction hypothesis, also $\mathbf{E-PA}^{\omega*} \vdash \varphi \leftrightarrow \neg\theta$.

(v) If $\Phi \equiv \forall z \Phi'$ with

$$(\Phi')^{S_{st}} \equiv \forall^{\text{st}}\underline{x}\exists^{\text{st}}\underline{y}\varphi'(\underline{x},\underline{y},z,\underline{a})$$

and

$$(\Phi'_{Kr})^{D_{st}} \equiv \exists^{\text{st}}\underline{u}\forall^{\text{st}}\underline{v}\theta'(\underline{u},\underline{v},z,\underline{a}),$$

then $\varphi \equiv \forall z \exists \underline{y}' \in \underline{y} \varphi'(\underline{x},\underline{y}',z,\underline{a})$ and $\theta \equiv \exists z \forall \underline{y}' \in \underline{y} \theta'(\underline{x},\underline{y}',z,\underline{a})$. Since $\mathbf{E-PA}^{\omega*} \vdash \varphi' \leftrightarrow \neg\theta'$ by induction hypothesis, also $\mathbf{E-PA}^{\omega*} \vdash \varphi \leftrightarrow \neg\theta$.

□

Remark. This lemma is the reason why we introduced the system $\mathbf{E-HA}_{\text{nst}}^{\omega*}$ in Remark 5.3: it would fail if we would let the Krivine negative translation land directly in $\mathbf{E-HA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ with $\text{st}(z)_{Kr} = \neg\text{st}(z)$. As it is, this lemma yields a quick proof of the soundness of the S_{st} -interpretation.

Proof. (Of the soundness of the S_{st} -interpretation, Theorem 5.42.) Let $\Phi(\underline{a})$ be a formula in the language of $\mathbf{E-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ and let φ and θ be such that

$$\begin{aligned} \Phi^{S_{st}} &\equiv \forall^{\text{st}}\underline{x}\exists^{\text{st}}\underline{y}\varphi(\underline{x},\underline{y},\underline{a}), \\ (\Phi_{Kr})^{D_{st}} &\equiv \exists^{\text{st}}\underline{x}\forall^{\text{st}}\underline{y}\theta(\underline{x},\underline{y},\underline{a}) \end{aligned}$$

and $\mathbf{E-PA}^{\omega*} \vdash \varphi \leftrightarrow \neg\theta$, as in Lemma 5.43.

Now, suppose that Δ_{int} is a set of internal formulas and $\Phi(\underline{a})$ is a formula provable in $\mathbf{E-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ from Δ_{int} . We first apply soundness of the Krivine negative translation (Theorem 5.40) to see that

$$\mathbf{E-HA}_{\text{nst}}^{\omega*} + \Delta_{\text{int}}^{\text{Kr}} \vdash \Phi^{\text{Kr}},$$

where $\Phi^{\text{Kr}} \equiv \neg\Phi_{Kr}$. So if $(\Phi_{Kr})^{D_{st}} \equiv \exists^{\text{st}}\underline{x}\forall^{\text{st}}\underline{y}\theta(\underline{x},\underline{y},\underline{a})$, then

$$(\Phi^{\text{Kr}})^{D_{st}} \equiv \exists^{\text{st}}\underline{y}\forall^{\text{st}}\underline{x}\exists \underline{y} \in \underline{Y}[\underline{x}] \neg\theta(\underline{x},\underline{y},\underline{a}).$$

It follows from the soundness theorem for D_{st} (Theorem 5.30) and Remark 5.3 that there is a sequence of closed terms \underline{s} from \mathcal{T}^* such that

$$\mathbf{E-HA}^{\omega*} + \Delta_{\text{int}}^{\text{Kr}} \vdash \forall \underline{x}\exists \underline{y} \in \underline{s}[\underline{x}] \neg\theta(\underline{x},\underline{y},\underline{a}).$$

Since $\mathbf{E-PA}^{\omega*} \vdash \Delta_{\text{int}}^{\text{Kr}} \leftrightarrow \Delta_{\text{int}}$ and $\mathbf{E-PA}^{\omega*} \vdash \varphi \leftrightarrow \neg\theta$ we have

$$\mathbf{E-PA}^{\omega*} + \Delta_{\text{int}} \vdash \forall \underline{x}\exists \underline{y} \in \underline{t}(\underline{x}) \varphi(\underline{x},\underline{y},\underline{a}),$$

with $\underline{t} \equiv \lambda \underline{x}.\underline{s}[\underline{x}]$.

□

Characteristic principles

The characteristic principles of our functional interpretation for classical arithmetic are idealization I (or, equivalently, R: see Section 4.1) and HAC_{int}

$$\forall^{\text{st}}x \exists^{\text{st}}y \varphi(x, y) \rightarrow \exists^{\text{st}}F \forall^{\text{st}}x \exists y \in F(x) \varphi(x, y),$$

which is the choice scheme HAC restricted to internal formulas. To see this, note first of all that we have:

Proposition 5.44. *For any formula Φ in the language of $E\text{-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ one has:*

$$E\text{-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*} + I + \text{HAC}_{\text{int}} \vdash \Phi \leftrightarrow \Phi^{\text{S}_{\text{st}}}.$$

Proof. An easy proof by induction on the structure of Φ , using HAC_{int} for the case of negation and I (or rather R) in the case of internal universal quantification. \square

For the purpose of showing that I and HAC_{int} are interpreted, it will be convenient to consider the “hybrid” system $E\text{-HA}_{\text{nst}}^{\omega*} + \Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}_{\text{int}}$, where $\Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}_{\text{int}}$ is the law of excluded middle for internal formulas. For this hybrid system we have the following easy lemma, whose proof we omit:

Lemma 5.45. *We have:*

1. $E\text{-HA}_{\text{nst}}^{\omega*} + \Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}_{\text{int}} \vdash \varphi^{\text{Ku}} \leftrightarrow \varphi$, if φ is an internal formula in the language of $E\text{-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$.
2. $E\text{-HA}_{\text{nst}}^{\omega*} + \Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}_{\text{int}} + I \vdash I^{\text{Ku}}$.
3. $E\text{-HA}_{\text{nst}}^{\omega*} + \Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}_{\text{int}} + \text{HAC}_{\text{int}} + \text{HGMP}^{\text{st}} \vdash \text{HAC}_{\text{int}}^{\text{Ku}}$.

This means we can strengthen Theorem 5.42 to:

Theorem 5.46. (Soundness of the S_{st} -interpretation, full version.) *Let $\Phi(a)$ be a formula in the language of $E\text{-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ and suppose $\Phi(a)^{\text{S}_{\text{st}}} \equiv \forall^{\text{st}}x \exists^{\text{st}}y \varphi(x, y, a)$. If Δ_{int} is a collection of internal formulas and*

$$E\text{-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*} + I + \text{HAC}_{\text{int}} + \Delta_{\text{int}} \vdash \Phi(a),$$

then one can extract from the formal proof a sequence of closed terms \underline{t} in \mathcal{T}^ such that*

$$E\text{-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*} + \Delta_{\text{int}} \vdash \forall x \exists y \in \underline{t}(x) \varphi(x, y, a).$$

Proof. The argument is a slight extension of the proof of Theorem 5.42. So, once again, let $\Phi(a)$ be a formula in the language of $E\text{-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ and φ and θ be such that

$$\begin{aligned} \Phi^{\text{S}_{\text{st}}} &\equiv \forall^{\text{st}}x \exists^{\text{st}}y \varphi(x, y, a), \\ (\Phi_{\text{Kr}})^{\text{D}_{\text{st}}} &\equiv \exists^{\text{st}}x \forall^{\text{st}}y \theta(x, y, a) \end{aligned}$$

and $E\text{-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*} \vdash \varphi \leftrightarrow \neg\theta$, as in Lemma 5.43.

This time we suppose Δ_{int} is a set of internal formulas and $\Phi(a)$ is a formula provable in $E\text{-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*}$ from $I + \text{HAC}_{\text{int}} + \Delta_{\text{int}}$. We first apply soundness of the Kuroda negative translation (Theorem 5.38), which yields:

$$E\text{-HA}_{\text{nst}}^{\omega*} + I^{\text{Ku}} + \text{HAC}_{\text{int}}^{\text{Ku}} + \Delta_{\text{int}}^{\text{Ku}} \vdash \Phi^{\text{Ku}}.$$

Then the previous lemma implies that:

$$\mathbf{E-HA}_{\text{nst}}^{\omega*} + \Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}_{\text{int}} + \mathbf{I} + \mathbf{HAC}_{\text{int}} + \mathbf{HGMP}^{\text{st}} + \Delta_{\text{int}}^{\text{Ku}} \vdash \Phi^{\text{Ku}}.$$

Note that $\mathbf{E-HA}_{\text{nst}}^{\omega*} \vdash \Phi^{\text{Ku}} \leftrightarrow \Phi^{\text{Kr}}, \Phi^{\text{Kr}} \equiv \neg\Phi_{\text{Kr}}$ and

$$(\Phi^{\text{Kr}})^{D_{\text{st}}} \equiv \exists^{\text{st}} \underline{y} \forall^{\text{st}} \underline{x} \exists \underline{y} \in \underline{y}[\underline{x}] \neg \theta(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a}).$$

Therefore the soundness theorem for D_{st} (Theorem 5.30), in combination with Remark 5.3 and the fact that the axiom scheme $\Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}_{\text{int}}$ is internal, implies that there is a sequence of closed terms \underline{s} from \mathcal{T}^* such that

$$\mathbf{E-HA}^{\omega*} + \Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM} + \Delta_{\text{int}}^{\text{Ku}} \vdash \forall \underline{x} \exists \underline{y} \in \underline{s}[\underline{x}] \neg \theta(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a}).$$

Since $\mathbf{E-PA}^{\omega*} \vdash \Sigma_1^0\text{-LEM}$, $\mathbf{E-PA}^{\omega*} \vdash \Delta_{\text{int}}^{\text{Ku}} \leftrightarrow \Delta_{\text{int}}$ and $\mathbf{E-PA}^{\omega*} \vdash \varphi \leftrightarrow \neg\theta$, we have

$$\mathbf{E-PA}^{\omega*} + \Delta_{\text{int}} \vdash \forall \underline{x} \exists \underline{y} \in \underline{t}(\underline{x}) \varphi(\underline{x}, \underline{y}, \underline{a})$$

with $\underline{t} \equiv \lambda \underline{x}. \underline{s}[\underline{x}]$. □

The following picture depicts the relation between the various interpretations we have established:

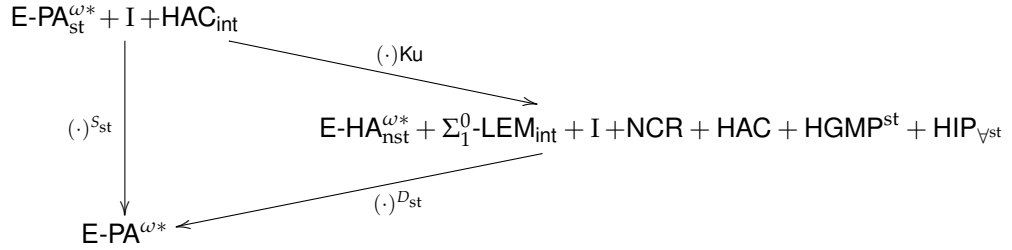


Figure 2: The Shoenfield and negative Dialectica interpretations.

Conservation results and the transfer principle

Theorem 5.46 immediately gives us the following conservation result:

Corollary 5.47. $\mathbf{E-PA}_{\text{st}}^{\omega*} + \mathbf{I} + \mathbf{HAC}_{\text{int}}$ is a conservative extension of $\mathbf{E-PA}^{\omega*}$ and hence of $\mathbf{E-PA}^{\omega}$.

Interpreting DNS for standard arguments

We discussed already that solving the negative interpretation of DNS and thereby that of choice and comprehension was of major interest of proof mining in the introduction and implicitly at several occasions in the first chapter.

Therefore it seems to have closer look at the S_{st} -interpretation of the DNS_{st} principle. Recall:

$$\text{DNS}_{\text{st}} : \quad \forall^{\text{st}} n^0 \exists y^{\tau} \Phi(n, y) \rightarrow \exists f^{0 \rightarrow \tau} \forall^{\text{st}} n^0 \Phi(n, f(n)).$$

With the help of an automated interpreter it is straight forward to obtain its S_{st} -interpretation, which reads as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
& \exists^{\text{st}} \hat{U}, \hat{Y}, \hat{N} \forall^{\text{st}} \hat{V}, N, \hat{X} (\\
& \quad \forall \hat{n} \leq |\hat{Y}[\hat{X}, \hat{V}, N]|, \hat{p} \leq |\hat{N}[\hat{X}, \hat{V}, N]| \\
& \quad \neg \forall \hat{b} \leq |\hat{X}[\hat{N}[\hat{X}, \hat{V}, N]_{\hat{p}}][\hat{Y}[\hat{X}, \hat{V}, N]_{\hat{n}}]| \\
& \quad \neg \forall \hat{a} \leq |\hat{Y}[\hat{X}, \hat{V}, N]_{\hat{n}}[\hat{X}[\hat{N}[\hat{X}, \hat{V}, N]_{\hat{p}}][\hat{Y}[\hat{X}, \hat{V}, N]_{\hat{n}}]_{\hat{b}}]| \\
& \quad \varphi(\hat{N}[\hat{X}, \hat{V}, N]_{\hat{p}}, \hat{X}[\hat{N}[\hat{X}, \hat{V}, N]_{\hat{p}}][\hat{Y}[\hat{X}, \hat{V}, N]_{\hat{n}}]_{\hat{b}}, \hat{Y}[\hat{X}, \hat{V}, N]_{\hat{n}}[\hat{X}[\hat{N}[\hat{X}, \hat{V}, N]_{\hat{p}}][\hat{Y}[\hat{X}, \hat{V}, N]_{\hat{n}}]_{\hat{b}}]_{\hat{a}}) \rightarrow \\
& \quad \neg \forall \hat{m} \leq |\hat{U}[\hat{X}][\hat{V}, N]| \\
& \quad \neg \forall \hat{k} \leq |\hat{V}[\hat{U}[\hat{X}][\hat{V}, N]_{\hat{m}}]|, \hat{l} \leq |N[\hat{U}[\hat{X}][\hat{V}, N]_{\hat{m}}]| \\
& \quad \varphi(N[\hat{U}[\hat{X}][\hat{V}, N]_{\hat{m}}]_{\hat{l}}, \hat{U}[\hat{X}][\hat{V}, N]_{\hat{m}}[N[\hat{U}[\hat{X}][\hat{V}, N]_{\hat{m}}]_{\hat{l}}], \hat{V}[\hat{U}[\hat{X}][\hat{V}, N]_{\hat{m}}]_{\hat{k}}))
\end{aligned}$$

5.6 Countable saturation

The main idea behind providing a functional interpretation for nonstandard proofs, is that we would like to see if the interpretation that we have developed in this chapter could be used to “unwind” or “proof-mine” nonstandard arguments. Nonstandard arguments have been used in areas where proof-mining techniques have also been successful, such as metric fixed point theory (for methods of nonstandard analysis applied to metric fixed point theory, see [2, 67]; for application of proof-mining to metric fixed point theory, see [29, 41, 84, 94, 97, 111]) and ergodic theory (for a nonstandard proof of an ergodic theorem, see [65]; for applications of proof-mining to ergodic theory, see [9, 11, 43, 44, 90, 96, 135]), therefore this looks quite promising. For the former type of applications to work in full generality, one would have to extend our functional interpretation to include types for abstract metric spaces, as in [46, 86].

Towards that purpose, one should extend our methods to allow one to prove conservativity results over WE-HA^ω and WE-PA^ω as well: this will be important if one wishes to combine the results presented here with the proof-mining techniques from [88].

Most importantly for now, we would like to understand the use of saturation principles in nonstandard arguments. These are of particular interest since they are used in the construction of Loeb measures, which belong to one of the most successful nonstandard techniques. The general saturation principle is

$$\text{SAT} : \quad \forall^{\text{st}} x^\sigma \exists y^\tau \Phi(x, y) \rightarrow \exists f^{\sigma \rightarrow \tau} \forall^{\text{st}} x^\sigma \Phi(x, f(x)).$$

Whether this principle has a D_{st} -interpretation within Gödel’s \mathcal{T}^* , we do not know; but

$$\text{CSAT} : \quad \forall^{\text{st}} n^0 \exists y^\tau \Phi(n, y) \rightarrow \exists f^{0 \rightarrow \tau} \forall^{\text{st}} n^0 \Phi(n, f(n))$$

has and that seems to be sufficient for the construction of Loeb measures. Interpreting CSAT and SAT in the classical context using the S_{st} -interpretation is actually quite difficult and it is most probable that they require some form of bar recursion.

Actually, as we can see already on the formalization of CSAT above, it turns out that the situation is very similar as discussed in section 1.13 regarding AC.

We recall:

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{I} : & \quad \forall^{\text{st}} x^\sigma \exists y^\tau \forall i \leq |x| \varphi((x)_i, y) \rightarrow \exists y^\tau \forall^{\text{st}} x^\sigma \varphi(x, y), \\
\text{HAC}_{\text{int}} : & \quad \forall^{\text{st}} x \exists^{\text{st}} y \varphi(x, y) \rightarrow \exists^{\text{st}} F \forall^{\text{st}} x \exists i \leq |F(x)| \varphi(x, F(x)_i), \quad F(x)_i \equiv (F(x))_i, \\
\text{AC}_0^{\text{st}} : & \quad \forall^{\text{st}} n^0 \exists^{\text{st}} x \Phi(n, x) \rightarrow \exists^{\text{st}} f \forall^{\text{st}} n^0 \Phi(n, f(n)), \\
\text{CSAT} : & \quad \forall^{\text{st}} n^0 \exists y^\tau \Phi(n, y) \rightarrow \exists f^{0 \rightarrow \tau} \forall^{\text{st}} n^0 \Phi(n, f(n))
\end{aligned}$$

Theorem 5.48 (Main claim).

$$\text{E-PA}_{\text{st}}^\omega + \text{I} + \text{HAC}_{\text{int}} + \text{AC}_0^{\text{st}} \vdash \text{CSAT}.$$

Proof. Assuming

$$\text{E-PA}_{\text{st}}^\omega + \text{I} + \text{HAC}_{\text{int}} \vdash \Phi(x, y) \leftrightarrow \forall^{\text{st}} u \exists^{\text{st}} v \varphi(u, v, x, y),$$

(which follows from Proposition 8.5 in Berg et al.) it suffices to show that

$$\forall^{\text{st}} x^0 \exists y \forall^{\text{st}} u \exists^{\text{st}} v \varphi(u, v, x, y) \tag{10}$$

implies

$$\exists \tilde{y}^1 \forall^{\text{st}} x^0, u \exists^{\text{st}} v \varphi(u, v, x, \tilde{y}(x)). \tag{11}$$

By HAC_{int} we get that (10) implies

$$\forall^{\text{st}} x^0 \exists y \exists^{\text{st}} V \forall^{\text{st}} u \exists i \leq |V(u)| \varphi(u, V(u)_i, x, y),$$

which is by IL equivalent to

$$\forall^{\text{st}} x^0 \exists^{\text{st}} V \exists y \forall^{\text{st}} u \exists i \leq |V(u)| \varphi(u, V(u)_i, x, y),$$

and by AC_0^{st} this implies that

$$\exists^{\text{st}} V \forall^{\text{st}} x^0 \exists y \forall^{\text{st}} u \exists i \leq |V(x, u)| \varphi(u, V(x, u)_i, x, y). \tag{10'}$$

We can strengthen (11) to an under HAC_{int} (on u) and AC_0^{st} (on x) equivalent statement

$$\exists \tilde{y} \exists^{\text{st}} V \forall^{\text{st}} x^0, u \exists i \leq |V(x, u)| \varphi(u, V(x, u)_i, x, \tilde{y}(x)),$$

which is by IL equivalent to

$$\exists^{\text{st}} V \exists \tilde{y} \forall^{\text{st}} x^0, u \exists i \leq |V(x, u)| \varphi(u, V(x, u)_i, x, \tilde{y}(x)).$$

By I, this follows from

$$\exists^{\text{st}} V \forall^{\text{st}} x^0, u \exists \tilde{y} \forall j \leq |x|, k \leq |u| \exists i \leq |V(x_j, u_k)| \varphi(u_k, V(x_j, u_k)_i, x_j, \tilde{y}(x_j)). \tag{11'}$$

Hence it suffices to show that (10') implies (11').

Now to do so, let some standard V satisfy (10'), i.e. we have

$$\forall^{\text{st}} x^0 \exists y \forall^{\text{st}} u \exists i \leq |V(x, u)| \varphi(u, V(x, u)_i, x, y), \tag{12}$$

and fix an arbitrary but standard x of type 0. Then we have for some finite (standard) natural number n that

$$x = \langle x_1, \dots, x_n \rangle,$$

with x_i^0 standard. So by (12) we have for each $x_j \in \{x_1, \dots, x_n\}$ an y_j s.t.

$$\forall^{\text{st}} u \exists i \leq |V(x_j, u)| \varphi(u, V(x_j, u)_i, x_j, y_j),$$

in other words we obtain (simply consider $y = \langle y_1, \dots, y_n \rangle$)

$$\exists y \forall^{\text{st}} u \forall j \leq |x| \exists i \leq |V(x_j, u)| \varphi(u, V(x_j, u)_i, x_j, y_j).$$

Finally, let \tilde{y} be the function $x_j \mapsto y_j$, (for $1 \leq j \leq n$), and constant 0 otherwise.³⁰ Then we have that

$$\forall^{\text{st}} u \forall j \leq |x| \exists i \leq |V(x_j, u)| \varphi(u, V(x_j, u)_i, x_j, \tilde{y}(x_j)),$$

so in particular also

$$\exists \tilde{y} \forall^{\text{st}} u \forall j \leq |x| \exists i \leq |V(x_j, u)| \varphi(u, V(x_j, u)_i, x_j, \tilde{y}(x_j)),$$

and hence

$$\forall^{\text{st}} u \exists \tilde{y} \forall j \leq |x|, k \leq |u| \exists i \leq |V(x_j, u)| \varphi(u, V(x_j, u)_i, x_j, \tilde{y}(x_j)),$$

and therefore also (11'). □

³⁰Note that such a \tilde{y} is primitive recursively definable in x and y , in Particular it is a term in \mathcal{T}_0 with parameters x and y . However, it is not necessarily standard, as the parameter y – though its size is finite – does not need to code only standard elements and, therefore, does not need to be standard itself.

References

- [1] Y. Akama, S. Berardi, S. Hayashi, and U. Kohlenbach. An arithmetical hierarchy of the law of excluded middle and related principles. In *Proc. of the 19th Annual IEEE Symposium on Logic in Computer Science (LICS'04)*, pages 192–201. IEEE PressIEEE Press, 2004.
- [2] A.G. Aksoy and M.A. Khamisi. *Nonstandard methods in fixed point theory*. Universitext. Springer-Verlag, New York, 1990.
- [3] S. Artemov. Explicit provability and constructive semantics. *Bull. Symbolic Logic*, 7:1–36, 2001.
- [4] S. Artemov and First-order logic of proofs Yavorskaya. Technical report tr-2011005. Technical report, Cuny PhD Program in Computer Science, 2011.
- [5] F. Aschieri. A constructive analysis of learning in peano arithmetic.
- [6] F. Aschieri. *Learning based on realizability for HA+EM1 and 1-Backtracking games: Soundness and completeness*. To appear in *Ann. Pure Appl. Logic*.
- [7] F. Aschieri and S. Berardi. A new use of friedman's translation: interactive realizability. In Berger et als, editor, *Logic, Construction, Computation*. Ontos-Verlag Series in Mathematical Logic, 2012.
- [8] J. Avigad. Weak theories of nonstandard arithmetic and analysis. In *Reverse mathematics 2001*, volume 21 of *Lect. Notes Log.*, pages 19–46. Assoc. Symbol. Logic, La Jolla, CA, 2005.
- [9] J. Avigad. The metamathematics of ergodic theory. *Ann. Pure Appl. Logic*, 157(2-3):64–76, 2009.
- [10] J. Avigad and S. Feferman. Gödel's functional ("Dialectica") interpretation in S. R. Buss (Editor): Handbook of proof theory. *Studies in Logic and the foundations of mathematics*, 137:337–405, 1998.
- [11] J. Avigad, P. Gerhardy, and H. Towsner. Local stability of ergodic averages. *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 362(1):261–288, 2010.
- [12] J. Avigad and J. Helzner. Transfer principles in nonstandard intuitionistic arithmetic. *Arch. Math. Logic*, 41(6):581–602, 2002.
- [13] J. Avigad and J. Rute. Oscillation and the mean ergodic theorem. Preprint, 2012.
- [14] J. B. Baillon. Un théorème de type ergodique pour les contractions non linéaires dans un espace de Hilbert. *C. R. Acad. Sci. Paris Sér. A-B*, 280(22):Aii, A1511–A1514, 1975.
- [15] J. B. Baillon. Quelques propriétés de convergence asymptotique pour les contractions impaires. *C. R. Acad. Sci. Paris Sér. A-B*, 283(8):Aii, A587–A590, 1976.

- [16] J. B. Baillon. Quelques propriétés de convergence asymptotique pour les semi-groupes de contractions impaires. *C. R. Acad. Sci. Paris Sér. A-B*, 283(3):A75–A78, 1976.
- [17] J. B. Baillon and H. Brezis. Une remarque sur le comportement asymptotique des semigroupes non linéaires. *Houston J. Math.*, 2(1):5–7, 1976.
- [18] S. Berardi, T Coquand, and S. Hayashi. Games with 1-backtracking. *Ann. Pure Appl. Logic*, 161:1254–1264, 2010.
- [19] B. van den Berg. The Herbrand topos. arXiv:1112.3837, 2011.
- [20] U. Berger. Uniform Heyting arithmetic. *Ann. Pure Appl. Logic*, 133(1-3):125–148, 2005.
- [21] M. Bezem. Strongly Majorizable Functionals of Finite Type: A Model for Bar Recursion Containing Discontinuous Functionals. *The Journal of Symbolic Logic*, 50:652–660, 1985.
- [22] G. Birkhoff. The mean ergodic theorem. *Duke Math. J.*, 5:19–20, 1939.
- [23] Vasco Brattka and Guido Gherardi. Weihrauch degrees, omniscience principles and weak computability. *J. Symb. Log.*, 76(1):143–176, 2011.
- [24] Vasco Brattka, Guido Gherardi, and Alberto Marcone. The Bolzano-Weierstrass theorem is the jump of weak König’s lemma. *Ann. Pure Appl. Logic*, 163(6):623–655, 2012.
- [25] H. Brézis and F. E. Browder. Nonlinear ergodic theorems. *Bull. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 82(6):959–961, 1976.
- [26] E. M. Briseid. Proof Mining Applied to Fixed Point Theorems for Mappings of Contractive Type. *Master Thesis at Department of Mathematics at the University of Oslo*, 2005.
- [27] E. M. Briseid. Addendum to paper: Some results on Kirk’s asymptotic contractions. *Fixed Point Theory*, 8:321–322, 2007.
- [28] E. M. Briseid. Some results on Kirk’s asymptotic contractions. *Fixed Point Theory*, 8:17–27, 2007.
- [29] E. M. Briseid. Logical aspects of rates of convergence in metric spaces. *J. Symbolic Logic*, 74(4):1401–1428, 2009.
- [30] R. E. Bruck. A simple proof of the mean ergodic theorem for nonlinear contractions in Banach spaces. *Israel J. Math.*, 32(2-3):107–116, 1979.
- [31] T. Coquand. A semantics of evidence for classical arithmetic. *J. Symbolic Logic*, 60:325–337, 1995.
- [32] J. Diller and W. Nahm. Eine Variante zur Dialectica-Interpretation der Heyting-Arithmetik endlicher Typen. *Arch. Math. Logik Grundlagenforsch.*, 16:49–66, 1974.
- [33] S. Feferman. *Theories of finite type related to mathematical practice* in J. Barwise (Editor): *Handbook of Mathematical Logic*. North Holland, Amsterdam, 1977.

- [34] F. Ferreira. Injecting uniformities into Peano arithmetic. *Ann. Pure Appl. Logic*, 157(2-3):122–129, 2009.
- [35] F. Ferreira and A. Nunes. Bounded modified realizability. *J. Symbolic Logic*, 71(1):329–346, 2006.
- [36] F. Ferreira and P. Oliva. Bounded functional interpretation. *Ann. Pure Appl. Logic*, 135(1-3):73–112, 2005.
- [37] H. Friedman. Classical and intuitionistically provably recursive functions. In Scott D.S. Müller, G.H., editor, *Higher Set Theory*, pages 21–27. Springer LNM 669, 1978.
- [38] J. Gaspar. Factorization of the Shoenfield-like bounded functional interpretation. *Notre Dame J. Form. Log.*, 50(1):53–60, 2009.
- [39] J. Gaspar and U. Kohlenbach. On Tao’s ‘finitary’ infinite pigeonhole principle. *Submitted*.
- [40] A. Genel and J. Lindenstrauss. An example concerning fixed points. *Israel J. Math.*, 22(1):81–86, 1975.
- [41] P. Gerhardy. A quantitative version of Kirk’s fixed point theorem for asymptotic contractions. *J. Math. Anal. Appl.*, 316:339–345, 2006.
- [42] P. Gerhardy. *Functional interpretation and modified realizability interpretation of the double-negation shift*. Preprint. BRICS, Department of Computer Science, University of Aarhus, Denmark, 2006.
- [43] P. Gerhardy. Proof mining in topological dynamics. *Notre Dame J. Form. Log.*, 49(4):431–446, 2008.
- [44] P. Gerhardy. Proof mining in practice. In *Logic Colloquium 2007*, volume 35 of *Lect. Notes Log.*, pages 82–91. Assoc. Symbol. Logic, La Jolla, CA, 2010.
- [45] P. Gerhardy and U. Kohlenbach. Strongly uniform bounds from semi-constructive proofs. *Ann. Pure Appl. Logic*, 141:89–107, 2006.
- [46] P. Gerhardy and U. Kohlenbach. General logical metatheorems for functional analysis. *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 360:2615–2660, 2008.
- [47] K. Gödel. Zur intuitionistischen Arithmetik und Zahlentheorie. *Ergebnisse eines Mathematischen Kolloquiums*, 4:34–38, 1933.
- [48] K. Gödel. Über eine bisher noch nicht benützte Erweiterung des finiten Standpunktes. *Dialectica*, 12:280–287, 1958.
- [49] E. M. Gold. Language identification in the limit. *Information and Control*, 10:447–474, 1967.
- [50] B. Halpern. Fixed points of nonexpanding maps. *Bull. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 73:957–961, 1967.
- [51] S. Hayashi. Mathematics based on learning. In *Proc. 13th Internat. Conf. ALT 2002 Vol. 272*, pages 7–21. Springer Lecture Notes in Artificial Intelligence, 2002.

- [52] S. Hayashi. Mathematics based on incremental learning – excluded middle and inductive inference original research article. *Theoretical Computer Science – Journal version of [51]*, 350:125–139, 2006.
- [53] S. Hayashi and M. Nakata. Towards limit computable mathematics. In P. Callaghan et al., editor, *TYPES 2000*, pages 125–144. Springer LNCS **2277**, 2002.
- [54] C.W. Henson and H.J. Keisler. On the strength of nonstandard analysis. *J. Symbolic Logic*, 51(2):377–386, 1986.
- [55] M.-D. Hernest. Light functional interpretation: an optimization of Gödel’s technique towards the extraction of (more) efficient programs from (classical) proofs. In *Computer science logic*, volume 3634 of *Lecture Notes in Comput. Sci.*, pages 477–492. Springer, Berlin, 2005.
- [56] K. Higuchi and T. Kihara. Inside the muchnik degrees: discontinuity, learnability, and constructivism. Preprint, 2012.
- [57] Kojiro Higuchi and Arno Pauly. The degree structure of weihrauch-reducibility. *Logical Methods in Computer Science*, 9(2), 2011.
- [58] N. Hirano. Nonlinear ergodic theorems and weak convergence theorems. *J. Math. Soc. Japan*, 34(1):35–46, 1982.
- [59] N. Hirano and W. Takahashi. Nonlinear ergodic theorems for nonexpansive mappings in Hilbert spaces. *Kodai Math. J.*, 2(1):11–25, 1979.
- [60] W. A. Howard. Functional interpretation of bar induction by bar recursion. *Compositio Mathematica*, 20:107–124, 1968.
- [61] W. A. Howard. Hereditarily majorizable functionals of finite type. In A.S. Troelstra (Editor): *Mathematical Investigation of Intuitionistic Arithmetic and Analysis*, pages 454–461. Springer-Verlag, Berlin · Heidelberg · New York, 1973.
- [62] W. A. Howard. Ordinal analysis of terms of finite type. *The Journal of Symbolic Logic*, 45:493–504, 1980.
- [63] W. A. Howard. Ordinal analysis of simple cases of bar recursion. *The Journal of Symbolic Logic*, 46:17–31, 1981.
- [64] R. L. Jones, I. V. Ostrovskii, and J. M. Rosenblatt. Square functions in ergodic theory. *Ergodic Theory and Dynamical Systems*, 16:267–305, 1996.
- [65] T. Kamae. A simple proof of the ergodic theorem using nonstandard analysis. *Israel J. Math.*, 42(4):284–290, 1982.
- [66] H.J. Keisler. The strength of nonstandard analysis. In *The strength of nonstandard analysis*, pages 3–26. SpringerWienNewYork, Vienna, 2007.
- [67] W. A. Kirk. Fixed points of asymptotic contractions. *J. Math. Anal. Appl.*, 277(2):645–650, 2003.
- [68] S. C. Kleene. *Introduction to mathematics*. North-Holland Publ. Co. (Amsterdam), P. Noordhoff (Gronigen), D. van Nostrand (New York, Toronto), 1952.

- [69] S. C. Kleene. Recursive functionals and quantifiers of finite types. *I. Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 91:1–52, 1959.
- [70] U. Kohlenbach. A uniform quantitative form of sequential weak compactness and Baillon’s nonlinear ergodic theorem. (To appear in) *Communications in Contemporary Mathematics*.
- [71] U. Kohlenbach. On the logical analysis of proofs based on nonseparable Hilbert space theory. *Submitted*.
- [72] U. Kohlenbach. Effective bounds from ineffective proofs in analysis: an application of functional interpretation and majorization. *The Journal of Symbolic Logic*, 57:1239–1273, 1992.
- [73] U. Kohlenbach. Pointwise hereditary majorization and some applications. *Archive for Mathematical Logic*, 31:227–241, 1992.
- [74] U. Kohlenbach. New effective moduli of uniqueness and uniform a-priori estimates for constants of strong unicity by logical analysis of known proofs in best approximation theory. *Numer. Funct. Anal. and Optimiz.*, 14:581–606, 1993.
- [75] U. Kohlenbach. Analyzing proofs in analysis. In W. Hodges, M. Hyland, C. Steinhorn, J. Truss, Editors, *Logic: from Foundations to Applications at European Logic Colloquium (Keele, 1993)*, pages 225–260. Oxford University Press, 1996.
- [76] U. Kohlenbach. Mathematically strong subsystems of analysis with low rate of growth of provably recursive functionals. *Arch. Math. Logic*, 36:31–71, 1996.
- [77] U. Kohlenbach. Arithmetizing proofs in analysis in Larrazabal, J.M., Lascar, D., Mints, G. (Editors): *Logic Colloquium ’96. Springer Lecture Notes in Logic*, 12:115–158, 1998.
- [78] U. Kohlenbach. Elimination of Skolem functions for monotone formulas in analysis. *Arch. Math. Logic*, 37(5-6):363–390, 1998. *Logic Colloquium ’95 (Haifa)*.
- [79] U. Kohlenbach. On the arithmetical content of restricted forms of comprehension, choice and general uniform boundedness. *Ann. Pure and Applied Logic*, 95:257–285, 1998.
- [80] U. Kohlenbach. Relative constructivity. *J. Symbolic Logic*, 63:1218–1238, 1998.
- [81] U. Kohlenbach. On the No-Counterexample Interpretation. *The Journal of Symbolic Logic*, 64:1491–1511, 1999.
- [82] U. Kohlenbach. Things that can and things that cannot be done in PRA. *Ann. Pure Applied Logic*, 102:223–245, 2000.
- [83] U. Kohlenbach. Uniform asymptotic regularity for Mann iterates. *J. Math. Anal. Appl.*, 279:531–544, 2003.
- [84] U. Kohlenbach. Some computational aspects of metric fixed-point theory. *Non-linear Analysis*, 61:823–837, 2005.
- [85] U. Kohlenbach. Some computational aspects of metric fixed-point theory. *Non-linear Anal.*, 61(5):823–837, 2005.

- [86] U. Kohlenbach. Some logical metatheorems with application in functional. *Trans. Am. Math. Soc.*, 357:89–128, 2005.
- [87] U. Kohlenbach. Some logical metatheorems with applications in functional analysis. *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 357(1):89–128 (electronic), 2005.
- [88] U. Kohlenbach. *Applied proof theory: proof interpretations and their use in mathematics*. Springer Monographs in Mathematics. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 2008.
- [89] U. Kohlenbach. Gödel’s functional interpretation and its use in current mathematics. *Dialectica*, 62(2):223–267, 2008.
- [90] U. Kohlenbach. On quantitative versions of theorems due to F.E. Browder and R. Wittmann. *Advances in Mathematics*, 226(3):2764–2795, 2011.
- [91] U. Kohlenbach. On the asymptotic behavior of odd operators. *Journal of Mathematical Analysis and Applications*, 382(2):615 – 620, 2011.
- [92] U. Kohlenbach and L. Leuştean. Effective metastability of halpern iterates in $\text{cat}(0)$ spaces. *Adv. Math.*, 231:2526–2556, 2012.
- [93] U. Kohlenbach and L. Leuştean. On the computational content of convergence proofs via banach limits. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society*, 370:3449–3463, 2012.
- [94] U. Kohlenbach and L. Leuştean. Mann iterates of directionally nonexpansive mappings in hyperbolic spaces. *Abstr. Appl. Anal.*, (8):449–477, 2003.
- [95] U. Kohlenbach and L. Leustean. The approximate fixed point property in product spaces. *Nonlinear Analysis*, 66:806–818, 2007.
- [96] U. Kohlenbach and L. Leuştean. A quantitative mean ergodic theorem for uniformly convex Banach spaces. *Ergodic Theory Dynam. Systems*, 29(6):1907–1915, 2009.
- [97] U. Kohlenbach and L. Leuştean. Asymptotically nonexpansive mappings in uniformly convex hyperbolic spaces. *J. Eur. Math. Soc. (JEMS)*, 12(1):71–92, 2010.
- [98] U. Kohlenbach and P. Oliva. Proof Mining: A systematic way of analyzing proofs in mathematics. In *Proceedings of the Steklov Institute of Mathematics*, Vol. 242, pages 136–164, 2003.
- [99] U. Kohlenbach and P. Oliva. Proof mining in L_1 -approximation. *Ann. Pure Appl. Logic*, 121:1–38, 2003.
- [100] U. Kohlenbach and P. Safarik. Fluctuations, effective learnability and metastability in analysis. to appear in *Ann. Pure and Applied Logic*.
- [101] D. Körnlein. Analysis of a proof due to xu. Preprint, 2012.
- [102] G. Kreisel. On the interpretation of non-finitist proofs, part I. *The Journal of Symbolic Logic*, 16:241–267, 1951.
- [103] G. Kreisel. On the interpretation of non-finitist proofs, part II. *The Journal of Symbolic Logic*, 17:43–58, 1952.

- [104] G. Kreisel. Interpretation of analysis by means of constructive functionals of finite types. In *Constructivity in mathematics: Proceedings of the colloquium held at Amsterdam, 1957 (edited by A. Heyting)*, Studies in Logic and the Foundations of Mathematics, pages 101–128. North-Holland Publishing Co., Amsterdam, 1959.
- [105] G. Kreisel. Informal rigour and completeness proofs. In I. Lakatos, editor, *Problems in the Philosophy of Mathematics*, pages 138–186. North-Holland, Amsterdam, 1967.
- [106] G. Kreisel. Axiomatizations of nonstandard analysis that are conservative extensions of formal systems for classical standard analysis. In *Applications of Model Theory to Algebra, Analysis, and Probability (Internat. Sympos., Pasadena, Calif., 1967)*, pages 93–106. Holt, Rinehart and Winston, New York, 1969.
- [107] U. Krengel. *Ergodic theorems*, volume 6 of *de Gruyter Studies in Mathematics*. Walter de Gruyter & Co., Berlin, 1985. With a supplement by Antoine Brunel.
- [108] J.-L. Krivine. Opérateurs de mise en mémoire et traduction de Gödel. *Arch. Math. Logic*, 30(4):241–267, 1990.
- [109] C. Kuratowski. *Topologie Vol. I*. Warsawa, 1952.
- [110] S. Kuroda. Intuitionistische Untersuchungen der formalistischen Logik. *Nagoya Math. J.*, 2:35–47, 1951.
- [111] L. Leustean. A quadratic rate of asymptotic regularity for CAT(0)-spaces. *J. Math. Anal. Appl.*, 325(1):386–399, 2007.
- [112] V. Lifschitz. Calculable natural numbers. In *Intensional mathematics*, volume 113 of *Stud. Logic Found. Math.*, pages 173–190. North-Holland, Amsterdam, 1985.
- [113] H. Luckhardt. Extensional Gödel functional interpretation. *Springer Lecture Notes in Mathematics*, vol. 306, 1973.
- [114] H. Luckhardt. Herbrand-analysen zweier bewiese des satzes von roth: Polynomiale anzahlsschränken. *J. Symbolic Logic*, 54:234–263, 1989.
- [115] I. Miyadera. Nonlinear mean ergodic theorems. *Taiwanese J. Math.*, 1(4):433–449, 1997.
- [116] I. Miyadera. Nonlinear mean ergodic theorems. II. *Taiwanese J. Math.*, 3(1):107–114, 1999.
- [117] I. Moerdijk. A model for intuitionistic non-standard arithmetic. *Ann. Pure Appl. Logic*, 73(1):37–51, 1995.
- [118] I. Moerdijk and E. Palmgren. Minimal models of Heyting arithmetic. *J. Symbolic Logic*, 62(4):1448–1460, 1997.
- [119] E. Nelson. Internal set theory: a new approach to nonstandard analysis. *Bull. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 83(6):1165–1198, 1977.
- [120] E. Nelson. The syntax of nonstandard analysis. *Ann. Pure Appl. Logic*, 38(2):123–134, 1988.

- [121] P. G. Odifreddi. *Classical Recursion Theory*. Studies in Logic and the Foundations of Mathematics. Elsevier Science B.V., 1989.
- [122] P. Oliva. Understanding and using Spector's bar recursive interpretation of classical analysis. In *Proceedings of CiE'2006*, Lecture Notes in Computer Science, pages 423–434. Springer 3988, 2006.
- [123] P. Oliva and T. Powell. A Game-Theoretic Computational Interpretation of Proofs in Classical Analysis. *ArXiv e-prints*, April 2012.
- [124] Paulo Oliva and Thomas Powell. On spector's bar recursion. *Mathematical Logic Quarterly*, 58(4-5):356–265, 2012.
- [125] E. Palmgren. Developments in constructive nonstandard analysis. *Bull. Symbolic Logic*, 4(3):233–272, 1998.
- [126] E. Palmgren. An effective conservation result for nonstandard arithmetic. *MLQ Math. Log. Q.*, 46(1):17–23, 2000.
- [127] J. Paris and L. Harrington. *A Mathematical Incompleteness in Peano Arithmetic*. In J. Barwise (Editor): *Handbook of Mathematical Logic*. North Holland, Amsterdam, 1977.
- [128] C. Parsons. Proof-theoretic analysis of restricted induction schemata (abstract). *The Journal of Symbolic Logic*, 36:361, 1971.
- [129] C. Parsons. On n -quantifier induction. *The Journal of Symbolic Logic*, 37:466–482, 1972.
- [130] A. Robinson. Metamathematical problems. *J. Symbolic Logic*, 38:500–516, 1973.
- [131] A. Robinson. *Non-standard analysis*. Princeton Landmarks in Mathematics. Princeton University Press, Princeton, NJ, 1996. Reprint of the second (1974) edition, With a foreword by Wilhelmus A. J. Luxemburg.
- [132] B. D. Rouhani. Ergodic theorems for nonexpansive curves defined on general semigroups in a Hilbert space. *Nonlinear Anal.*, 44(5, Ser. A: Theory Methods):627–643, 2001.
- [133] S. Saejung. Halpern's iteration in $\text{cat}(0)$ spaces. *Fixed Point Theory and Applications*, 2010, 2010.
- [134] P. Safarik. *On the Interpretation of the Bolzano-Weierstraß Principle Using Bar Recursion*. 2008.
- [135] P. Safarik. A quantitative nonlinear strong ergodic theorem for hilbert spaces. *J. Math. Anal. Appl.*, 391:26–37, 2012.
- [136] Pavol Safarik and Ulrich Kohlenbach. On the computational content of the Bolzano-Weierstraß principle. *MLQ Math. Log. Q.*, 56(5):508–532, 2010.
- [137] B. Scarpellini. A model of bar recursion of higher types. *Compositio Mathematica*, 23:123–153, 1971.
- [138] K. Schütte. Beweistheorie. *Die Grundlehren der Mathematischen Wissenschaften in Einzeldarstellungen*, 103:1–355, 1960.

- [139] H. Schwichtenberg. Dialectica Interpretation of Well-Founded Induction. *To appear: Mathematical Logic Quarterly*.
- [140] H. Schwichtenberg. On Bar Recursion of Types 0 and 1. *The Journal of Symbolic Logic*, 44:325–329, 1979.
- [141] Joseph R. Shoenfield. *Mathematical logic*. Addison-Wesley Publishing Co., Reading, Mass.-London-Don Mills, Ont., 1967.
- [142] J.R. Shoenfield. *Mathematical logic*. Association for Symbolic Logic, Urbana, IL, 2001. Reprint of the 1973 second printing.
- [143] W. Sieg. Fragments of arithmetic. *Ann. Pure Appl. Logic*, 28:33–71, 1985.
- [144] S. G. Simpson, editor. *Subsystems of Second Order Arithmetic*. Perspectives in Mathematical Logic. Springer-Verlag, Berlin · Heidelberg · New York, 1999.
- [145] Stephen G. Simpson. *Subsystems of second order arithmetic*. Perspectives in Mathematical Logic. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1999.
- [146] C. Spector. Provably recursive functionals of analysis: a consistency proof of an analysis by extension of principles formulated in current intuitionistic mathematics. In *Recursive function Theory, Proceedings of Symposia in Pure Mathematics, vol. 5* (J.C.E. Dekker (ed.)), AMS, Providence, R.I., pages 1–27, 1962.
- [147] T. Streicher and U. Kohlenbach. Shoenfield is Gödel after Krivine. *Mathematical Logic Quarterly*, 53(2):176–179, 2007.
- [148] T. Streicher and B. Reus. Classical logic, continuation semantics and abstract machines. *Journal of Functional Programming*, 8(06):543–572, 1998.
- [149] W. W. Tait. Constructive reasoning. In *Logic, methodology and the philosophy of science. III*, (B. van Rootselaar and J. F. Staal (ed.)), North-Holland, Amsterdam, pages 185–199, 1976.
- [150] T. Tao. *Norm convergence of multiple ergodic averages for commuting transformations*. 2007.
- [151] T. Tao. *Soft analysis, hard analysis, and the finite convergence principle*. Available at: <http://terrytao.wordpress.com/2007/05/23/soft-analysis-hard-analysis-and-the-finite-convergence-principle>, Essay posted May 23, 2007.
- [152] M. Toftdal. Calibration of ineffective theorems of analysis in a constructive context. Master’s thesis, Aarhus Universitet, 2004.
- [153] A. S. Troelstra, editor. *Metamathematical investigation of intuitionistic arithmetic and analysis*. Lecture Notes in Mathematics, Vol. 344. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1973.
- [154] A. S. Troelstra. Note on the Fan Theorem. *The Journal of Symbolic Logic*, 39:584–596, 1974.
- [155] A. S. Troelstra and D. van Dalen. *Constructivism in Mathematics - an introduction vol. I, II*. Studies in Logic and the Foundations of Mathematics. Elsevier Science B.V., 1988.

- [156] A. S. Troelstra and D. van Dalen. *Constructivism in mathematics. Vol. II*, volume 123 of *Studies in Logic and the Foundations of Mathematics*. North-Holland Publishing Co., Amsterdam, 1988. An introduction.
- [157] Benno van den Berg, Eyvind Martol Briseid, and Pavol Safarik. A functional interpretation for nonstandard arithmetic. *Ann. Pure Appl. Logic*, 163(12):1962–1994, 2012.
- [158] J. von Neumann. Proof of the quasi-ergodic hypothesis. In *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. USA*, 1932.
- [159] R. Wittmann. Mean ergodic theorems for nonlinear operators. *Proc. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 108:781–788, 1990.
- [160] R. Wittmann. Approximation of fixed points of nonexpansive mappings. *Arch. Math.*, 58:486–491, 1992.
- [161] H.-K. Xu. Iterative algorithms for nonlinear operators. *J. London Math. Soc.*, 66:240–256, 2002.
- [162] M. Ziegler. Real hypercomputation and continuity. *Theory of Computing Systems*, 41:177–206, 2007.